



**BITS Pilani**  
Hyderabad Campus

# Data Structures and Algorithms Design

## ZG519

**Febin.A.Vahab**  
Asst.Professor(Offcampus)  
BITS Pilani,Bangalore



## TEXT BOOKS

### No Author(s), Title, Edition, Publishing House

T1	Algorithms Design: Foundations, Analysis and Internet Examples Michael T. Goodrich, Roberto Tamassia, 2006, Wiley (Students Edition).
R1	Data Structures, Algorithms and Applications in Java, Sartaj Sahni, Second Ed, 2005, Universities Press
R2	Introduction to Algorithms, TH Cormen, CE Leiserson, RL Rivest, C Stein, Third Ed,2009, PHI

## Course Objectives

No	Objective
CO1	Introduce mathematical and experimental techniques to analyze algorithms
CO2	Introduce linear and non-linear data structures and best practices to choose appropriate data structure for a given application
CO3	Teach various dictionary data structures (Lists, Trees, Heaps, Bloom filters) with illustrations on possible representation, various operations and their efficiency
CO4	Expose students to various sorting and searching techniques
CO5	Discuss in detail various algorithm design approaches ( Greedy method, divide and conquer, dynamic programming and map reduce) with appropriate examples, methods to make correct design choice and the efficiency concerns
CO6	Introduce complexity classes , notion of NP-Completeness, ways of classifying problem into appropriate complexity class
CO7	Introduce reduction method to prove a problem's complexity class.

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 2

## Topics

- **Analysing Algorithms**
- Elementary Data Structures
- Non-Linear Data Structures
- Dictionaries
  - Ordered/Unordered Dictionaries
  - Hash Tables
- Binary Search Trees
- Algorithm Design Techniques
  - Greedy Method
  - Divide and Conquer
  - Dynamic Programming
  - Graph Algorithms
- Complexity Classes



## SESSION 1 -PLAN

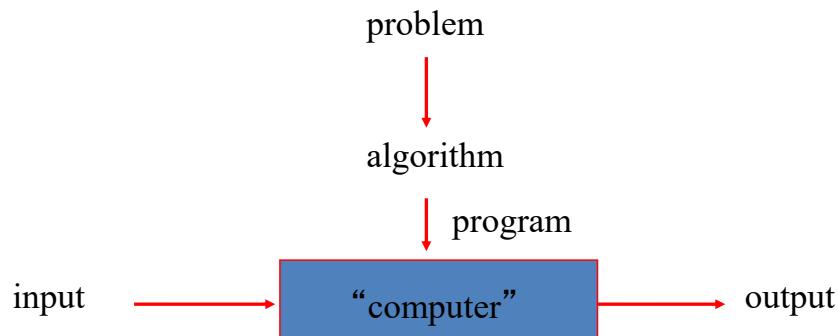
Contact Sessions(#)	List of Topic Title	Text/Ref Book/external resource
1	Algorithms and it's Specification, Experimental Analysis, Analytical model-Random Access Machine Model, Counting Primitive Operations, Basic Operation method, Analyzing non recursive algorithms, Order of growth	T1: 1.1, 1.2

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 6

## Notion of algorithm



5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 8

## Algorithm

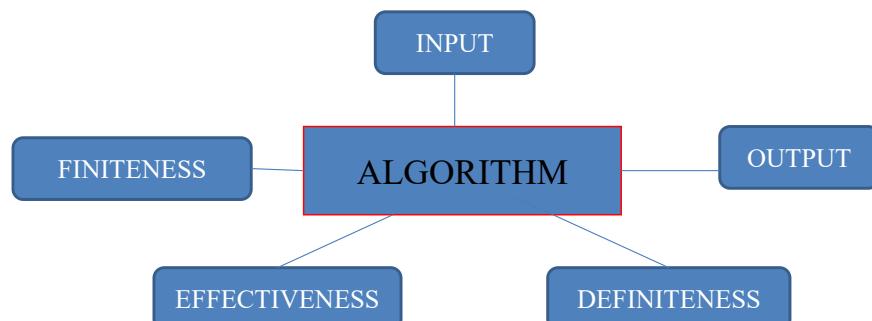
- An algorithm is a **finite sequence of unambiguous, step by step instructions** followed to accomplish a given task.

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 7

## Properties of Algorithms



5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 9

# Properties of Algorithms

- Finiteness:
  - An algorithm must terminate after finite number of steps.
- Definiteness:
  - The steps of the algorithm must be precisely defined. Each instruction must be clear and unambiguous.
- Effectiveness:
  - The operations of the algorithm must be basic enough to be put down on pencil and paper.
- Input-Output:
  - The algorithm must have certain(zero or more) initial and precise inputs, and outputs that may be generated both at its intermediate and final steps.

# Analysis of algorithms

- Design the most efficient algorithm.

• SPACE  
• TIME

EFFICIENCY

- SPACE
  - Program space
  - Data space
  - Stack space

# EUCLID'S ALGORITHM

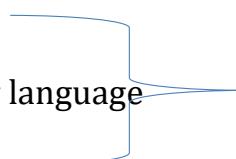
## ALGORITHM *Euclid(m, n)*

```
//Computes gcd(m, n) by Euclid's algorithm
//Input: Two nonnegative, not-both-zero
integers m and n
//Output: Greatest common divisor of m and n
Step 1 If n = 0, return the value of m as the
answer and stop; otherwise,
proceed to Step 2.
Step 2 Divide m by n and assign the value of the
remainder to r.
Step 3 Assign the value of n to m and the value
of r to n. Go to Step 1.
```

# Analysis of algorithms

## • TIME EFFICIENCY

- Speed of computer
- Choice of programming language
- Compiler used
- **Choice of algorithm**
- **Number(size) of inputs**



# Analysis of algorithms

- Experimental Analysis

- Write a program implementing the algorithm
- Execute the program on various test inputs and record the actual time spent.
- Use system calls (Ex: System.currentTimeMillis() ) to get an accurate measure of the actual running time.

# Analysis of algorithms

- Analytical Model

- High level description of the algorithm.
- Takes into account all possible inputs.
- Allows one to evaluate the efficiency of any algorithm in a way that is independent of the hardware and the software environment

# Analysis of algorithms

- Limitations of experimental studies

- Implementation is a must.
- Execution is possible on limited set of inputs.
- Inputs must be representatives of real time scenarios
- If we need to compare two algorithms ,we need to use the same environment (like hardware, software etc)

# Pseudo-code

- A mixture of natural language and high level programming concepts that describes the main ideas behind a generic implementation of a data structure and algorithms.
- Find maximum element in an array :

## **Algorithm *arrayMax(A, n)***

**Input:** An array *A* storing  $n \geq 1$  integers

**Output:** The maximum element in *A*

*currentMax*  $\leftarrow A[0]$

for *i*  $\leftarrow 1$  to *n* - 1 do

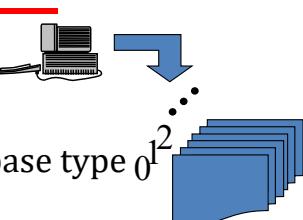
if *currentMax*  $< A[i]$  then

*currentMax*  $\leftarrow A[i]$

return *currentMax*

- Expressions
  - Use standard mathematical symbols to describe numeric and Boolean expressions.
  - Uses `←` for assignment. (`=` in Java)
  - Use `=` for the equality relationship. (`==` in Java)
- Method declaration
  - Algorithm name(`param1,param2...`)
- Method returns: **return** value
- Control flow
  - **if ... then ... [else ...]**
  - **while ... do ...**
  - **repeat ... until ...**
  - **for ... do ...**
  - Indentation replaces braces

## The Random Access Machine (RAM) Model



- NOT Random access memory
- A CPU connected to a bank of memory cells.
- Each memory cell stores a word-Value of a base type  $0^{2^2}$ 
  - Number
  - Character string
  - An address etc
- Random Access: Ability of CPU to access an arbitrary memory cell with one *primitive operation*
- The CPU can perform any primitive operation in a *constant number of steps* which do not depend on the size of the input.

## Primitive Operations

- Primitive operations** are basic computations performed by an algorithm
- Assigning a value to a variable
  - Calling a method
  - Performing arithmetic operation
  - Indexing into an array
  - Following an object reference
  - Returning from a method
  - Comparing two numbers

## The Random Access Machine (RAM) Model

- Approach of simply counting primitive operations.
- Each primitive operation corresponds to constant time instruction.
- *A bound on the number of primitive operations* → running time of that algorithm.

# Counting Primitive Operations

- Focus on each step of the algorithm and count the primitive operation it takes
- Consider the arrayMax Algorithm.

## Algorithm *arrayMax(A, n)*

```

currentMax ← A[0]
for i ← 1 to n - 1 do
if currentMax < A[i] then
    currentMax ← A[i]
return currentMax
  
```

- Assigning a value to a variable
- Calling a method
- Performing arithmetic operation
- Indexing into an array
- Following an object reference
- Returning from a method
- Comparing two numbers

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 22

# Counting Primitive Operations

Statement	# of primitive operations
Body of the loop	n-1
<b>Total</b>	
• If condition satisfied	6(n-1)
• If condition not satisfied	4(n-1)
return <i>currentMax</i>	1

The number of primitive operations executed by the algorithm

Atleast (Best case):  $2+1+n+4(n-1)+1=5n$

Atmost (worst case):  $2+1+n+6(n-1)+1=7n-2$

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 24

# Counting Primitive Operations

Statement	# of primitive operations
<i>currentMax</i> ← A[0] Indexing into array and assignment	2
for <i>i</i> ← 1 to <i>n</i> - 1 do • <i>i</i> initialised to 1	1
i<n is verified , comparing 2 numbers(1 po) The comparison is performed <i>n</i> times(at the end of each iteration of the loop)	<i>n</i>
if <i>currentMax</i> < A[i] Comparison and Indexing	2
<i>currentMax</i> ← A[i] Assignment and indexing	2
<b>Counter incremented</b> Summing and assignment	2
Either 4 or 6 primitive operations, each iteration	

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 23

# Basic operation Method

- Identify the basic operation
- Basic operation???
  - Operation that contributes most towards the running time of an algorithm.
  - Statement that executes maximum number of times.

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 25

## Basic operation Method

- Identify the basic operation
- Obtain the total number of times that operation is executed.

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 26

## Basic operation Method

### ArrayMax

#### Algorithm arrayMax(A, n)

```
currentMax ← A[0]
for i ← 1 to n - 1 do
if currentMax < A[i] then
    currentMax ← A[i]
return currentMax
```

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 28

## General Plan for Non recursive algorithms

- Decide on parameter n indicating input size
- Identify algorithm's basic operation
- Check whether the number of times the basic operation is executed depends only on the input size n. If it also depends on the type of input, investigate worst, average, and best case efficiency separately.
- Set up summation reflecting the number of times the algorithm's basic operation is executed.
- Simplify summation using standard formulas

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 27

## Basic operation Method

- **Input Size:**  $n$
- **Basic Operation:** Comparison in the for loop
- Depends on worst case or best case? No, has to go through the entire array
- $T(n) = \text{number of comparisons}$
- $T(n) = \sum_{i=1}^n 1 = n-1$

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 29

# Basic operation Method

## Matrix multiplication

```
ALGORITHM MatrixMultiplication( $A[0..n - 1, 0..n - 1]$ ,  $B[0..n - 1, 0..n - 1]$ )
  //Multiplies two square matrices of order  $n$  by the definition-based algorithm
  //Input: Two  $n \times n$  matrices  $A$  and  $B$ 
  //Output: Matrix  $C = AB$ 
  for  $i \leftarrow 0$  to  $n - 1$  do
    for  $j \leftarrow 0$  to  $n - 1$  do
       $C[i, j] \leftarrow 0.0$ 
      for  $k \leftarrow 0$  to  $n - 1$  do
         $C[i, j] \leftarrow C[i, j] + A[i, k] * B[k, j]$ 
  return  $C$ 
```

# Basic operation Method

## Matrix multiplication

$$M(n) = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} 1.$$

$$M(n) = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} 1 = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} n = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} n^2 = n^3.$$

# Basic operation Method

## Matrix multiplication

- **Input Size:**  $n$
- **Basic Operation :**Multiplication
- Depends on worst case or best case? No, has to go through the entire array
- $M(n)$  = number of comparisons

# Basic operation Method

- Element uniqueness problem

**ALGORITHM** UniqueElements( $A[0..n - 1]$ )

```
//Determines whether all the elements in a given array are distinct
//Input: An array  $A[0..n - 1]$ 
//Output: Returns "true" if all the elements in  $A$  are distinct
//        and "false" otherwise
for  $i \leftarrow 0$  to  $n - 2$  do
  for  $j \leftarrow i + 1$  to  $n - 1$  do
    if  $A[i] = A[j]$  return false
  return true
```

## Basic operation Method

- Element uniqueness problem
- **Input's size:** n, the number of elements in the array.
- **Algorithm's basic operation:** The comparison of two elements
- The number of element comparisons depends not only on n but also on whether there are equal elements in the array and, if there are, which array positions they occupy.
- We will limit our investigation to the worst case only

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 34

## Order of growth

- How the value of 'n' affects the time complexity of the algorithm?

OR

- How time complexity grows wrt 'n'?

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 36

## Basic operation Method

- **Worst Case of this problem:** The worst case input is an array for which the number of element comparisons is the largest among all arrays of size n
- **Two kinds of worst-case inputs:**
  - The algorithm does not exit the loop prematurely - arrays with no equal elements
  - The last two elements are the only pair of equal elements

$$C_{worst}(n) = \sum_{i=0}^{n-2} \sum_{j=i+1}^{n-1} 1 \in \Theta(n^2).$$

5/11/2025

Page 35

## Order of growth

- The running time of an algorithm can be

<b>CONSTANT</b>	1
<b>LOGARITHMIC</b>	$\log N$
<b>LINEAR</b>	N
<b>N Log N</b>	-
<b>QUADRATIC</b>	$N^2$
<b>CUBIC</b>	$N^3$
<b>EXPONENTIAL</b>	$2^N$
<b>FACTORIAL</b>	$N!$

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 37

# Order of growth

## Exercise

- Compare the order of growth
  - $n(n+1)$  and  $200n^2$  --- Same
  - $100n^2$  and  $0.01 n^3$
  - $\log n$  and  $\ln n$
  - $2^{n-1}$  and  $2^n$

**Refer 1.3.2 in text book for Logarithms and Exponents**

# Order of growth

	constant	logarithmic	linear	$N \cdot \log N$	quadratic	cubic	exponential
$n$	$O(1)$	$O(\log n)$	$O(n)$	$O(n \log n)$	$O(n^2)$	$O(n^3)$	$O(2^n)$
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2
2	1	1	2	2	4	8	4
4	1	2	4	8	16	64	16
8	1	3	8	24	64	512	256
16	1	4	16	64	256	4,096	65536
32	1	5	32	160	1,024	32,768	4,294,967,296
64	1	6	64	384	4,096	262,144	$1.84 \times 10^{19}$

# Order of growth

Consider a program with time complexity  $O(n^2)$ .

- For the input of size  $n$ , it takes 5 seconds.
- If the input size is doubled ( $2n$ ) . –
- **then it takes 20 seconds.**

Consider a program with time complexity  $O(n)$ .

- For the input of size  $n$ , it takes 5 seconds.
- If the input size is doubled ( $2n$ ) . –
- **then it takes 10 seconds.**

Consider a program with time complexity  $O(n^3)$ .

- For the input of size  $n$ , it takes 5 seconds.
- If the input size is doubled ( $2n$ ) . –
- **then it takes 40 seconds.**

# Exercise

- Which kind of growth best characterizes each of these functions?
  - $(3/2)^n$
  - $3n$
  - $1$
  - $(3/2)n$
  - $2n^3$
  - $2^n$
  - $3n^2$
  - $1000$

## Exercise-Solution

- Which kind of growth best characterizes each of these functions?

	Constant	Linear	Polynomial	Exponential
$(3/2)^n$				✓
$3n$		✓		
$1$	✓			
$(3/2)n$		✓		
$2n^3$			✓	
$2^n$				✓
$3n^2$			✓	
$1000$	✓			

THANK YOU!

## Examples

What is the order of growth of the below function?

```
int fun1(int n)
{
    int count = 0;
    for (int i = 0; i < n; i++)
        for (int j = i; j > 0; j--)
            count = count + 1;
    return count;
}
```

Ans: $O(n^2)$



**BITs Pilani**  
Hyderabad Campus

**Data Structures and Algorithms Design (SEZG519/SSZG519)**

Dr. Rajib Ranjan Maiti  
CSIS Dept, Hyderabad Campus





## S1 Algorithms, RAM, Time Complexity, Notation of Correctness

### Content of S1

#### 1. Algorithms and it's Specification

2. Random Access Machine Model
3. Notion of best case, average case and worst case
4. Notion of Algorithm Correctness

## Content of S1

1. Algorithms and it's Specification
2. Random Access Machine Model
3. Notion of best case, average case and worst case
4. Notion of Algorithm Correctness

## Discovery of A Tool

Famous  
Mathematician  
Archimedes



Is it pure Gold? Or, it has silver mixed?

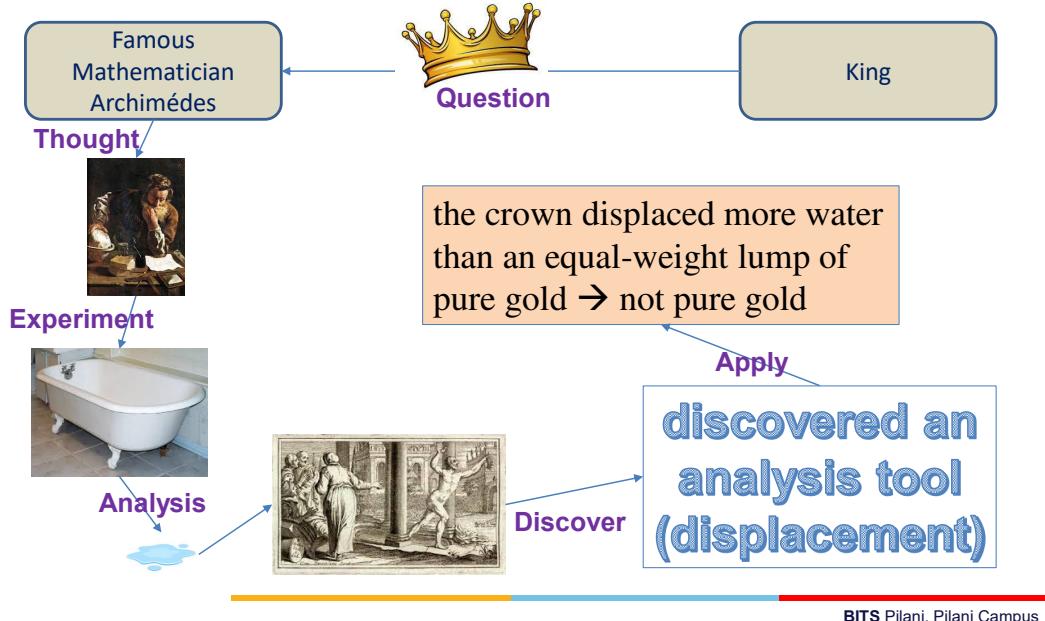
King

the crown displaced more water  
than an equal-weight lump of  
pure gold → not pure gold

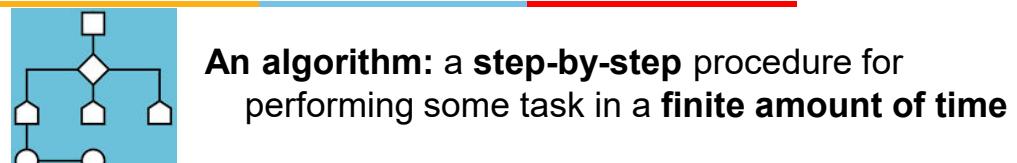


**discovered an  
analysis tool  
(displacement)**

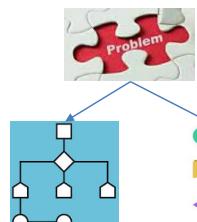
# Discovery of A Tool



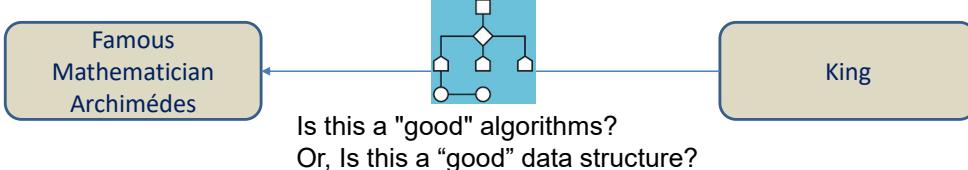
## But, what is an algorithm?



A data structure: a systematic way of organizing and **accessing** data.



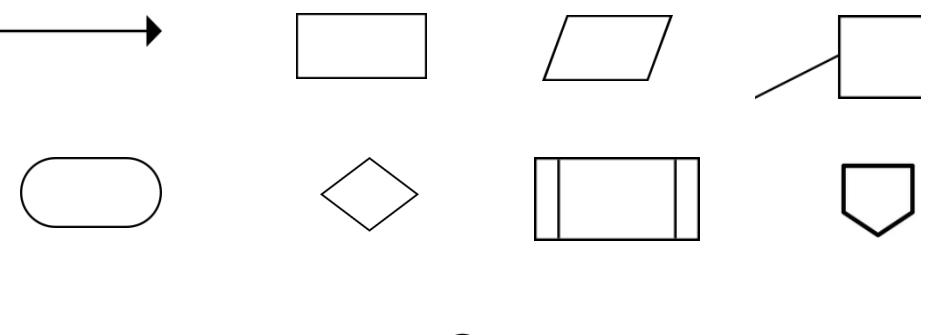
# How analogy fits to Algorithm?



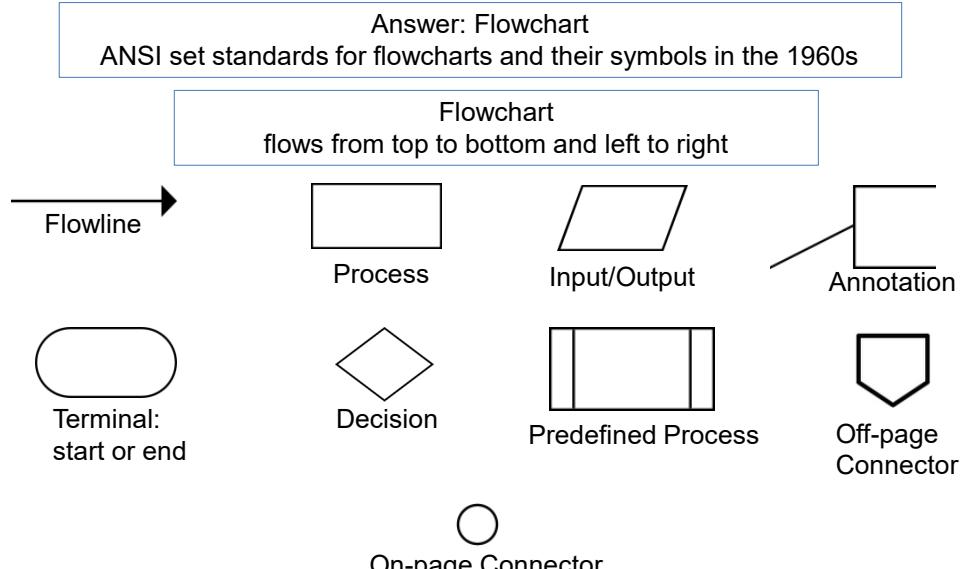
## How to develop an algorithmic thought?

Answer: Flowchart  
ANSI set standards for flowcharts and their symbols in the 1960s

Flowchart  
flows from top to bottom and left to right

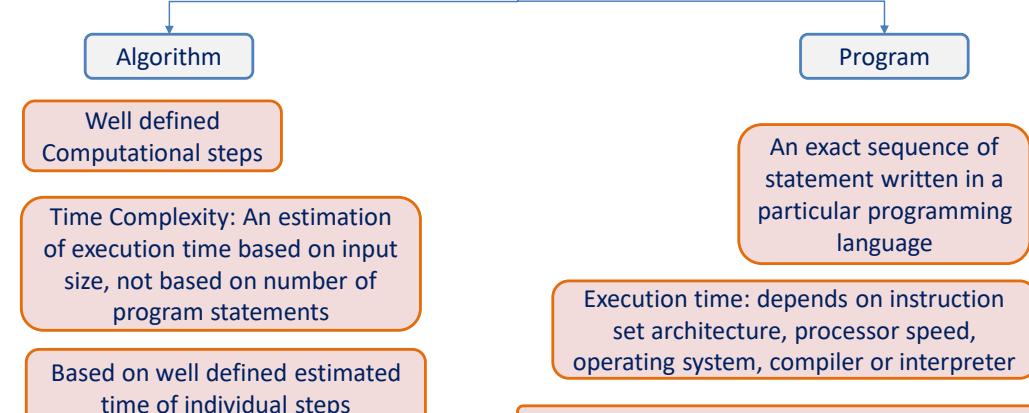


# How to develop an algorithmic thought?

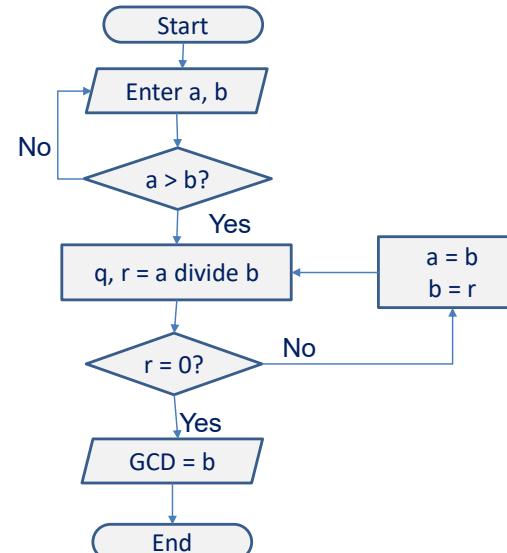


## How to Write an Algorithm?

### A Computational Problem



## Example of Flowchart: GCD



## Advantage of Run time

When we are interested in an accurate run time measurement, a program would need to be executed and, during execution, exact time for system calls and user functions can be calculated

Obviously, such a time measurement will depend on the language, its library, operating system and so on

However, we can then visualize the results of such experiments by plotting the execution time of each run of the program on y-axis and input size on x-coordinate

# An example of run time analysis

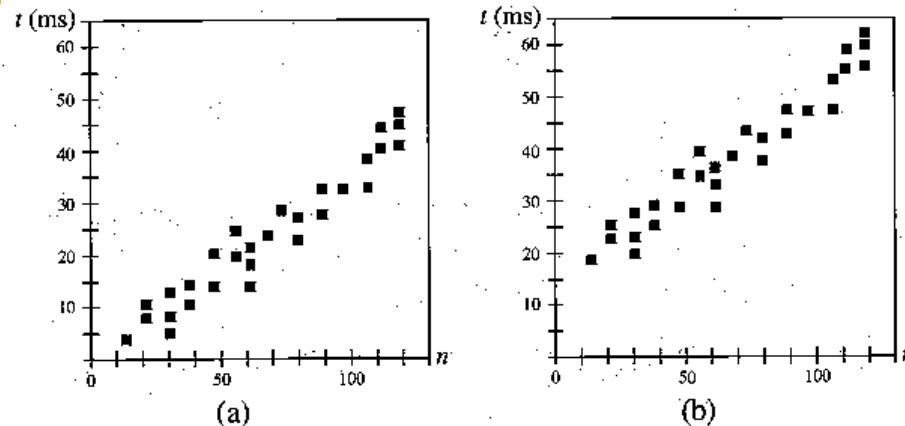
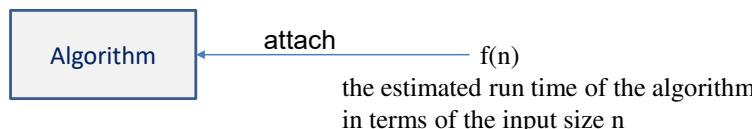


Figure 1.1: Results of an experimental study on the running time of a program. A dot with coordinates  $(n, t)$  indicates that on an input of size  $n$ , the running time of the program is  $t$  milliseconds (ms)  
(a) The algorithm executed on a fast computer;  
(b) the algorithm executed on a slow computer.

## Advantage of Time Complexity of Algorithm

- Takes into account all possible inputs
- Evaluates the relative efficiency of two algorithms independent of the hardware and software environment
- Performs a study on a high-level description of the algorithm without actually implementing or running it



For example, “Algorithm A runs in time proportional to  $n$ ” → if we were to perform experiments, we would find that the actual running time of algorithm A on any input of size  $n$  never exceeds  $cn$ , where  $c$  is a constant that depends on the hardware and software environment used in the experiment.

## Limitation of Run time of a program

- Experiments can be done only on a limited set of test inputs, and care must be taken to make sure these are representative.
- It is difficult to compare the efficiency of two algorithms unless experiments on their running times have been performed in the same hardware and software environments.
- It is necessary to implement and execute an algorithm in order to study its running time experimentally.

## Language of Algorithm

- A language for describing algorithms
- A computational model that algorithms execute
- A metric for measuring algorithm running time
- An approach for characterizing running times, including those for recursive algorithms.

# Pseudocode

A mixture of natural language and high-level programming constructs that describe the main ideas behind a generic implementation of a data structure or algorithm.

## Expression:

- 1) standard mathematical symbols to express numeric and Boolean expressions
- 2) left arrow ( $\leftarrow$ ) is the assignment operator
- 3) equal sign (=) is the equality relation in Boolean expressions

## Method declarations:

**Algorithm** name(param1 , param2 ,...)

## Decision structures:

- 1) if condition, then true-actions [else false-actions].

**indentation to indicate a block of expressions**

## Example Pseudocode

**Problem:** Find maximum number in an array of n numbers

**Algorithm** arrayMax( $A, n$ ):

**Input:** An array  $A$  storing  $n \geq 1$  integers.

**Output:** The maximum element in  $A$ .

```

currentMax  $\leftarrow A[0]$ 
for  $i \leftarrow 1$  to  $n - 1$  do
    if currentMax <  $A[i]$  then
        currentMax  $\leftarrow A[i]$ 
return currentMax

```

# Pseudocode

## Loops:

- 1) While-loops: while condition do actions.
- 2) Repeat-loops: repeat actions until condition.
- 3) For-loops for variable-increment-definition do actions

**indentation to indicate a block of expressions**

## Array indexing:

- 1)  $A[i]$  represents the  $i$ th cell in the array  $A$
- 2) The cells' of an  $n$ -celled array  $A$  are indexed from  $A[0]$  to  $A[n-1]$

Method calls: object.method(args) (object is optional)

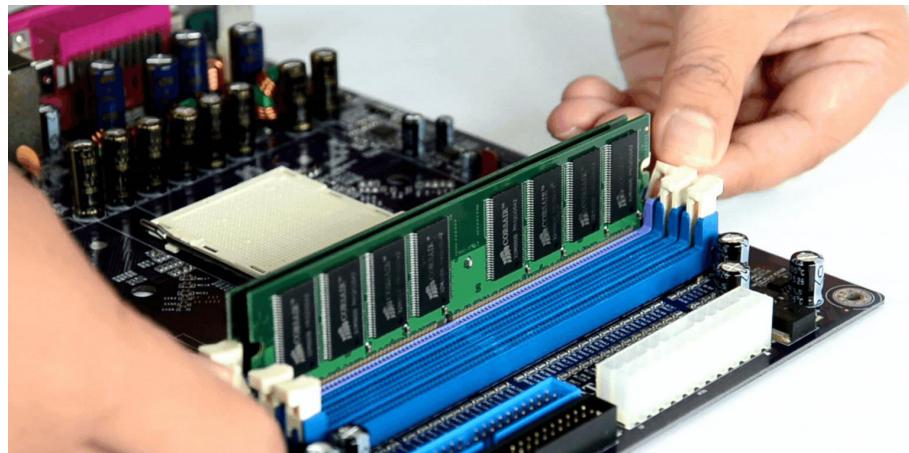
Method returns: return value

## Content of S1

1. Algorithms and its Specification
2. **Random Access Machine Model**
3. Notion of best case, average case and worst case
4. Notion of Algorithm Correctness

# Random Access Machine (RAM) Model

innovate achieve lead



BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

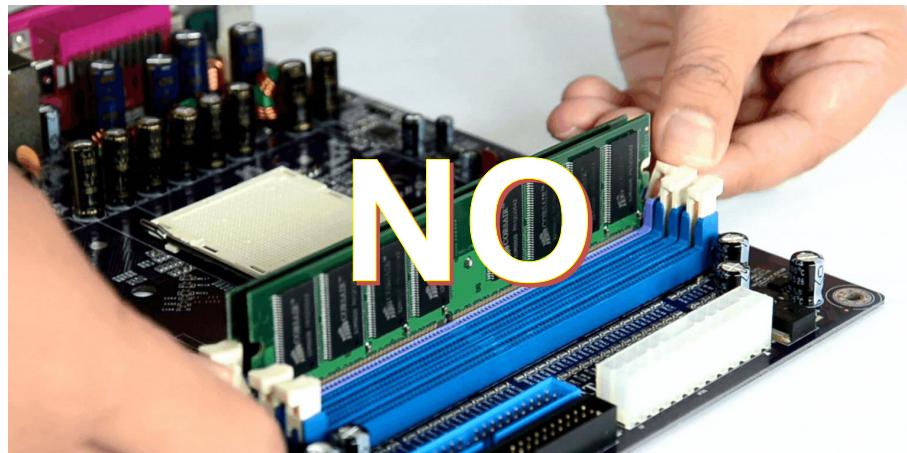
## Analysis on Pseudocode

- Experimental analysis is valuable, but has limitations
- If we wish to analyze a particular algorithm without performing experiments on running time, then we can analyze high-level code or pseudo-code
- For that to happen, we must identify high-level primitive operations
- Primitive operations
  - independent of the programming language
  - available in pseudocode

BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

# Random Access Machine (RAM) Model

innovate achieve lead



BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

## Analysis on Pseudocode

- What are primitive operations?

1) Assigning a value to variable	5) Calling a method
2) Performing an arithmetic operation	6) Comparing two basic numbers
3) Indexing into an array	7) Following an object reference
4) Returning from a method	

Instead of trying to determine the specific execution time of each primitive operation, we will simply count how many primitive operations are executed.  
We shall use this number  $t$  as a high-level estimate of the running time of the algorithm

BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

# References

- Algorithms Design: Foundations, Analysis and Internet Examples Michael T. Goodrich, Roberto Tamassia, 2006, Wiley (Students Edition)
- Data Structures, Algorithms and Applications in C++, Sartaj Sahni, Second Ed, 2005, Universities Press
- Introduction to Algorithms, TH Cormen, CE Leiserson, RL Rivest, C Stein, Third Ed, 2009, PHI

# Theoretical Foundation

## Data structure operations

- Traversing
- Searching
- Inserting
- Deleting
- Sorting
- Merging

# Theoretical Foundation

## Data structure

- Data: value or set of values. E.g. Rohit, 34, {11,33,2,51}, etc.
- Data structure: Logical or mathematical model of particular organization of data is called data structure.
- Array: A list of finite number of similar data elements. A[1], A[2], ..., A[N].
- Linked List: A list linked to one another.
- Stack: A linear list following Last In First Out system (LIFO).
- Queue: A linear list following First In First Out system (FIFO).
- Graph: A non-linear list consisting vertices and edges.
- Tree: A graph without cycles.



## Any Question!!



BITS Pilani  
Hyderabad Campus

# Thank you!!



## SESSION 2 -PLAN



Online Sessions(#)	List of Topic Title	Text/Ref Book/external resource
2	Notion of best case, average case and worst case. Use of asymptotic notations- Big-Oh, Omega and Theta Notations. Correctness of Algorithms.	T1: 1.4, 2.1



BITS Pilani  
Hyderabad Campus

# Data Structures and Algorithms Design ZG519

Febin.A.Vahab  
Asst.Professor(Offcampus)  
BITS Pilani,Bangalore



## Time Complexity- Why should we care?



**for i =2 to n-1  
If i divides n  
n is not prime**

**for i ← 2 to  $\sqrt{n}$   
if i divides n  
n is not prime**

1 ms for a division  
In worst case  $(n-2)$  times.

1 ms for a division  
In worst case  $(\sqrt{n}-1)$  times.

$n = 11 \dots ?$   
 $n = 101 \dots ?$

$n=11,(3-1) = 2\text{ms}$   
 $n=101,(\sqrt{101}-1) \text{ times} = 9\text{ms}$

## Notion of best case and worst case

- Best case: where algorithm takes the least time to execute.
  - In arrayMax ex, occurs when  $A[0]$  is the maximum element.
  - $T(n)=5n$
- Worst case :where algorithm takes maximum time.
  - Occurs when elements are sorted in increasing order so that variable *currentMax* is reassigned at each iteration of the loop.
  - $T(n)=7n-2$

```
Algorithm arrayMax(A,n)
  currentMax  $\leftarrow A[0]$ 
  for (i=1; i<n; i++)
    if A[i] > currentMax then
      currentMax  $\leftarrow A[i]$ 
  return currentMax
```

## Informal Introduction

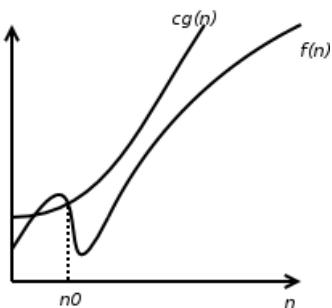
- $O(g(n))$  is the set of all functions with a lower or same order of growth as  $g(n)$  (to within a constant multiple, as  $n$  goes to infinity)
- $\Omega(g(n))$ , stands for the set of all functions with a higher or same order of growth as  $g(n)$  (to within a constant multiple, as  $n$  goes to infinity).
- $\Theta(g(n))$  is the set of all functions that have the same order of growth as  $g(n)$  (to within a constant multiple, as  $n$  goes to infinity).

## Use of asymptotic notation

- How the running time of an algorithm increases with the input size, as the size of the input increases without bound?
- Used to compare the algorithms based on the order of growth of their basic operations.

# Big-Oh Notation

- Let  $f$  and  $g$  be functions from nonnegative numbers to nonnegative numbers. Given functions  $f(n)$  and  $g(n)$ , we say that  $f(n)$  is  $O(g(n))$  if there is a real constant  $c > 0$  and an integer constant  $n_0 \geq 1$  such that  $f(n) \leq cg(n)$  for every integer  $n \geq n_0$



5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 8

## One Approach for Finding Witnesses

- Generate a table for  $f(n)$  and  $g(n)$  using  $n = 1$ ,  $n = 10$  and  $n = 100$ . [Use values smaller than 10 and 100 if you wish.]
- Guess  $C = \lceil f(1)/g(1) \rceil$  (or  $C = \lceil f(10)/g(10) \rceil$ ).
- Check that  $f(10) \leq C * g(10)$  and  $f(100) \leq C * g(100)$ . [If this is not true,  $f(n)$  might not be  $O(g(n))$ .]
- Choose  $n_0 = 1$  (or  $n_0 = 10$ ).
- Prove that  $\forall n (n \geq n_0 \rightarrow f(n) \leq C * g(n))$ .
- [It's ok if you end up with a larger, but still constant, value for  $C$ .]

# Big-Oh Notation

- Big-Oh notation provides an upper bound on a function to within a constant factor.
- To prove big-Oh, find witnesses, specific values for  $C$  and  $n_0$ , and prove  $n \geq n_0$  implies  $f(n) \leq C * g(n)$ .

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 9

## One Approach for Finding Witnesses

- Assume  $n > 1$  if you chose  $n_0 = 1$  (or  $n > 10$  if you chose  $n_0 = 10$ ).
- To prove  $f(n) \leq C * g(n)$ , you need to find expressions larger than  $f(n)$  and smaller than  $C * g(n)$ .
- If the lowest-order term is negative, just eliminate it to obtain a larger expression.
- Repeatedly use  $n > k$  and  $2n > 2k$  and  $3n > 3k$  and so on to "convert" the lowest-order term into a higher-order term.
- Check that your expressions are less than  $C * g(n)$  by using  $n = 100$ .

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 10

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 11

# Big-Oh Notation

## Example 1

Show that  $3n + 7$  is  $O(n)$ .

- In this case,  $f(n) = 3n + 7$  and  $g(n) = n$ .

n	f(n)	g(n)	Ceil(f(n)/g(n))
1	10	1	10
10	37	10	4
100	307	100	4

- This table suggests trying  $n_0 = 1$  and  $c = 10$  or
- $n_0 = 10$  and  $c = 4$ .
- Proving either one is good enough to prove big-Oh.

# Big-Oh Notation

## Example 1

Try  $n_0 = 1$  and  $c = 10$ .

- Want to prove  $n > 1 \text{ implies } 3n + 7 \leq 10n$ .
- Assume  $n > 1$ . Want to show  $3n + 7 \leq 10n$ .
- 7 is the lowest-order term, so work on that first.
- $n > 1 \text{ implies } 7n > 7$ , which implies
- $3n + 7 < 3n + 7n = 10n$ .
- This finishes the proof.

# Big-Oh Notation

## Example 2

- Show that  $n^2 + 2n + 1$  is  $O(n^2)$ .
- In this case,  $f(n) = n^2 + 2n + 1$  and  $g(n) = n^2$ .

n	f(n)	g(n)	Ceil(f(n)/g(n))
1	4	1	4
10	121	100	2
100	10201	10000	2

- This table suggests trying  $n_0 = 1$  and  $C = 4$
- or  $n_0 = 10$  and  $C = 2$ .

## Big-Oh Notation Example 2

- Try  $n_0 = 1$  and  $c = 4$ .
  - Want to prove  $n > 1$  implies  $n^2 + 2n + 1 \leq 4 n^2$ .
  - Assume  $n > 1$ .
  - Want to show  $n^2 + 2n + 1 \leq 4 n^2$ .
  - Work on the lowest-order term first.
  - $n > 1$  implies
  - $n^2 + 2n + 1 < n^2 + 2n + n = n^2 + 3n$
  - Now  $3n$  is the lowest-order term.
  - $n > 1$  implies  $3n > 3$  and  $3 n^2 > 3n$ , which implies
  - $n^2 + 3n < n^2 + (3n)n$
  - $= n^2 + 3 n^2 = 4 n^2$ . This finishes the proof.

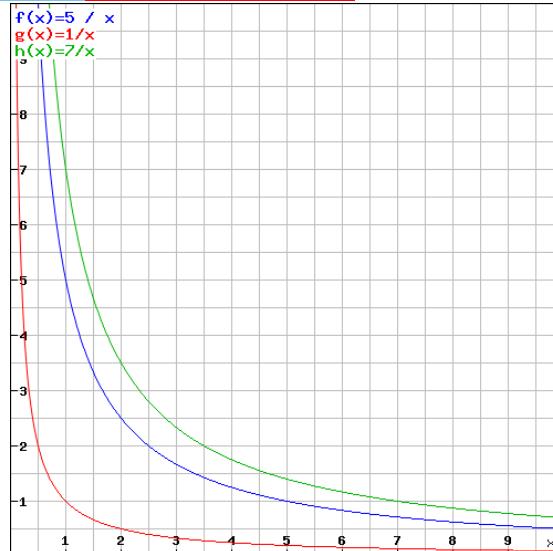
5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 16

## Big-Oh Notation Example 4

- Example
- $5/x$  is  $O(1/x)$
- $5/x \leq c \cdot 1/x$
- $c \geq 5$  for  $x \geq 1$



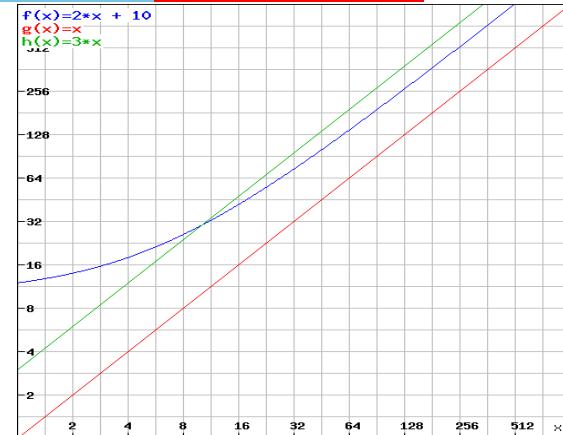
5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 18

## Big-Oh Notation Example 3

- Example
- $2n+10$  is  $O(n)$ 
  - ie.
  - $2n+10 \leq c \cdot n$
  - $10/n \leq (c-2)$
  - $10/c-2 \leq n$
  - $n \geq 10/(c-2)$
  - ie .If  $c=3, n=10$



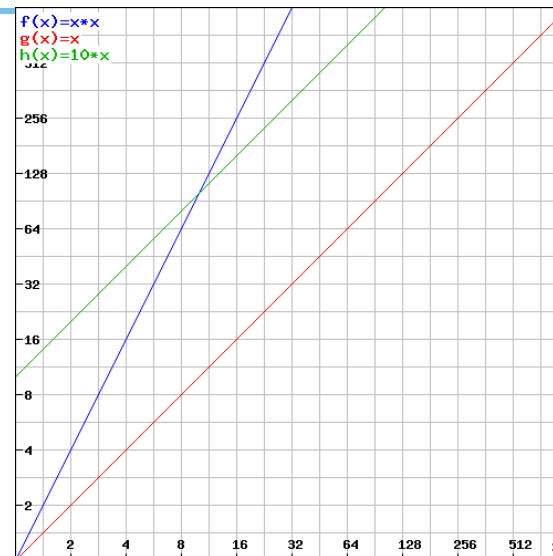
5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 17

## Big-Oh Notation Example 5

- Example:
- The function  $n^2$  is not  $O(n)$ 
  - $n^2 \leq cn$
  - $n \leq c$
  - The above inequality cannot be satisfied since  $c$  must be a positive constant



5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 19

## Big-Oh Notation Example 6

- Show that  $8n^3 - 12n^2 + 6n - 1$  is  $O(n^3)$ .
  - In this case,  $f(n) = 8n^3 - 12n^2 + 6n - 1$  and  $g(n) = n^3$

n	f(n)	g(n)	Ceil(f(n)/g(n))
1	1	1	1
10	6859	1000	7
100	7880599	1000000	8

- This table suggests trying  $n_0 = 100$  and  $C = 8$ .

## Big-Oh Notation -More examples

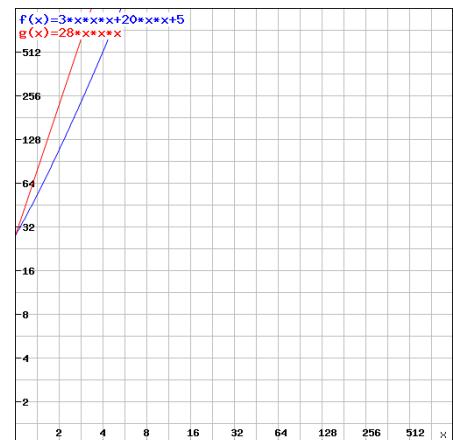
- $7n-2$  is  $O(n)$
- $3n^3 + 20n^2 + 5$  is  $O(n^3)$
- $3 \log n + \log \log n$  is  $O(\log n)$
- Solution using one method is given below. Try other one.

## Big-Oh Notation Example 6

- Try  $n_0 = 100$  and  $c = 8$ .
  - Want to prove  $n > 100$  implies  $8n^3 - 12n^2 + 6n - 1 \leq 8n^3$
  - Assume  $n > 100$ . Want to show  $f(n) \leq 8n^3$ .
  - The lowest-order term is negative, so eliminate it.
  - $8n^3 - 12n^2 + 6n - 1 < 8n^3 - 12n^2 + 6n$ .
  - $n > 100$  implies  $n > 6$ ,  $n^2 > 6n$  which implies
  - $8n^3 - 12n^2 + 6n < 8n^3 - 12n^2 + n^2 = 8n^3 - 11n^2$ .
  - Now lowest-order term is negative, so eliminate.
  - $n > 100$  implies  $8n^3 - 11n^2 \leq 8n^3$ .
  - This finishes the proof.

## Big-Oh Notation -More examples

- $7n-2$  is  $O(n)$ 
  - $7n-2 \leq cn$
  - $7-2/n \leq c$
  - $c \geq 7-2/n$
  - $n_0=1$  and  $c=7$  is true .**
- $3n^3 + 20n^2 + 5$  is  $O(n^3)$ 
  - $3n^3 + 20n^2 + 5 \leq c.n^3$
  - $3+20/n+5/n^3 \leq c$
  - $c \geq 3+20/n+5/n^3$
  - $c \geq 28$  and  $n_0 \geq 1$  is true**



# Big-Oh Notation

## -More examples

- $3 \log n + \log \log n$  is  $O(\log n)$ 
  - $3\log n + \log \log n < c \cdot \log n$
  - Let  $n=8$ ,
  - $3 \cdot 3 + \log 3 \leq 3c$
  - $9 + 1.58 \leq 3c$
  - $c \geq 4$
- OR
- $3 \log n + \log \log n \leq 4 \log n$ , for  $n \geq 2$ .
  - Note that  $\log \log n$  is not even defined for  $n = 1$ . That is why we use  $n \geq 2$ .

## Big-Oh Notation:Theorem

Let  $d(n)$ ,  $e(n)$ ,  $f(n)$ , and  $g(n)$  be functions mapping nonnegative integers to nonnegative reals. Then

1. If  $d(n) = O(f(n))$ , then  $ad(n) = O(f(n))$ , for any constant  $a > 0$ .
2. If  $d(n) = O(f(n))$  and  $e(n) = O(g(n))$ , then  $d(n) + e(n) = O(f(n) + g(n))$ .
3. If  $d(n) = O(f(n))$  and  $e(n) = O(g(n))$ , then  $d(n)e(n) = O(f(n)g(n))$ .
4. If  $d(n) = O(f(n))$  and  $f(n) = O(g(n))$ , then  $d(n) = O(g(n))$ .
5.  $n^x = O(a^n)$  for any fixed  $x > 0$  and  $a > 1$ .
6.  $\log n^x = O(\log n)$  for any fixed  $x > 0$ .

# Big-Oh Notation

- If  $f(n)$  a polynomial of degree  $d$ , then  $f(n) = O(n^d)$ , i.e.,
  1. Drop lower-order terms
  2. Drop constant factors
- Use the smallest possible class of functions
  - Say “ $2n$  is  $O(n)$ ” instead of “ $2n$  is  $O(n^2)$ ”
- Use the simplest expression of the class
  - Say “ $3n + 5$  is  $O(n)$ ” instead of “ $3n + 5$  is  $O(3n)$ ”

## Big-Oh Notation:Proof of Theorem

**1. If  $d(n) = O(f(n))$ , then  $a \cdot d(n) = O(f(n))$  for any constant  $a > 0$ .**

- $d(n) \leq C \cdot f(n)$  where  $C$  is a constant
- $a \cdot d(n) \leq a \cdot C \cdot f(n)$
- $a \cdot d(n) \leq C_1 \cdot f(n)$  where  $a \cdot C = C_1$
- Therefore  $a \cdot d(n) = O(f(n))$

## Big-Oh Notation: Proof of Theorem

- 2. If  $d(n)$  is  $O(f(n))$  and  $e(n)$  is  $O(g(n))$ , then  $d(n)+e(n)$  is  $O(f(n)+g(n))$ .** The proof will extend to orders of growth
- $d(n) \leq C_1 * f(n)$  for all  $n \geq n_1$  where  $C_1$  is a constant
  - $e(n) \leq C_2 * g(n)$  for all  $n \geq n_2$  where  $C_2$  is a constant
  - $d(n) + e(n) \leq C_1 * f(n) + C_2 * g(n)$
  - $\leq C_3 (f(n) + g(n))$  where  $C_3 = \max\{C_1, C_2\}$
  - and  $n \geq \max\{n_1, n_2\}$

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

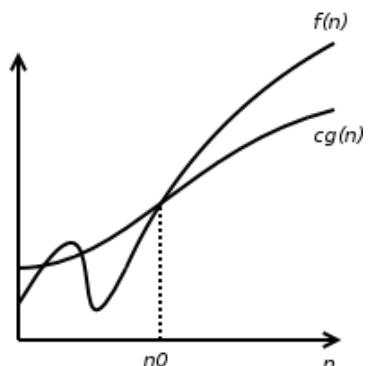
Page 28

## Big-Omega Notation

- The function  $f(n)$  is said to be in  $\Omega(g(n))$  iff there exists a positive constant  $c$  and a positive integer  $n_0$  such that

**$f(n) \geq c.g(n)$  for all  $n \geq n_0$ .**

- Asymptotic lower bound
- $n^3 \in \Omega(n^2)$
- $n^5+n+3 \in \Omega(n^4)$



5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 30

## Big-Oh Notation: Proof of Theorem

- 6.  $\log n^x$  is  $O(\log n)$  for any fixed  $x > 0$ .**

$$\log n^x \leq c \log n$$

$$x \log n \leq c \log n$$

$$c \geq x.$$

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 29

## Big-Omega Notation

- Big-Omega notation provides a lower bound on a function to within a constant factor.
- To prove big-Omega, find witnesses, specific values for  $C$  and  $n_0$ , and prove  $n > n_0$  implies  $f(n) \geq C * g(n)$ .

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 31

# Tricks for Proving Big-Omega

- Assume  $n > 1$  if you chose  $n_0 = 1$  (or  $n > 10$  if you chose  $n_0 = 10$ ).
- To prove  $f(n) \geq C * g(n)$ , you need to find expressions smaller than  $f(n)$  and larger than  $C * g(n)$ .
- If the lowest-order term is positive, just eliminate it to obtain a larger expression.
- Repeatedly use  $-n_0 > -n$  and  $-0.1n_0 > -0.1n$  and so on to “convert” the lowest-order term into a higher-order term.
- Check that your expressions are greater than  $C * g(n)$  by using  $n = 100$ .

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 32

## Big-Omega Example 1

- Show that  $3n + 7$  is  $\Omega(n)$ .
  - In this case,  $f(n) = 3n + 7$  and  $g(n) = n$ .

n	f(n)	g(n)	Ceil(g(n)/f(n))	C
1	10	1	1	1
10	37	10	1	1
100	307	100	1	1

- This table suggests trying  $n_0 = 1$  and  $C = 1$ .
- Want to prove  $n > 1$  implies  $3n + 7 \geq n$ .
- $n > 1$  implies  $3n + 7 > 3n > n$ .

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 34

# Tricks for Proving Big-Omega

- Generate a table for  $f(n)$  and  $g(n)$ . using  $n = 1$ ,  $n = 10$  and  $n = 100$ .[Use values smaller than 10 and 100 if you wish.]
- Guess  $1/C = [g(1)/f(1)]$  (or more likely  $1/C = [g(10)/f(10)]$ ).
- Check that  $f(10) \geq C * g(10)$  and  $f(100) \geq C * g(100)$ .[If this is not true,  $f(n)$  might not be  $(g(n))$ .]
- Choose  $n_0 = 1$  (or  $n_0 = 10$ ).
- Prove that  $\forall n (n > n_0 \rightarrow f(n) \geq C * g(n))$ .[It's ok if you end up with a smaller, but still positive, value for C.]

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 33

## Big-Omega Example 3

- Show that  $n^2 - 2n + 1$  is  $\Omega(n^2)$ .
- In this case,  $f(n) = n^2 - 2n + 1$  and  $g(n) = n^2$ .

n	f(n)	g(n)	Ceil(g(n)/f(n))	C
1	0	1	-	-
10	81	100	2	1/2
100	9801	10000	1	1/2

- This table suggests trying  $n_0 = 10$  and  $C = 1/2$ .

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 35

## Big-Omega Example 2

- Try  $n_0 = 10$  and  $C = 1/2$ .
  - Want to prove  $n > 10$  implies  $n^2 - 2n + 1 \geq n^2/2$ .
  - Assume  $n > 10$ . Want to show  $f(n) \geq n^2/2$ .
  - The lowest-order term is positive, so eliminate.
  - $n^2 - 2n + 1 > n^2 - 2n$
  - $n > 10$  implies  $-10 > -n$ , implies  $-2 > -0.2n$ .
  - $-2 > -0.2n$  implies  $n^2 - 2n > n^2 - 0.2n^2 = 0.8n^2$ .
  - $n > 10$  implies  $0.8n^2 > n^2/2$ .
  - This finishes the proof.

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 36

## Big-Omega Example 3

- Try  $n_0 = 10$  and  $C = 1/9$ .
  - Want to prove  $n > 10$  implies  $n^3/8 - n^2/12 - n/6 - 1 \geq n^3/9$
  - Assume  $n > 10$ , which implies the following:
    - $n^3/8 - n^2/12 - n/6 - 1$
    - $= (3n^3 - 2n^2 - 4n - 24)/24$
    - $> (3n^3 - 2n^2 - 4n - 2.4n)/24$
    - $> (3n^3 - 2n^2 - 7n)/24$
    - $> (3n^3 - 2n^2 - 0.7n^2)/24$
    - $> (3n^3 - 3n^2)/24$
    - $> (3n^3 - 0.3 n^3)/24$
    - $> (3n^3 - n^3)/24$
    - $= (2n^3)/24 = n^3/12$
  - Ended up with  $n_0 = 10$  and  $C = 1/12$ , proving
  - $n > 10$  implies  $n^3/8 - n^2/12 - n/6 - 1 \geq n^3/12$

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 38

## Big-Omega Example 3

- Show that  $n^3/8 - n^2/12 - n/6 - 1$  is  $O(n^3)$ .
- In this case,  $f(n) = n^3/8 - n^2/12 - n/6 - 1$  and  $g(n) = n^3$ .

n	f(n)	g(n)	Ceil(g(n)/f(n))	C
1	-8	1	-1	-1
10	117.3	1000	9	1/9
100	124,182.3	1000000	9	1/9

- $C = -1$  is useless, so try  $n_0 = 10$  and  $C = 1/9$

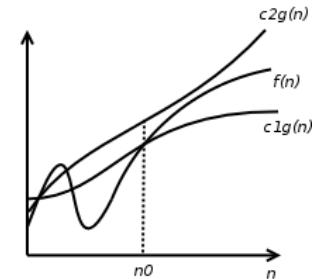
5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 37

## Big-Theta Notation

- The function  $f(n)$  is said to be in  $\Theta(g(n))$  iff there exists some positive constants  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  and a non negative integer  $n_0$  such that
 
$$c_1.g(n) \leq f(n) \leq c_2.g(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0$$
- Asymptotic tight bound**
- $an^2 + bn + c \in \Theta(n^2)$
- $n^2 \in \Theta(n^2)$



5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 39

## Examples – $\Omega$ and $\Theta$

- $f(n)=5n^2$  .Prove that  $f(n)$  is  $\Omega(n)$

- $5n^2 \geq c.n$
- $c.n \leq 5n^2$
- $c \leq 5n$
- If  $n=1, c \leq 5$
- $5 \cdot 1 \leq 4 \cdot 1$  hence the proof.

## Little-Oh and little omega Notation

- $f(n)$  is  $o(g(n))$  (or  $f(n) \in o(g(n))$ ) if for any real constant  $c > 0$ , there exists an integer constant  $n_0 \geq 1$  such that
  - $f(n) < c * g(n)$  for every integer  $n \geq n_0$ .
- $f(n)$  is  $\omega(g(n))$  (or  $f(n) \in \omega(g(n))$ ) if for any real constant  $c > 0$ , there exists an integer constant  $n_0 \geq 1$  such that
  - $f(n) > c * g(n)$  for every integer  $n \geq n_0$ .

## Examples – $\Omega$ and $\Theta$

- $f(n)=5n^2$  .Prove that  $f(n)$  is  $\Omega(n)$

- $5n^2 \geq c.n$
- $c.n \leq 5n^2$
- $c \leq 5n$
- If  $n=1, c \leq 5$
- $5 \cdot 1 \leq 4 \cdot 1$  hence the proof.

- Prove that  $f(n)$  is  $\Theta(n^2)$

## Little-Oh and Little omega Notation

- $12n^2 + 6n$  is  $o(n^3)$
- $4n+6$  is  $o(n^2)$
- $4n+6$  is  $\omega(1)$
- $2n^9 + 1$  is  $o(n^{10})$
- $n^2$  is  $\omega(\log n)$

### USING LIMITS

$$\text{Little Oh-} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{f(n)}{g(n)} = 0$$

$$\text{Little Omega} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{f(n)}{g(n)} = \infty$$

# Correctness of algorithm

- An algorithm is said to be correct if, for every input instance, it halts with the correct output.
- When it can be incorrect?
  - Might not halt on all input instances
  - Might halt with an incorrect answer
- Does it make sense to think of incorrect algorithm?
  - Might be useful if we can control the error rate and can be implemented very fast

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithm Design

Page 44



**BITS Pilani**  
Hyderabad Campus

## Data Structures and Algorithms Design ZG519

Febin.A.Vahab  
Asst.Professor(Offcampus)  
BITS Pilani,Bangalore



**THANK YOU!**



**BITS Pilani**  
Hyderabad Campus



## SESSION 3 -PLAN

Online Sessions(#)	List of Topic Title	Text/Ref Book/external resource
3	Analyzing Recursive Algorithms: Recurrence relations, Iteration Method, Substitution Method, Recursion Tree, Master Method.	T1: 1.4, 2.1

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 2

# Analyzing Recursive Algorithms

- Recursive calls:-A procedure P calling itself-calls to P are for solving sub problems of smaller size.
- Recursive procedure call should always define a **base case**.
- Base case-small enough that it can be solved directly without using recursion.

# Analyzing Recursive Algorithms

- A **recurrence** is an equation or inequality that describes a function in terms of its value on smaller inputs.
- Recurrence equation:** defines mathematical statements that the running time of a recursive algorithm must satisfy
- Analysis of **recursiveMax**

– T(n)-Running time of algorithm on an input size n

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} 3 & \text{if } n=1 \\ T(n-1) + 7 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

# Analyzing Recursive Algorithms

- Algorithm **recursiveMax(A,n)**
- ```
// Input : An array A storing n>=1 integers
// Output: The maximum element in A
if n = 1 then
    return A[0]
return max{ recursiveMax(A,n-1), A[n-1] }
```

# Solving Recurrences

## Analyzing Recursive Algorithms- Iterative method

### Solving recurrences : Iterative Method

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 7

## Analyzing Recursive Algorithms- RecursiveMax

- Analysis of ***recursiveMax***

T(n)-Running time of algorithm on an input size n

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} 3 & \text{if } n=1 \\ T(n-1) + 7 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

```
Algorithm recursiveMax(A,n)
// Input : An array A storing n>=1 integers
// Output: The maximum element in A
if n = 1 then
return A[0]
return max{ recursiveMax(A,n-1),A[n-1]}
```

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 8

## Analyzing Recursive Algorithms- Example 1:-Factorial of a number

- ***Algorithm fact(n)***

```
//Purpose: Computes factorial of n
//Input: A positive integer n
//Output: factorial of n
If(n=0)
return 1
return n*fact(n-1)
```

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 9

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 10

## Analyzing Recursive Algorithms- Example 1:-Factorial of a number

### • Analysis

– Parameter to be considered -n

– Basic operation -Multiplication

–  $T(n) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } n=0 \\ 1+T(n-1) & \text{Otherwise} \end{cases}$

Time taken to compute fact(n-1)

Time to multiply n\*fact(n-1)

## Analyzing Recursive Algorithms- Example 2:-Tower of hanoi

**Step 1** – Move n-1 disks from **source** to **temp**

**Step 2** – Move n<sup>th</sup> disk from **source** to **dest**

**Step 3** – Move n-1 disks from **temp** to **dest**



**Algorithm Hanoi(*n*, *source*, *dest*, *temp*)**

//Input: *n* :number of disks

//Output :All *n* disks on *dest*

If disk = 1

move disk from source to dest

Hanoi(*n* - 1, *source*, *temp*, *dest*) // Step 1

move nth disk from source to dest // Step 2

Hanoi(*n* - 1, *temp*, *dest*, *source*) // Step 3

## Analyzing Recursive Algorithms- Example 1:-Factorial of a number

### • Solve the recurrence

$$T(n) = T(n-1) + 1$$

$[T(n-2) + 1] + 1 = T(n-2) + 2$  substituted  $T(n-2)$  for  $T(n-1)$

$[T(n-3) + 1] + 2 = T(n-3) + 3$  substituted  $T(n-3)$  for  $T(n-2)$

.. a pattern evolves

$$T(n) = 1+T(n-1)$$

$$=2+T(n-2)$$

$$=3+T(n-3)$$

=....

$$=i+T(n-i)$$

When  $n=0$   $T(0)=0$ , No multiplications

When  $i=n$ ,  $T(n) = n+T(n-n)$

$$=n+0$$

$$=n \quad \underline{T(n) \in \Theta(n)}$$

## Analyzing Recursive Algorithms- Example 2:-Tower of hanoi



1. Problem size is  $n$ , the number of discs
2. The basic operation is moving a disc from rod to another
3. Base case  $M(1) = 1$
4. Recursive relation for moving  $n$  discs

$$M(n) = M(n-1) + 1 + M(n-1) = 2M(n-1) + 1$$

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 15

## Analyzing Recursive Algorithms- Example 2:- Tower of hanoi



When  $i=n-1$

$$\begin{aligned}M(n) &= 2^{n-1} M(n-(n-1)) + 2^{n-1} - 1 \\&= 2^{n-1} M(1) + 2^{n-1} - 1 \\&= 2^{n-1} + 2^{n-1} - 1 \\&= 2 * 2^{n-1} - 1 \\&= 2 * (2^n / 2) - 1 \\&= 2^n - 1\end{aligned}$$

**$M(n) \in O(2^n)$**

- Time complexity is exponential
- More computations even for smaller value of  $n$
- Doesn't necessarily mean algorithm is poor
- Nature of the problem itself is computationally expensive.

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 17

## Analyzing Recursive Algorithms- Example 2: Tower of hanoi



Solve using backward substitution

$$\begin{aligned}M(n) &= 2M(n-1) + 1 \\&= 2[2M(n-2) + 1] + 1 = 2^2M(n-2) + 2 + 1 \\&= 2^2[2M(n-3) + 1] + 2 + 1 \\&= 2^3M(n-3) + 2^2 + 2 + 1 \\&\dots \\M(n) &= 2^iM(n-i) + \underline{2^{i-1} + 2^{i-2} + \dots + 2^3 + 2^2 + 2^1 + 2^0} \\M(n) &= 2^iM(n-i) + (2^i - 1) / (2 - 1) \quad \text{It's a GP with } a=1, r=2, n=i \\&= 2^iM(n-i) + 2^i - 1\end{aligned}$$

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 16

## Analyzing Recursive Algorithms- Example 3:Exercise



**ALGORITHM**  $BinRec(n)$

```
//Input: A positive decimal integer n  
//Output: The number of binary digits in n's binary representation  
if  $n = 1$  return 1  
else return  $BinRec(n/2) + 1$ 
```

Let us set up a recurrence and an initial condition for the number of additions  $A(n)$  made by the algorithm. The number of additions made in computing

$BinRec(n/2)$  is  $A(n/2)$ , plus one more addition is made by the algorithm to increase the returned value by 1. This leads to the recurrence

$$A(n) = A(n/2) + 1 \text{ for } n > 1.$$

$$A(1) = 0$$

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 18

# Analyzing Recursive Algorithms- Example 3:Exercise



Base condition  $A(1)=0$

$$A(n)=A(n/2)+1$$

The presence of  $n/2$  in the function's argument makes the method of backward substitutions stumble on values of  $n$  that are not powers of 2. Therefore, the standard approach to solving such a recurrence is to solve it only for  $n = 2^k$  and then take advantage of the theorem called the **smoothness rule**, which claims that under very broad assumptions the order of growth observed for  $n = 2^k$  gives a correct answer about the order of growth for all values of  $n$ .

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 19

## Solving recurrences : Recursion Tree

```
Void Test (int n) {  
    if(n>1)  
    {  
        for (i=1;i<n;i++)  
        {  
            stmt;  
        }  
        Test(n/2);  
        Test(n/2);  
    }  
}
```

$$T(n)= \begin{cases} 0, & n=1 \\ 2T(n/2)+n & n>1 \end{cases}$$

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 20



5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 22

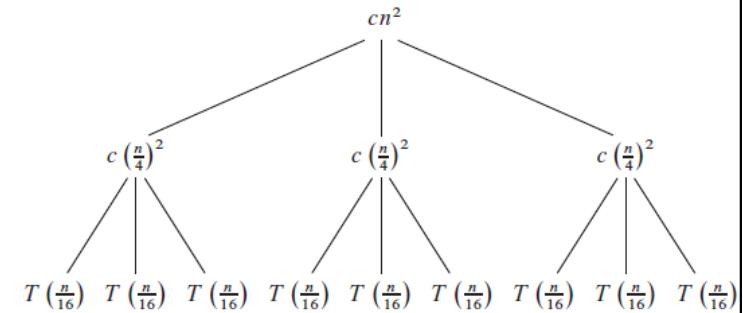
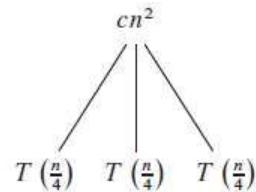
5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

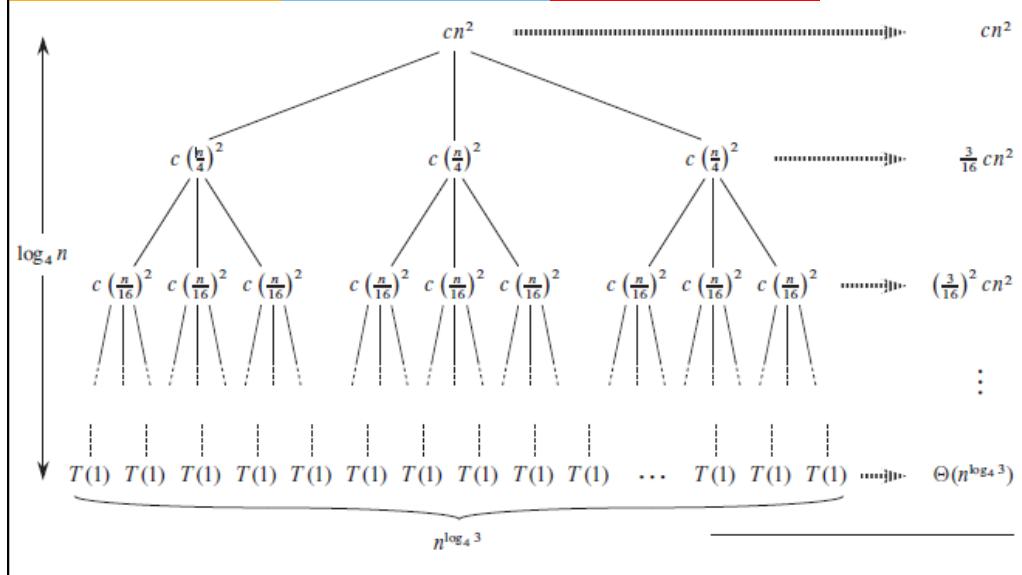
Page 21

## Solving Recurrences-Recursion Tree

- Solve  $T(n) = 3T(n/4) + cn^2$ ,



## Solving Recurrences-Recursion Tree



## Solving Recurrences-Recursion Tree

$$\begin{aligned}
 T(n) &= cn^2 + \frac{3}{16} cn^2 + \left(\frac{3}{16}\right)^2 cn^2 + \cdots + \left(\frac{3}{16}\right)^{\log_4 n-1} cn^2 + \Theta(n^{\log_4 3}) \\
 &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_4 n-1} \left(\frac{3}{16}\right)^i cn^2 + \Theta(n^{\log_4 3}) \\
 &= \frac{(3/16)^{\log_4 n} - 1}{(3/16) - 1} cn^2 + \Theta(n^{\log_4 3})
 \end{aligned}$$

Geometric or exponential series

$$\sum_{k=0}^n x^k = \frac{x^{n+1} - 1}{x - 1}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 T(n) &= \sum_{i=0}^{\log_4 n-1} \left(\frac{3}{16}\right)^i cn^2 + \Theta(n^{\log_4 3}) \\
 &< \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{3}{16}\right)^i cn^2 + \Theta(n^{\log_4 3}) \\
 &= \frac{1}{1 - (3/16)} cn^2 + \Theta(n^{\log_4 3}) \\
 &= \frac{16}{13} cn^2 + \Theta(n^{\log_4 3}) \\
 &= O(n^2).
 \end{aligned}$$

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 27

## Solving recurrences: Master method Ref: Textbook R2

- The master method applies to recurrences of the form  $T(n) = a T(n/b) + f(n)$ ,
- where  $a \geq 1$ ,  $b > 1$ , and  $f$  is asymptotically positive.
- ( $f(n) > 0$  for  $n \geq n_0$ )

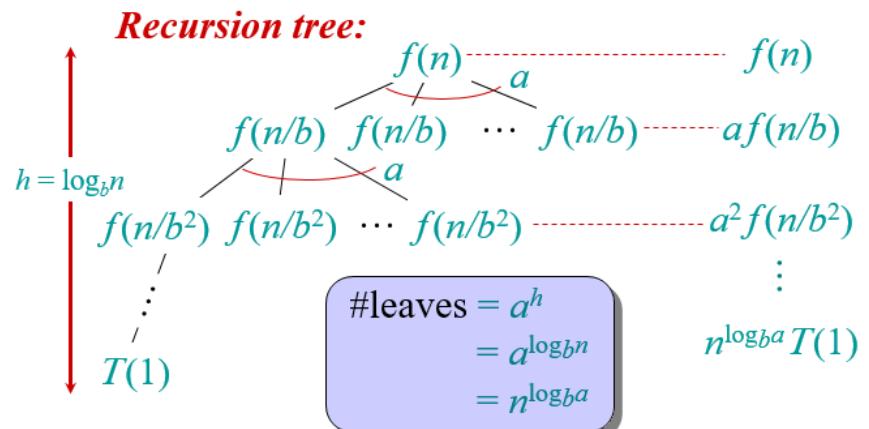
$$T(n) = a T(n/b) + f(n),$$

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 28

## Idea of Master theorem



5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 29

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 30

# Solving recurrences: Master method

Ref: Textbook R2

## Case 1:

If  $f(n) = O(n^{\log_b^{a-\varepsilon}})$ , for some constant  $\varepsilon > 0$ , then  $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b^a})$   
 **$f(n)$  grows polynomially slower than  $n^{\log_b^a}$**

## Case 2:

If  $f(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b^a})$ , then  $T(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b^a} \log n)$   
 **$f(n)$  and  $n^{\log_b^a}$  grows at similar rates**

## Case 3:

If  $f(n) = \Omega(n^{\log_b^{a+\varepsilon}})$  for some constant  $\varepsilon > 0$ , and if  
 $af(n/b) \leq cf(n)$  for some constant  $c < 1$  and all sufficiently  
large  $n$ , then  $T(n) = \Theta(f(n))$   
 **$f(n)$  grows polynomially faster than  $n^{\log_b^a}$**

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 31

# Solving recurrences: Master method

## Example 1 : $T(n) = 2T(n/2) + n$

Sol:

Extract  $a=2$ ,  $b=2$  and  $f(n) = n$

Determine  $n^{\log_b^a} = n^{\log_2^2} = n^1 = n$

Compare  $n^{\log_b^a} = n$

$$f(n) = n$$

Thus case 2: evenly distributed because

$$f(n) = \theta(n)$$

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= \theta(n^{\log_b^a} \log(n)) \\ &= \theta(n^1 \log(n)) \\ &= \theta(n \log n) \end{aligned}$$

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 33

# Solving recurrences: Master method

Ref: Textbook R2

## Case 2 : (Generalisation):

If there is a constant  $k \geq 0$ , such that  $f(n)$  is  $\Theta(n^{\log_b^a} \log^k n)$ ,  
then  $T(n)$  is  $\Theta(n^{\log_b^a} \log^{k+1} n)$

Example:

$$T(n) = 2T(n/2) + n \log n$$

$$a=2, b=2 \quad f(n)=n \log n$$

$$n^{\log_b^a} = n$$

$f(n)$  is asymptotically larger than  $n^{\log_b^a}$  but it is not polynomially larger.  
So no standard case of master theorem applies.

It belongs to case 2 general case.

$$f(n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b^a} \log^k n) = \Theta(n^{\log_b^a} \log^1 n)$$

$$\text{So } T(n) = \Theta(n \log^2 n)$$

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 32

# Solving recurrences: Master method

## Example 2 : $T(n) = 9T(n/3) + n$

$$a=9, b=3 \text{ and } f(n) = n$$

$$\text{Determine } n^{\log_b^a} = n^{\log_3^9} = n^2$$

$$\text{Compare: } n^{\log_b^a} = n^2$$

$$f(n) = n$$

Thus case 1; (express  $f(n)$  in terms of  $n^{\log_b^a}$ ) because  $f(n) = O(n^{2-\varepsilon})$

$$T(n) = \theta(n^{\log_b^a}) = \theta(n^2)$$

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 34

## Solving recurrences: Master method

### Example 3 : $T(n) = 3T(n/4) + n\log n$

a=3,

b=4,

f(n) = n log n

Determine;  $n^{\log_b a} = n^{\log_4 3}$        $\log_4 3 < 1$

Compare:  $n^{\log_b a}$  and f(n)

$n^{\log_4 3} \leq n \log n$  is asymptotically and polynomially larger

Thus case 3, but we have to check the regularity condition!

The following should be true:

$af(n/b) \leq cf(n)$  where  $c < 1$

$a(n/b) \log(n/b) \leq cf(n)$

$\Rightarrow 3(n/4) \log(n/4) \leq c n \log n$

$3/4 n \log(n/4) \leq c n \log n$ ,

this is true for  $c=3/4$    Hence. $T(n) = \Theta(n \log n)$

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 35

## Case Study: Analyzing Algorithms

- The following algorithm computes prefix averages in quadratic time by applying the definition

### Algorithm *prefixAverages1*(X, n)

|                                               |                           |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>Input</b> array X of $n$ integers          |                           |
| <b>Output</b> array A of prefix averages of X | #operations               |
| $A \leftarrow$ new array of $n$ integers      | $n$                       |
| for $i \leftarrow 0$ to $n - 1$ do            | $n$                       |
| $s \leftarrow X[0]$                           | $n$                       |
| for $j \leftarrow 1$ to $i$ do                | $1 + 2 + \dots + (n - 1)$ |
| $s \leftarrow s + X[j]$                       | $1 + 2 + \dots + (n - 1)$ |
| $A[i] \leftarrow s / (i + 1)$                 | $n$                       |
| return A                                      | 1                         |

Algorithm *prefixAverages1* runs in  $O(n^2)$  time

## Case Study: Analyzing Algorithms

- Computing the prefix averages of a sequence of numbers.

The  $i$ -th prefix average of an array  $X$  is average of the first

$(i + 1)$  elements of  $X$ :

$$A[i] = (X[0] + X[1] + \dots + X[i])/(i+1)$$

- Applications

- Runtime analysis example:

Two algorithms for prefix averages

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 36

## Case Study: Analyzing Algorithms

- The following algorithm computes prefix averages in linear time by keeping a running sum

### Algorithm *prefixAverages2*(X, n)

|                                               |             |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------|
| <b>Input</b> array X of $n$ integers          |             |
| <b>Output</b> array A of prefix averages of X | #operations |
| $A \leftarrow$ new array of $n$ integers      | $n$         |
| $s \leftarrow 0$                              | 1           |
| for $i \leftarrow 0$ to $n - 1$ do            | $n$         |
| $s \leftarrow s + X[i]$                       | $n$         |
| $A[i] \leftarrow s / (i + 1)$                 | $n$         |
| return A                                      | 1           |

Algorithm *prefixAverages2* runs in  $O(n)$  time

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 37

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 38

## Homework Problems

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 39

## Solving recurrences : Iterative Method

```
Void Test (int n)
{
    if(n>1)
    {
        for (i=1;i<n;i++)
        {
            stmt;
        }
        Test(n/2);
        Test(n/2);
    }
}
```

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} 0, & n=1 \\ 2T(n/2) + n, & n>1 \end{cases}$$

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 41

## Solving recurrences : Iterative Method

```
void test(int n)
```

{

```
if(n>0)
```

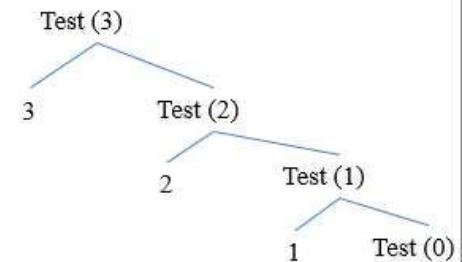
{

```
printf("%d",n);
```

```
test(n-1);
```

}

}



$$T(n) = \begin{cases} 0, & n = 0 \\ T(n-1) + 1, & n > 0 \end{cases}$$

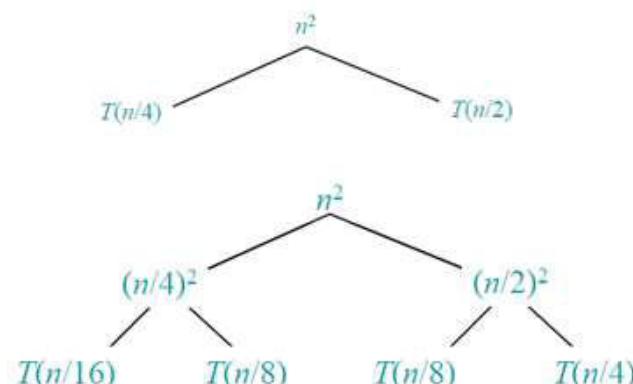
5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 40

## Solving Recurrences-Recursion Tree

Solve  $T(n) = T(n/4) + T(n/2) + n^2$ :

 $T(n)$ 

5/11/2025

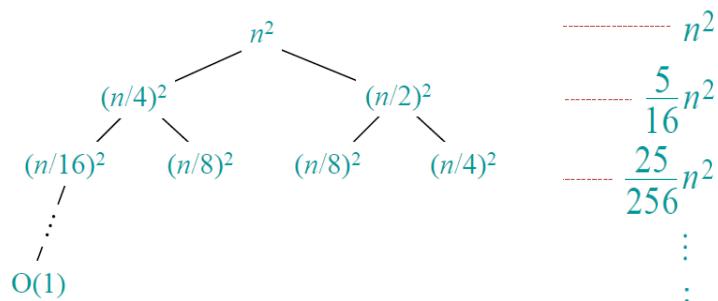
Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 42

## Solving Recurrences-Recursion Tree

Innovate achieve lead

Solve  $T(n) = T(n/4) + T(n/2) + n^2$ :



$$\text{Total} = n^2 \left( 1 + \frac{5}{16} + \left(\frac{5}{16}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{5}{16}\right)^3 + \dots \right)$$
$$= O(n^2) \quad \text{geometric series}$$

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 43



BITS Pilani  
Hyderabad Campus

THANK YOU!

## Master method Problems

- $T(n)=9T(n/3)+n$
- $T(n)=T(2n/3)+1$
- $T(n)=3T(n/4)+n\log n$
- $T(n)=2T(n/2)+n\lg n$
- $T(n)=8T(n/2)+\Theta(n^2)$

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 44



S2 Characterizing Time Complexity,  
Asymptotic Notation, Recurrence Relation,  
Master Theorem

## Content of S2

1. Characterizing Time Complexity
  1. Use of Asymptotic Notation
  2. Big-Oh, Big-Omega, Theta Notations
2. Analyzing Recursive Algorithm
  1. Recurrence Relation
  2. Runtime of Recursive Algorithm
  3. Master Theorem

## Analyzing Algorithm

→Used to mean the prediction of **resource** consumption  
 →But, **what** is the **resource**?

**Primarily** i) **memory**, ii) communication **bandwidth**, iii)  
 computer **hardware**

**But**, most often we are interested in **computational time**

Which computer should be taken as a base case or standard?

➤ **Random Access Machine (RAM)** model of a computer

## Analyzing Algorithm

→Used to mean the prediction of **resource** consumption  
 →But, **what** is the **resource**?

## Random Access Machine Model

**Instructions** in RAM that takes **one unit of time**

- 1) **Arithmetic**: Add, Sub, Mul, Div, Rem, Floor, Ceil
- 2) **Data movement**: Load, Store, Copy
- 3) **Control**: Subroutine call, Return, Conditional and Unconditional Branch

**Data Types** in RAM (**fixed size**, like 8 bit or 16 bit or 32 bit)

- 1) Integer
- 2) Float

## RAM model: What is not an instruction?

- 1) "Sort" – even if, in some computer, sort can be done in one instruction
- 2) "exponentiation" –  $x^y$ 
  - there may be many algorithms to compute  $x^y$ , but it is not a single instruction if  $y$  is a variable or a large integer
  - But,  $x^k$  is a single instruction, where **k is a constant and very small**

BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

## RAM model: memory hierarchy

We do not consider any complex memory hierarchy, like having cache or virtual memory.

### Simplicity of RAM model

- Though simple, but an excellent predictor of performance on actual computer
- Though simple, exact prediction can still be challenging
- Often, it would require tools like combinatorics, probability theory, algebraic dexterity and the ability to identify the most significant terms in a formula

BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

## RAM model: memory hierarchy

We do not consider any complex memory hierarchy, like having cache or virtual memory.

BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

## Content of S2

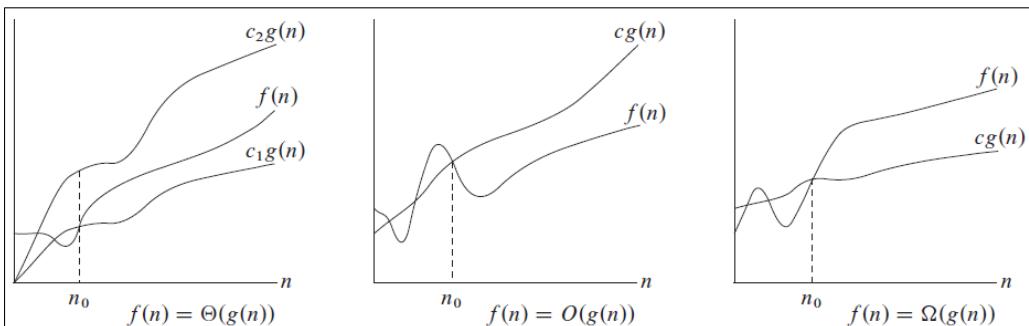
1. Characterizing Time Complexity
  1. Use of Asymptotic Notation
  2. Big-Oh, Big-Omega, Theta Notations
2. Analyzing Recursive Algorithm
  1. Recurrence Relation
  2. Runtime of Recursive Algorithm
  3. Master Theorem

BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

# Characterizing Time Complexity

Big-Oh Notation, Omega and Theta Notations:

- Asymptotic notation primarily describes the running times of algorithms, i.e., time complexity



# Characterizing Time Complexity

Big-Oh Notation:  $f(n) = O(g(n))$ .

- $g(n)$  is an asymptotically upper bound for  $f(n)$ .

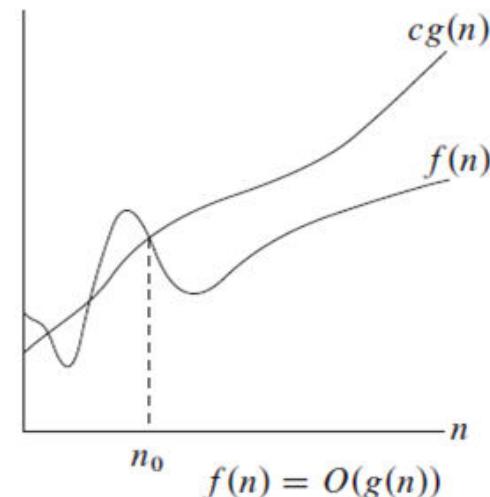
$O(g(n)) = \{f(n) : \text{there exist positive constants } c \text{ and } n_0 \text{ such that } 0 \leq f(n) \leq cg(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0\}$ .

- $f(n) = \Theta(g(n))$  implies that  $f(n) = O(g(n))$ ,  
i.e.,  $\Theta(g(n)) \in O(g(n))$

# Content of S2

- Characterizing Time Complexity
  - Use of Asymptotic Notation
  - Big-Oh, Big-Omega, Theta Notations**
  - Analyzing Recursive Algorithm
    - Recurrence Relation
    - Runtime of Recursive Algorithm
    - Master Theorem

# Graphical representation of Big-O



# Example: Time Complexity Big-O

**Ex-1**  $f(n) = 2n+2$   
 $2n+2 \leq 10n$ , where  $n \geq 1$   
 Here,  $c = 10$ ,  $\mathbf{g(n) = n}$   
 $f(n) = O(g(n)) = O(n)$ .

**Ex-2**  $f(n) = 2n+2$   
 $2n+2 \leq 10n^2$ , where  $n \geq 1$   
 Here,  $c = 10$ ,  $\mathbf{g(n) = n^2}$   
 $f(n) = O(g(n)) = O(n^2)$ .

**Ex-3**  $f(n) = 2n+2$   
 $2n+2 \leq 10n^3$ , where  $n \geq 1$   
 Here,  $c = 10$ ,  $\mathbf{g(n) = n^3}$   
 $f(n) = O(g(n)) = O(n^3)$ .

**Ex-4**  $f(n) = 2n^2+5$   
 $2n^2+5 \leq 2n^2+5n^2 = 7n^2$ , where  $n \geq 1$   
 Here,  $c = 7$ ,  $\mathbf{g(n) = n^2}$   
 $f(n) = O(g(n)) = O(n^2)$ .

$O(g(n)) = \{f(n) : \text{there exist positive constants } c \text{ and } n_0 \text{ such that } 0 \leq f(n) \leq cg(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0\}$

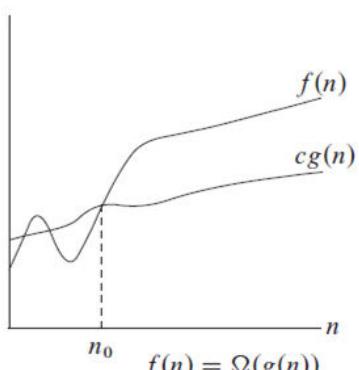
BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

# Time Complexity: Big-Omega

Omega Notation:  $f(n) = \Omega(g(n))$ .

- $g(n)$  is an asymptotically lower bound for  $f(n)$ .

$\Omega(g(n)) = \{f(n) : \text{there exist positive constants } c \text{ and } n_0 \text{ such that } 0 \leq cg(n) \leq f(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0\}$



BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

# Example: Time Complexity Big-O

**Ex-5**  $f(n) = 7n-2$   
 Here,  $c = 7$ ,  $n \geq 1$   
 $\rightarrow 7n - 2 \leq cn$ ,  $\mathbf{g(n) = n}$   
 $f(n) = O(g(n)) = O(n)$ .

**Ex-6**  $f(n) = 20n^3 + 10n\log n + 5$   
 Here,  $c = 35$ ,  $\mathbf{g(n) = n^3}$   
 $f(n) = O(g(n)) = O(n^3)$ .

**Ex-7**  $f(n) = 3\log n + \log \log n$   
 Here,  $c = 4$ ,  $\mathbf{g(n) = \log n}$   
 $f(n) = O(g(n)) = O(\log n)$ .

**Ex-8**  $f(n) = 2^{100}$   
 Here,  $c = 2^{100}$ ,  $\mathbf{g(n) = 1}$   
 $f(n) = O(g(n)) = O(1)$ .

**Ex-9**  $f(n) = 5/n$   
 Here,  $c = 5$ ,  $\mathbf{g(n) = 1/n}$   
 $f(n) = O(g(n)) = O(1/n)$ .

$O(g(n)) = \{f(n) : \text{there exist positive constants } c \text{ and } n_0 \text{ such that } 0 \leq f(n) \leq cg(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0\}$

BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

# Example: Omega Notation

**Ex-1**  $f(n) = 2n+2$   
 $2n+2 \geq 2n$ , where  $n \geq 1$   
 Here,  $c = 2$ ,  $\mathbf{g(n) = n}$   
 $f(n) = \Omega(g(n)) = \Omega(n)$

**Ex-2**  $f(n) = 2n+2$   
 $2n+2 \geq \sqrt{n}$ , where  $n \geq 1$   
 Here,  $c = 1$ ,  $\mathbf{g(n) = \sqrt{n}}$   
 $f(n) = \Omega(g(n)) = \Omega(\sqrt{n})$

**Ex-3**  $f(n) = 2n+2$   
 $2n+2 \geq \log n$ , where  $n \geq 1$   
 Here,  $c = 1$ ,  $\mathbf{g(n) = \log n}$   
 $f(n) = \Omega(g(n)) = \Omega(\log n)$

**Ex-4**  $f(n) = 2n^2+5$   
 $2n^2+5 \geq 2n^2$ , where  $n \geq 1$   
 Here,  $c = 2$ ,  $\mathbf{g(n) = n^2}$   
 $f(n) = \Omega(g(n)) = \Omega(n^2)$

$\Omega(g(n)) = \{f(n) : \text{there exist positive constants } c \text{ and } n_0 \text{ such that } 0 \leq cg(n) \leq f(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0\}$

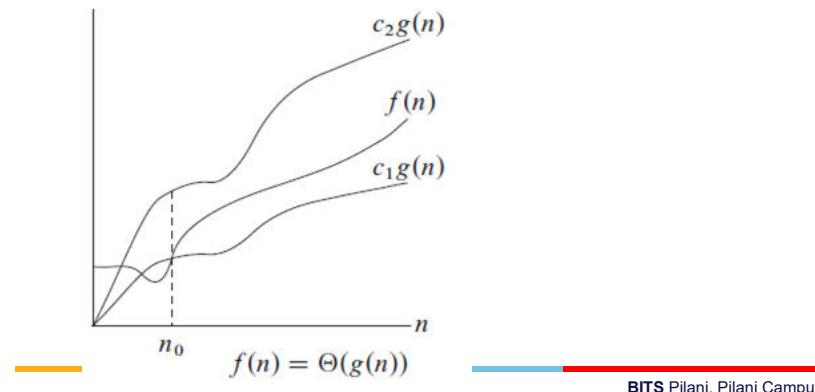
BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

# Characterizing Run Time

Theta Notation:  $f(n) = \Theta(g(n))$ .

- $g(n)$  is an asymptotically tight bound for  $f(n)$ .

$\Theta(g(n)) = \{f(n) : \text{there exist positive constants } c_1, c_2, \text{ and } n_0 \text{ such that } 0 \leq c_1g(n) \leq f(n) \leq c_2g(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0\}$ .<sup>1</sup>



BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

## Time Complexity: Little-Oh, Little-omega

$o$ -notation:

$o(g(n)) = \{f(n) : \text{for any positive constant } c > 0, \text{ there exists a constant } n_0 > 0 \text{ such that } 0 \leq f(n) < cg(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0\}$ .

# Example: Theta Notation

**Ex-1**  $f(n) = \frac{n^2}{2} - \frac{n}{2}$

$$\frac{n^2}{4} \leq \frac{n^2}{2} - \frac{n}{2} \leq \frac{n^2}{2}, \text{ where } n \geq 2$$

$$c_1 = \frac{1}{4}, c_2 = \frac{1}{2}, g(n) = n^2$$

$$f(n) = \Theta(g(n)) = \Theta(n^2).$$

**Ex-2**  $f(n) = 6n^3 \neq \Theta(n^2), \text{ why?}$

$$c_1 n^2 \leq 6n^3 \leq c_2 n^2, \text{ where } n \geq 1$$

There exists no  $c_2$  that implies  $6n^3 \leq c_2 n^2$

$\Theta(g(n)) = \{f(n) : \text{there exist positive constants } c_1, c_2, \text{ and } n_0 \text{ such that } 0 \leq c_1g(n) \leq f(n) \leq c_2g(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0\}$ .<sup>1</sup>

BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

## Time Complexity: Little-Oh, Little-omega

$\omega$ -notation:

$\omega(g(n)) = \{f(n) : \text{for any positive constant } c > 0, \text{ there exists a constant } n_0 > 0 \text{ such that } cg(n) < f(n) \text{ for all } n \geq n_0\}$ .

# Notation Summary

Because these properties hold for asymptotic notations, we can draw an analogy between the asymptotic comparison of two functions  $f$  and  $g$  and the comparison of two real numbers  $a$  and  $b$ :

- $f(n) = O(g(n))$  is like  $a \leq b$ ,
- $f(n) = \Omega(g(n))$  is like  $a \geq b$ ,
- $f(n) = \Theta(g(n))$  is like  $a = b$ ,
- $f(n) = o(g(n))$  is like  $a < b$ ,
- $f(n) = \omega(g(n))$  is like  $a > b$ .

## Summary of Properties

- Comparison

### Symmetry:

$$f(n) = \Theta(g(n)) \text{ if and only if } g(n) = \Theta(f(n)).$$

### Transpose symmetry:

$$\begin{aligned} f(n) = O(g(n)) &\text{ if and only if } g(n) = \Omega(f(n)), \\ f(n) = o(g(n)) &\text{ if and only if } g(n) = \omega(f(n)). \end{aligned}$$

# Properties of Time Complexity

- Comparison

### Transitivity:

$$\begin{aligned} f(n) = \Theta(g(n)) \text{ and } g(n) = \Theta(h(n)) &\text{ imply } f(n) = \Theta(h(n)), \\ f(n) = O(g(n)) \text{ and } g(n) = O(h(n)) &\text{ imply } f(n) = O(h(n)), \\ f(n) = \Omega(g(n)) \text{ and } g(n) = \Omega(h(n)) &\text{ imply } f(n) = \Omega(h(n)), \\ f(n) = o(g(n)) \text{ and } g(n) = o(h(n)) &\text{ imply } f(n) = o(h(n)), \\ f(n) = \omega(g(n)) \text{ and } g(n) = \omega(h(n)) &\text{ imply } f(n) = \omega(h(n)). \end{aligned}$$

### Reflexivity:

$$\begin{aligned} f(n) &= \Theta(f(n)), \\ f(n) &= O(f(n)), \\ f(n) &= \Omega(f(n)). \end{aligned}$$

## Content of S2

1. Characterizing Time Complexity
  1. Use of Asymptotic Notation
  2. Big-Oh, Big-Omega, Theta Notations
  2. Analyzing Recursive Algorithm
    1. Runtime of Recursive Algorithm
    2. Recurrence Relation
    3. Master Theorem

# Analyzing Recursive Algorithms

## Algorithm recursiveMax( $A, n$ ):

**Input:** An array  $A$  storing  $n \geq 1$  integers.

**Output:** The maximum element in  $A$ .

```

if  $n = 1$  then
    return  $A[0]$ 
return max{recursiveMax( $A, n - 1$ ),  $A[n - 1]$ }

```

# Analyzing Recursive Algorithms

## Algorithm recursiveMax( $A, n$ ):

**Input:** An array  $A$  storing  $n \geq 1$  integers.

**Output:** The maximum element in  $A$ .

```

1   if  $n = 1$  then
    return  $A[0]$ 
2+1 return max{recursiveMax( $A, n - 1$ ),  $A[n - 1]$ }

```

1 + 1      T(n-1) + 1      1 + 1

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} 3, & \text{if } n = 1 \\ T(n - 1) + 6, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

# Analyzing Recursive Algorithms

## Algorithm recursiveMax( $A, n$ ):

**Input:** An array  $A$  storing  $n \geq 1$  integers.

**Output:** The maximum element in  $A$ .

```

if  $n = 1$  then
    return  $A[0]$ 
return max{recursiveMax( $A, n - 1$ ),  $A[n - 1]$ }

```

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} 2, & \text{if } n = 1 \\ T(n - 1) + 4, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

# Content of S2

1. Characterizing Time Complexity
  1. Use of Asymptotic Notation
  2. Big-Oh, Big-Omega, Theta Notations
2. Analyzing Recursive Algorithm
  1. Runtime of Recursive Algorithm
  2. Recurrence Relation
  3. Master Theorem

# Recurrence Relation

**Def<sup>n</sup>:** A recurrence relation is an equation that defines a sequence based on a rule that gives the next term as a function of the previous term(s).

Mathematically,  $x_{n+1} = f(x_n)$  : a simple recurrence relation, also called as first order recurrence relation.

# Recurrence Relation

**Def<sup>n</sup>:** A recurrence relation is an equation that defines a sequence based on a rule that gives the next term as a function of the previous term(s).

Mathematically,  $x_{n+1} = f(x_n)$  : a simple recurrence relation, also called as first order recurrence relation.

Example of first order recurrence relation:

$$1) \quad x_{n+1} = 2 - x_{n/2}$$

A second order recurrence relation depends just on  $x_n$  and  $x_{n-1}$  and is of the form  $x_{n+1} = f(x_n, x_{n-1})$

Example:  $x_{n+1} = x_n + x_{n-1}$

# Recurrence Relation

**Def<sup>n</sup>:** A recurrence relation is an equation that defines a sequence based on a rule that gives the next term as a function of the previous term(s).

Mathematically,  $x_{n+1} = f(x_n)$  : a simple recurrence relation, also called as first order recurrence relation.

Example of first order recurrence relation:

$$1) \quad x_{n+1} = 2 - x_{n/2}$$

# Content of S2

1. Characterizing Time Complexity
  1. Use of Asymptotic Notation
  2. Big-Oh, Big-Omega, Theta Notations
2. Analyzing Recursive Algorithm
  1. Runtime of Recursive Algorithm
  2. Recurrence Relation
  3. Master Theorem

# Analyzing Recursive Algorithms

## Solving recurrence equations

### 1. Master Theorem for Dividing Functions

$$T(n) = aT\left(\frac{n}{b}\right) + g(n)$$

where  $g(n)$  is  $O(n^k \log^p n)$ , where  $p$  and  $k$  are integers.

- a)  $a < b^k$ : if  $p < 0$ , then  $T(n) = O(n^k)$

# Analyzing Recursive Algorithms

## Solving recurrence equations

### 1. Master Theorem for Dividing Functions

$$T(n) = aT\left(\frac{n}{b}\right) + g(n)$$

where  $g(n)$  is  $O(n^k \log^p n)$

- a)  $a < b^k$ : if  $p < 0$ , then  $T(n) = O(n^k)$   
if  $p \geq 0$ , then  $T(n) = O(n^k \log^p n)$
- b)  $a = b^k$ : if  $p > -1$ , then  $T(n) = O(n^k \log^{p+1} n)$   
if  $p = -1$ , then  $T(n) = O(n^k \log \log n)$   
if  $p < -1$ , then  $T(n) = O(n^k)$

# Analyzing Recursive Algorithms

## Solving recurrence equations

### 1. Master Theorem for Dividing Functions

$$T(n) = aT\left(\frac{n}{b}\right) + g(n)$$

where  $g(n)$  is  $O(n^k \log^p n)$ , where  $p$  and  $k$  are integers.

- a)  $a < b^k$ : if  $p < 0$ , then  $T(n) = O(n^k)$   
if  $p \geq 0$ , then  $T(n) = O(n^k \log^p n)$

# Analyzing Recursive Algorithms

## Solving recurrence equations

### 1. Master Theorem for Dividing Functions

$$T(n) = aT\left(\frac{n}{b}\right) + g(n)$$

where  $g(n)$  is  $O(n^k \log^p n)$

- a)  $a < b^k$ : if  $p < 0$ , then  $T(n) = O(n^k)$   
if  $p \geq 0$ , then  $T(n) = O(n^k \log^p n)$
- b)  $a = b^k$ : if  $p > -1$ , then  $T(n) = O(n^k \log^{p+1} n)$   
if  $p = -1$ , then  $T(n) = O(n^k \log \log n)$   
if  $p < -1$ , then  $T(n) = O(n^k)$
- c)  $a > b^k$ :  $T(n) = O(n^{\log_b a})$

## Solution using Master Theorem

$g(n)$  is  $O(n^k \log^p n)$

**Ex-1**  $T(n) = 4T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + n$ ,  
 $a = 4, b = 2, k = 1, p = 0$ .  
 $a = 4, b^k = 2 \rightarrow a > b^k$   
 $T(n) = O(n^{\log_2 4}) = O(n^2)$

**Ex-2**  $T(n) = 8T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + n^2$ ,  
 $a = 8, b = 2, k = 2, p = 0$ .  
 $a = 8, b^k = 4 \rightarrow a > b^k$   
 $T(n) = O(n^{\log_2 8}) = O(n^3)$

**Ex-3**  $T(n) = 8T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + n \log n$ ,  
 $a = 8, b = 2, k = 1, p = 1$ .  
 $a = 8, b^k = 2 \rightarrow a > b^k$   
 $T(n) = O(n^{\log_2 8}) = O(n^3)$

BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

## Solution using Master Theorem

**Ex-7**  $T(n) = 2T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + \frac{n}{\log n}$ ,  
 $a = 2, b = 2, k = 1, p = -1$ .  
 $a = 2, b^k = 2 \rightarrow a = b^k$   
 $T(n) = O(n^k \log \log n) = O(n \log \log n)$

**Ex-8**  $T(n) = T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + n^2$ ,  
 $a = 1, b = 2, k = 2, p = 0$ .  
 $a = 1, b^k = 4 \rightarrow a < b^k$   
 $T(n) = O(n^k \log^p n) = O(n^2)$

**Ex-9**  $T(n) = 2T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + n^2 \log^2 n$ ,  
 $a = 2, b = 2, k = 2, p = 2$ .  
 $a = 2, b^k = 4 \rightarrow a < b^k$   
 $T(n) = O(n^k \log^p n) = O(n^2 \log^2 n)$

BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

## Solution using Master Theorem

**Ex-4**  $T(n) = 2T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + n$ ,  
 $a = 2, b = 2, k = 1, p = 0$ .  
 $a = 2, b^k = 2 \rightarrow a = b^k$   
 $T(n) = O(n^k \log^{p+1} n) = O(n \log n)$

**Ex-5**  $T(n) = 4T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + n^2$ ,  
 $a = 4, b = 2, k = 2, p = 0$ .  
 $a = 4, b^k = 4 \rightarrow a = b^k$   
 $T(n) = O(n^k \log^{p+1} n) = O(n^2 \log n)$

**Ex-6**  $T(n) = 4T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + n^2 \log n$ ,  
 $a = 4, b = 2, k = 2, p = 1$ .  
 $a = 4, b^k = 4 \rightarrow a = b^k$   
 $T(n) = O(n^k \log^{p+1} n) = O(n^2 \log^2 n)$

BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

## Master Theorem for Decreasing Functions

$$T(n) = aT(n-b) + g(n)$$

where  $g(n)$  is  $O(n^k)$

- a)  $a < 1 : T(n) = O(n^k)$
- b)  $a = 1 : T(n) = O(n^{k+1})$
- c)  $a > 1 : T(n) = O(n^k a^{n/b})$

BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

## Solution using Master Theorem

**Ex-1**  $T(n) = T(n-1)+1$ ,  
 $a = 1, b = 1, k = 0$ .

$$T(n) = O(n^{k+1}) = O(n)$$

**Ex-3**  $T(n) = 2T(n-1)+1$ ,  
 $a = 2, b = 1, k = 0$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= O(n^k a^{n/b}) \\ &= O(2^n) \end{aligned}$$

**Ex-2**  $T(n) = T(n-1)+n$ ,  
 $a = 1, b = 1, k = 1$ .

$$T(n) = O(n^{k+1}) = O(n^2)$$

**Ex-4**  $T(n) = 2T(n-1)+n$ ,  
 $a = 2, b = 1, k = 1$ .

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= O(n^k a^{n/b}) \\ &= O(n2^n) \end{aligned}$$

## Some Mathematics

### Ordering Functions by Their Growth Rates

| $n$   | $\log n$ | $\sqrt{n}$ | $n$   | $n \log n$ | $n^2$     | $n^3$         | $2^n$                  |
|-------|----------|------------|-------|------------|-----------|---------------|------------------------|
| 2     | 1        | 1.4        | 2     | 2          | 4         | 8             | 4                      |
| 4     | 2        | 2          | 4     | 8          | 16        | 64            | 16                     |
| 8     | 3        | 2.8        | 8     | 24         | 64        | 512           | 256                    |
| 16    | 4        | 4          | 16    | 64         | 256       | 4,096         | 65,536                 |
| 32    | 5        | 5.7        | 32    | 160        | 1,024     | 32,768        | 4,294,967,296          |
| 64    | 6        | 8          | 64    | 384        | 4,096     | 262,144       | $1.84 \times 10^{19}$  |
| 128   | 7        | 11         | 128   | 896        | 16,384    | 2,097,152     | $3.40 \times 10^{38}$  |
| 256   | 8        | 16         | 256   | 2,048      | 65,536    | 16,777,216    | $1.15 \times 10^{77}$  |
| 512   | 9        | 23         | 512   | 4,608      | 262,144   | 134,217,728   | $1.34 \times 10^{154}$ |
| 1,024 | 10       | 32         | 1,024 | 10,240     | 1,048,576 | 1,073,741,824 | $1.79 \times 10^{308}$ |

$$1 < \log n < \sqrt{n} < n < n \log n < n^2 < n^3 < \dots < 2^n < 3^n < n^n$$

## Correctness of Algorithms

- An algorithm is said to be correct
  - if, for every input instance, it halts with the correct output.
- We say that a correct algorithm
  - solves the given computational problem.
- An incorrect algorithm
  - might not halt at all on some input instances, or
  - it might halt with an incorrect answer.

## Some Mathematics

- $\sum_{i=0}^n a^i = 1 + a + \dots + a^n = \frac{1-a^{n+1}}{1-a}$
- $\log_b a = c$  if  $a = b^c$
- $\log_b ac = \log_b a + \log_b c$
- $\log_b(a/c) = \log_b a - \log_b c$
- $\log_b a^c = c \log_b a$
- $\log_b a = \log_c a / \log_c b$
- $b^{\log_c a} = a^{\log_c b}$

## Case Studies: Analyzing Algorithms

```
Ex-1
#include <stdio.h>
void main(){
    int n=10;
    int a[n];
    a[3]=5;
    printf("%d",a[3]);
}
```

$$T(n) = 1 + (1+1) + (1+1) \rightarrow T(n) = O(1)$$

```
Ex-2
#include <stdio.h>
void main(){
    int n; scanf("%d",&n);
    int a[n];
    for(int i=0;i<n;i++)
        scanf("%d",&a[i]);
    for(int i=0;i<n;i++)
        printf("%d",a[i]);
}
```

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= 2 + (1 + (n+1) + 2(n)) + 2n + \\ &(1 + (n+1) + 2(n)) + 2n = 10n + 6 \\ \rightarrow T(n) &= O(n) \end{aligned}$$

BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

## Case Studies: Analyzing Algorithms

```
Ex-5
int findMinimum(int array[]) {
    int min = array[0];
    for(int i = 1; i < n; i++){
        if (array[i] < min) {
            min = array[i];
        }
    }
    return min;
}
```

$$T(n) = O(n)$$

BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

## Case Studies: Analyzing Algorithms

```
Ex-3
#include <stdio.h>
void main(){
    int n; scanf("%d",&n);
    int a[n];
    for(int i=0;i<n;i++)
        scanf("%d",&a[i]);
    for(int i=0;i<n;i++)
        for(int j=0;j<n;j++)
            printf("%d",a[i]);
}
```

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= 2 + (1 + (n+1) + 2(n)) + 2n + (1 + \\ &(n+1) + 2(n)) + n (1 + (n+1) + 2(n)) \\ &= 3n^2 + 10n + 6 \\ \rightarrow T(n) &= O(n^2) \end{aligned}$$

```
Ex-4
#include <stdio.h>
void main(){
    int n; scanf("%d",&n);
    int a[n];
    for(int i=0;i<n;i++)
        scanf("%d",&a[i]);
    for(int i=0;i<n;i++)
        for(int j=0;j<n/2;j++)
            printf("%d",a[i]);
}
```

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= 2 + (1 + (n+1) + 2(n)) + 2n + (1 + \\ &(n+1) + 2(n)) + n (1 + (n+1)/2 + 2(n/2)) \\ \rightarrow T(n) &= O(n^2) \end{aligned}$$

BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

## Case Studies: Analyzing Algorithms

```
Ex-6
void fun(int n){
    if(n<=0)
        return;
    printf("%d",n);
    fun(n-1);
}
```

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= T(n-1) + 2 \rightarrow T(n) = O(n) \\ \text{Master Theorem for Decreasing} \\ \text{Functions} \end{aligned}$$

```
Ex-7
void fun(int n){
    if(n<=0)
        return;
    printf("%d",n);
    fun(n/2);
}
```

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= T(n/2) + 2 \rightarrow T(n) = O(\log n) \\ \text{Master Theorem for Dividing} \\ \text{Functions} \end{aligned}$$

BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

# Case Studies: Analyzing Algorithms

Ex-8

```
void fun(int n){  
    if(n<=0) ___1  
        return;  
    for(int i=0;i<k';i++) ___(k'+1)  
        fun(n-1); ___k*T(n-1)  
}
```

$T(n) = 1 + (k'+1) + (k' * T(n-1)) = k' * T(n-1) + (k' + 2)$   $\rightarrow T(n)$  depends on value of  $k'$   
(Master Theorem for Decreasing Functions)

Ex-9

```
void fun(int n){  
    if(n>1){ ___1  
        for(int i=0;i<n;i++) ___(n+1)  
            printf("%d",i); ___n  
        fun(n/2); ___T(n/2)  
        fun(n/2); ___T(n/2)  
    }  
}
```

$T(n) = 1 + (n+1) + n + 2T(n/2) = 2T(n/2) + (2n + 2)$   
 $a = 2, b = 2, k = 1, p = 0$ .  $O(n \log n)$  as per Master Theorem for Dividing Functions

BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

**BITS Pilani**  
Hyderabad Campus

## Any Question!!

# References

- Algorithms Design: Foundations, Analysis and Internet Examples Michael T. Goodrich, Roberto Tamassia, 2006, Wiley (Students Edition)
- Data Structures, Algorithms and Applications in C++, Sartaj Sahni, Second Ed, 2005, Universities Press
- Introduction to Algorithms, TH Cormen, CE Leiserson, RL Rivest, C Stein, Third Ed, 2009, PHI

BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

## Thank you!!



**BITS Pilani**  
Hyderabad Campus

$$T(n) = 2T(n/2) + 2$$

This will be third case of master's theorem or the second case?

Calculation:

$$f(n) = 2$$

$$\text{Number of leaves} = n^{\log_b(a)} = n^{\log_2(1)} = n^0 = 1$$

$f(n) > n^{\log_b(a)}$ : Third case. Right?

The answer will be Theta(2)?

has context menu

BITS Pilani, Pilani Campus

## SESSION 3 -PLAN

| Online Sessions(#) | List of Topic Title                                                         | Text/Ref Book/external resource |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 3                  | Stack ADT and Implementation.<br>Queue ADT and Implementation, Applications | T1: 2.1                         |

**Data Structures and Algorithms Design (ZG519)**

Febin.A.Vahab  
Asst.Professor(Offcampus)  
BITS Pilani,Bangalore

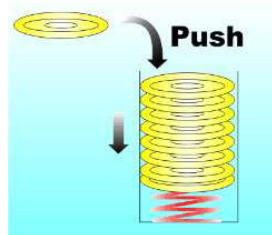
## Abstract Data Type

- In computer science, an **abstract data type (ADT)** is a type (or class) for objects whose behavior is defined by a set of value and a set of operations.

- A method for achieving abstraction for data structures and algorithms
- ADT = model + operations
- Describes **what** each operation does, but not **how** it does it
- An ADT is independent of its implementation

## Stacks

- A **stack** is a container of objects that are inserted and removed according to the last-in-first-out (**LIFO**) principle.
- Objects can be inserted at any time, but only the last (the most-recently inserted) object can be removed.
- Inserting an item is known as "**pushing**" onto the stack.
- "**Popping**" off the stack is synonymous with removing an item.



- Simple ADTs
  - **Stack**
  - **Queue**
  - Vector
  - **Lists**
  - Sequences
  - Iterators

All these are called **Linear Data Structures**

## Stacks

- Stack "S" is a abstract data type supporting following methods:
  - **Push(o)**- insert object o at the top of the stack
  - **Pop()**- remove from the stack and return the top object on the stack. Error occurs for empty stack.
  - Supporting methods
    - **Size()**- return the number of objects in the stack
    - **isEmpty()**- return Boolean indicating if stack is empty
    - **Top()**- return value of top object on the stack. Error occurs for empty stack.

# Stacks: An Array Implementation

- Create a stack using an array by specifying a maximum size  $N$  for our stack.
- The stack consists of an  $N$ -element array  $S$  and an integer variable  $t$ , the index of the top element in array  $S$ .



- Array indices start at 0, so we initialize  $t$  to -1

# Stacks: An Array Implementation

- The array implementation is simple and efficient (**methods performed in  $O(1)$** )/constant time.

## Disadvantage

- There is an upper bound,  $N$ , on the size of the stack.
- The arbitrary value  $N$  may be too small for a given application OR a waste of memory.

# Stacks: An Array Implementation

## Pseudo code

```
Algorithm push(o)
  if size() == N then
    return Error
  t = t + 1
  S[t] = o
```

```
Algorithm pop()
  if isEmpty() then
    return Error
  t = t - 1
```

```
return S[t+1]
```

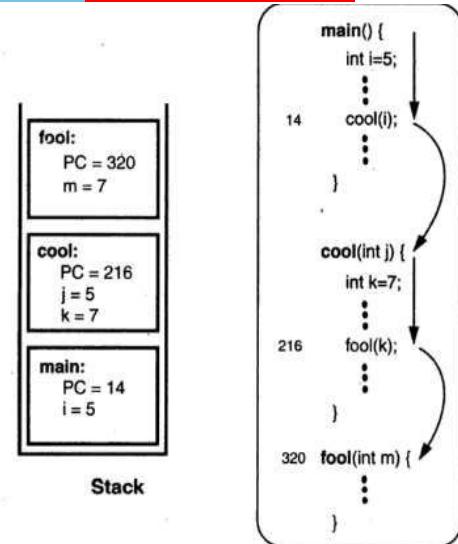
```
Algorithm size()
  return t + 1
```

```
Algorithm isEmpty()
  if t < 0 then
    return true
```

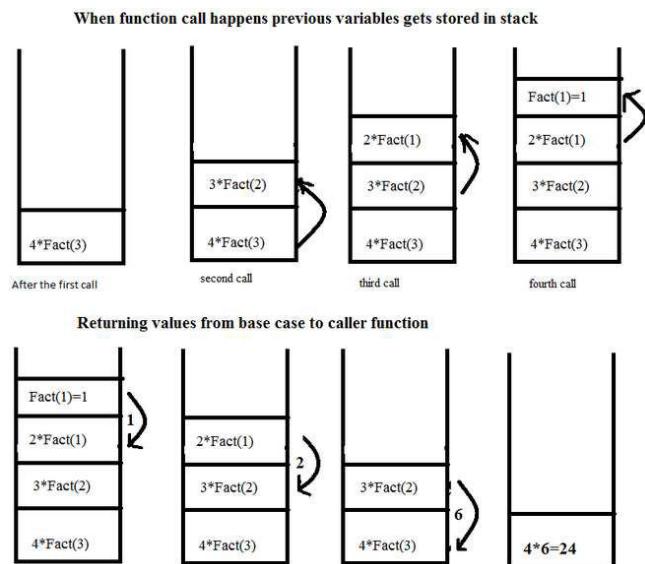
```
Algorithm top()
  if isEmpty() then
    return Error
  return S[t]
```

# Stacks: Applications

- Procedure calls
- Recursion



# Stacks: Applications



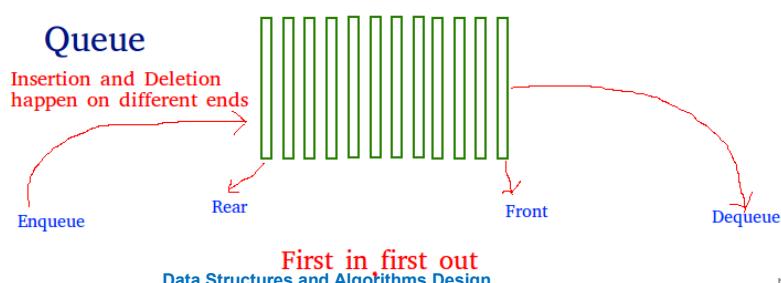
5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 12

# Queue ADT

- A queue differs from a stack in that its insertion and removal routines follows the **first-in-first-out** (FIFO) principle.
- Elements may be inserted at any time, but only the element which has been in the queue the longest may be removed.
- Elements are inserted at the **rear** (enqueued) and removed from the **front** (dequeued)



5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 14

# Stacks: HW-Stock Span problem

- Given a list of prices of a single stock for N number of days, find the stock span for each day.
- Stock span is the number of consecutive days prior to the current day when the price of the stock was less than or equal to the prices at the current day**

| Day | Price |
|-----|-------|
| 1   | 200   |
| 2   | 120   |
| 3   | 140   |
| 4   | 160   |
| 5   | 130   |

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 13

# Queue ADT

- The queue ADT supports the following two fundamental methods:
  - enqueue(o):** Insert object o at the rear of the queue.
  - dequeue():** Remove and return from the queue the object at the front; an error occurs if the queue is empty.
- Additionally, the queue ADT includes the following supporting methods:
  - size():** Return the number of objects in the queue.
  - isEmpty():** Return a Boolean value indicating whether queue is empty.
  - front():** Return, but do not remove, the front object in the queue; an error occurs if the queue is empty

5/11/2025

Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Page 15

# Queues: An Array Implementation

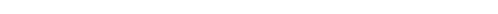
- A maximum size  $N$  is specified.
  - The queue consists of an  $N$ -element array  $Q$  and two integer variables:
    - $f$ , is an index to the cell of  $Q$  storing the first element of the queue which is the next candidate to be removed by a dequeue operation, unless the queue is empty (in which case  $f = r$ )
    - $r$ , is an index to the next available array cell in  $Q$ .
    - Initially,  $f=r=0$  and the queue is empty if  $f=r$



# Queues: An Array Implementation



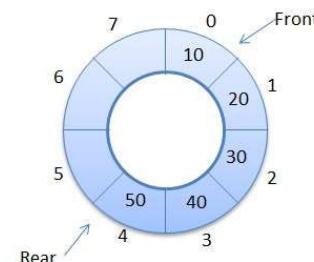
- The "normal" configuration with  $f \leq r$

$\mathcal{Q}$  

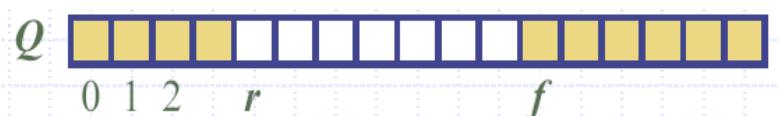
  - The "wrapped around" configuration with  $r \leq f$

The cells storing queue elements are highlighted

- Circular Array
    - $r = (r+1) \bmod N$
    - $f = (f+1) \bmod N$
  - When array is full  $f=r$  (Same as array empty condition)



# Queues: An Array Implementation



- Queue is empty:  $f = r$
- When  $r$  reaches  $f$  and overlaps with  $f$ , the queue is full:  $r = f$
- To distinguish between empty and full states, we impose a constraint:  **$Q$  can hold at most  $N - 1$  objects** (one cell is wasted). So  $r$  never overlaps with  $f$ , except when the queue is empty.

## Queues: Application

- Multiprogramming

# Queues: An Array Implementation

- Queue Operations

```
Algorithm dequeue()
  if isEmpty() then
    return Error
   $Q[f] = \text{null}$ 
   $f = (f+1) \bmod N$ 
```

```
Algorithm enqueue(o)
  if size =  $N - 1$  then
    return Error
   $Q[r] = o$ 
   $r = (r + 1) \bmod N$ 
```

```
Algorithm size()
return  $(N-f+r) \bmod N$ 
```

```
Algorithm isEmpty()
if  $f=r$  return
```

```
Algorithm front()
if isEmpty() then
  return Error
return  $Q[f]$ 
```

- Each method runs in  $O(1)$  time.

## Queues: HW

- Write an Algorithm to implement Queue using Stack(s). Discuss different approaches.



**BITS** Pilani  
Hyderabad Campus

**THANK YOU!**



Innovate achieve lead



**BITS** Pilani  
Hyderabad Campus

## **Data Structures and Algorithms Design (ZG519)**

**Febin.A.Vahab**  
Asst.Professor(Offcampus)  
BITS Pilani,Bangalore

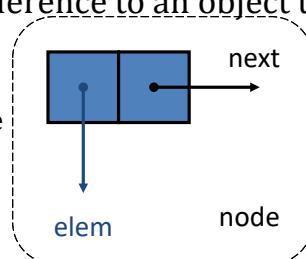
Innovate achieve lead

## SESSION 4 -PLAN

| Sessions(#) | List of Topic Title                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Text/Ref<br>Book/external<br>resource |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 4           | Lists- Notion of position in lists, List ADT and Implementation. Sets- Set ADT and Implementation<br>Trees: Terms and Definition, Tree ADT, Applications<br>Binary Trees : Terms and Definition, Properties, Properties, Representations (Vector Based and Linked), Binary Tree traversal (In Order, Pre Order, Post Order), Applications | T1: 2.2, 4.2                          |

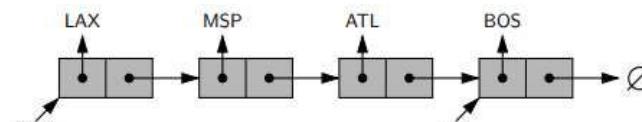
## SINGLY LINKED LIST

- A singly linked list is a concrete data structure consisting of a sequence of nodes
- Each node stores reference to an object that is a reference to an
  - element
  - link to the next node
- The first and last node of a linked list usually are called the **head** and **tail** of the list, respectively



## Singly Linked List

- Moving from one node to another by following a next reference is known as **link hopping** or **pointer hopping**- **Traversing the list**
- The order of elements is determined by the chain of **next** links going from each node to its successor in the list
- We do not keep track of any index numbers for the nodes in a linked list. So we cannot tell just by examining a node if it is the second, fifth, or twentieth node in the list



Example of a singly linked list whose elements are strings indicating airport codes

# Singly Linked List Implementation



- To implement a singly linked list, we define a Node class

```
class _Node:  
    """Lightweight, nonpublic class for storing a singly linked node."""  
    __slots__ = '_element', '_next'      # streamline memory usage  
  
    def __init__(self, element, next):  
        self._element = element          # initialize node's fields  
        self._next = next                # reference to user's element  
   # reference to next node
```

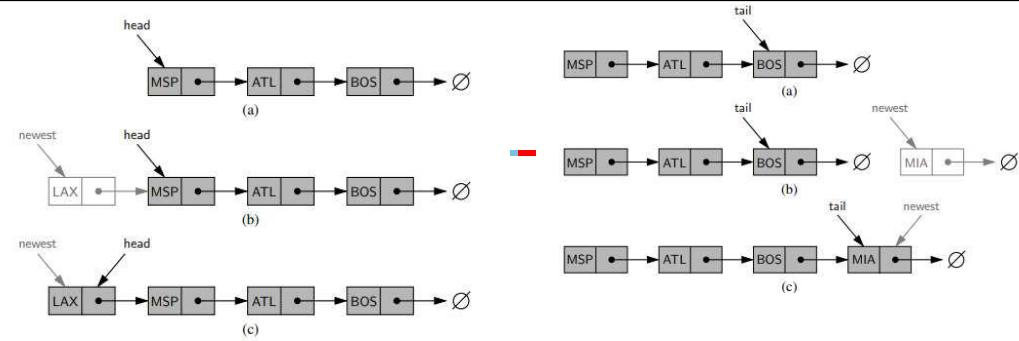
Page 8

## Singly Linked List Operations- Node Based

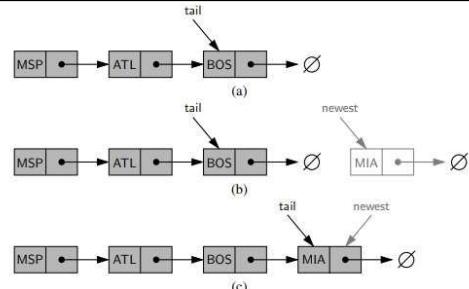


- Not easy to delete the tail node /Insertbefore operations
- Start from the head of the list and search all the way through the list.
- Such link hopping operations could take a long time.

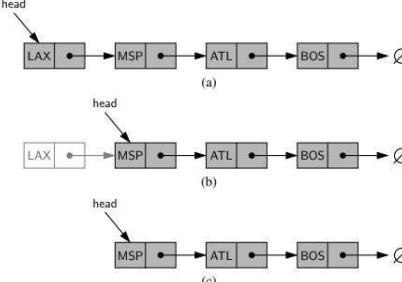
Page 10



Insertion of an element at the head of a singly linked list



Insertion at the tail of a singly linked list



Removal of an element at the head of a singly linked list

Page 9

## SLL-Node Based-insertBefore

```
insertBefore(n, o):  
    if n == first then  
        insertFirst(o)  
    else  
        m = first  
        while m.next != n do  
            m = m.next  
        done  
        insertAfter(m, o)
```

Page 11

# SLL-Node Based- Performance

| Operation                    | Worst case Complexity |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| size, isEmpty                | $O(1)$ <sup>1</sup>   |
| first, last, after           | $O(1)$ <sup>2</sup>   |
| before                       | $O(n)$                |
| replaceElement, swapElements | $O(1)$                |
| insertFirst, insertLast      | $O(1)$ <sup>2</sup>   |
| insertAfter                  | $O(1)$                |
| insertBefore                 | $O(n)$                |
| remove                       | $O(n)$ <sup>3</sup>   |

<sup>1</sup> size needs  $O(n)$  if we do not store the size on a variable.

<sup>2</sup> last and insertLast need  $O(n)$  if we have no variable last.

<sup>3</sup> remove(*n*) runs in best case in  $O(1)$  if *n* == first.

# Doubly Linked List Implementation

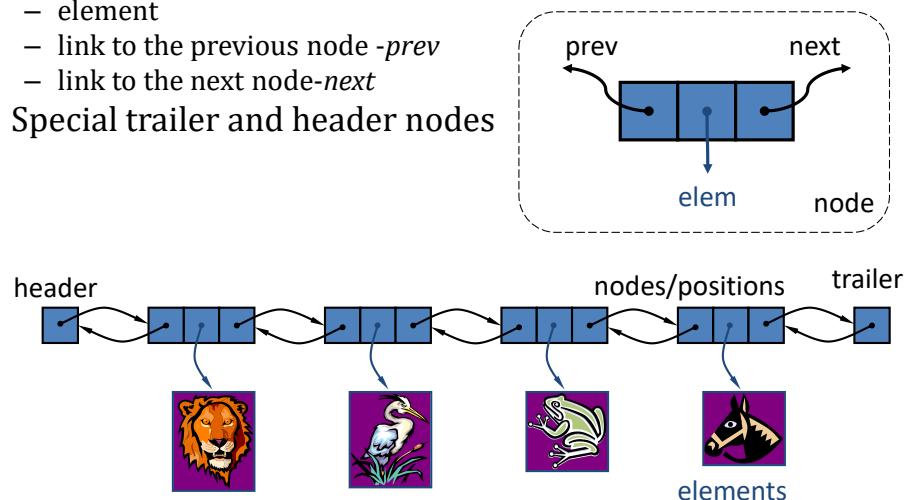
- To implement a Doubly linked list, we define a Node class

```
class _Node:
    """Lightweight, nonpublic class for storing a doubly linked node."""
    __slots__ = '_element', '_prev', '_next' # streamline memory

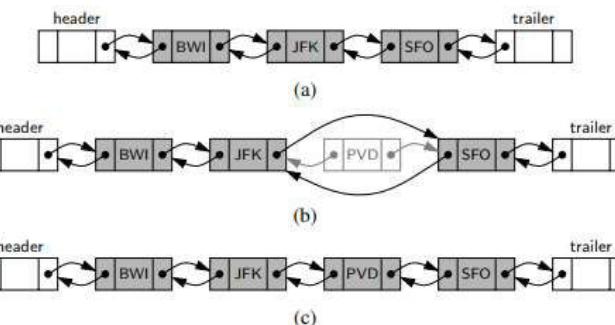
    def __init__(self, element, prev, next):
        self._element = element # user's element
        self._prev = prev # previous node reference
        self._next = next # next node reference
```

# DOUBLY LINKED LIST

- Nodes store:
  - element
  - link to the previous node -*prev*
  - link to the next node-*next*
- Special trailer and header nodes

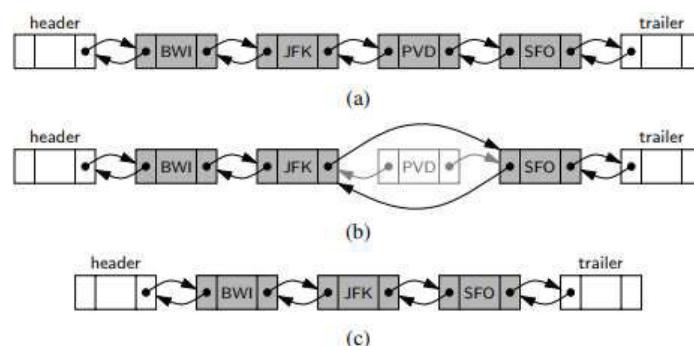


# Doubly Linked List Implementation



Adding an element to a doubly linked list with header and trailer sentinels: (a) before the operation; (b) after creating the new node; (c) after linking the neighbors to the new node

# Doubly Linked List Implementation



Removing the element PVD from a doubly linked list: (a) before the removal; (b) after linking out the old node; (c) after the removal (and garbage collection)

## DLL -Node Based-Performance

| Operation                    | Worst case Complexity |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| size, isEmpty                | $O(1)$                |
| first, last, after           | $O(1)$                |
| before                       | $O(1)$                |
| replaceElement, swapElements | $O(1)$                |
| insertFirst, insertLast      | $O(1)$                |
| insertAfter                  | $O(1)$                |
| insertBefore                 | $O(1)$                |
| remove                       | $O(1)$                |

## DLL -Node based-Operations

```

Algorithm removeLast():
  if size = 0 then
    Indicate an error: the list is empty
  v ← trailer.getPrev()           {last node}
  u ← v.getPrev()                {node before the last node}
  trailer.setPrev(u)
  u.setNext(trailer)
  v.setPrev(null)
  v.setNext(null)
  size = size - 1

Algorithm addAfter(v,z):
  w ← v.getNext()               {node after v}
  z.setPrev(v)                   {link z to its predecessor, v}
  z.setNext(w)                   {link z to its successor, w}
  w.setPrev(z)                   {link w to its new predecessor, z}
  v.setNext(z)                   {link v to its new successor, z}
  size ← size + 1

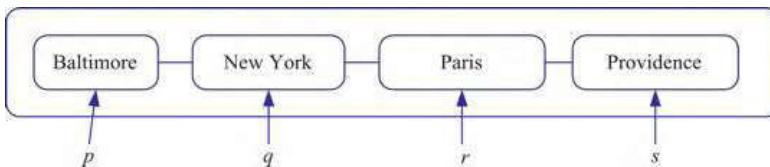
Algorithm addFirst(v):
  w ← header.getNext()          {first node}
  v.setNext(w)
  v.setPrev(header)
  w.setPrev(v)
  header.setNext(v)
  size = size + 1

```

## LIST -ADT

- One of the great benefits of a linked list structure is that it is possible to perform  $O(1)$ -time insertions and deletions at arbitrary positions of the list, as long as we are given a reference to a relevant node of the list.
- Such direct use of nodes would violate the object-oriented design principles of abstraction and encapsulation
- It will be simpler for users of our data structure if they are not bothered with unnecessary details of our implementation
- We ensure that users cannot invalidate the consistency of a list by mismanaging the linking of nodes
- For these reasons, instead of relying directly on nodes, we introduce an independent **position abstraction** to denote the location of an element within a list, and then a complete positional list ADT that can encapsulate a doubly linked list

- "place" of an element relative to others in the list.
- In this framework, we view a list as a collection of elements that stores each element at a position and that keeps these positions arranged in a linear order



A node list. The positions in the current order are  $p$ ,  $q$ ,  $r$ , and  $s$ .

## LIST - ADT

- Container of elements that stores each element at a position
- Using the concept of position to encapsulate the idea of "node" in a list, the following methods can be defined for a list
- ***L.first ()***: Return the position of the first element of S; an error occurs if S is empty.
- ***L.last()*** :Return the position of the last element of S; an error occurs if S is empty.
- ***L.isFirst(p)*** :Return a Boolean value indicating whether the given position is the first one in the list.
- ***L.islast (p)***
- ***L.before(p)*** :Return the position of the element of S preceding the one at position p; an error occurs if p is the first position.
- ***L.after (p) ,L.size(), L.isEmpty()***

## POSITION ADT

- The positions are arranged in a linear order
- A position is itself an abstract data type that supports the following simple method
  - ***element()***: Return the element stored at this position
- A position is always defined relatively
- A position  $p$  will always be "after" some position  $q$  and "before" some position  $s$  (unless  $p$  is the first or last position).
- The position  $p$  does not change even if we replace or swap the element  $e$  stored at  $p$  with another element
- They are viewed internally by the linked list as nodes, but from the outside, they are viewed only as positions
- We can give each node  $v$  instance variables  $prev$  and  $next$  that respectively refer to the predecessor and successor nodes of  $v$

## LIST – ADT-Update methods

- ***L.replace(p, e)*** : Replace the element at position  $p$  with  $e$ , returning the element formerly at position  $p$ .
- ***L.swap (p , q)*** : Swap the elements stored at positions  $p$  and  $q$ , so that the element that is at position  $p$  moves to position  $q$  and the element that is at position  $q$  moves to position  $p$ .
- ***L.add\_First(e )*** : Insert a new element  $e$  into S as the first element.
- ***L.add\_last(e)*** : Insert a new element  $e$  into S as the last element.
- ***L.add\_before (p, e)*** : Insert a new element  $e$  into S before position  $p$  in S; an error occurs if  $p$  is the first position.
- ***L.add\_after(p, e)*** : Insert a new element  $e$  into S after position  $p$  in S; an error occurs if  $p$  is the last position.
- ***L.delete(p )*** : Remove from S the element at position  $p$

# LIST ADT Operation-Position Based

| Operation          | Return Value | L                                                                 |
|--------------------|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| L.add_last(8)      | p            | 8 <sub>p</sub>                                                    |
| L.first()          | p            | 8 <sub>p</sub>                                                    |
| L.add_after(p, 5)  | q            | 8 <sub>p</sub> , 5 <sub>q</sub>                                   |
| L.before(q)        | p            | 8 <sub>p</sub> , 5 <sub>q</sub>                                   |
| L.add_before(q, 3) | r            | 8 <sub>p</sub> , 3 <sub>r</sub> , 5 <sub>q</sub>                  |
| r.element()        | 3            | 8 <sub>p</sub> , 3 <sub>r</sub> , 5 <sub>q</sub>                  |
| L.after(p)         | r            | 8 <sub>p</sub> , 3 <sub>r</sub> , 5 <sub>q</sub>                  |
| L.before(p)        | None         | 8 <sub>p</sub> , 3 <sub>r</sub> , 5 <sub>q</sub>                  |
| L.add_first(9)     | s            | 9 <sub>s</sub> , 8 <sub>p</sub> , 3 <sub>r</sub> , 5 <sub>q</sub> |
| L.delete(L.last()) | 5            | 9 <sub>s</sub> , 8 <sub>p</sub> , 3 <sub>r</sub>                  |
| L.replace(p, 7)    | 8            | 9 <sub>s</sub> , 7 <sub>p</sub> , 3 <sub>r</sub>                  |

# LIST - ADT-Doubly linked list Implementation

- The nodes of the linked list implement the position ADT, defining a method element () , which returns the element stored at the node.
- The nodes themselves act as positions.

# LIST – ADT: Linked List Implementation

# LIST - ADT-Doubly linked list Implementation

## • INSERTION

**Algorithm add\_after(p,e):**

//Inserting an element e after a position p in a linked list.

Create a new node v

v.element  $\leftarrow e$

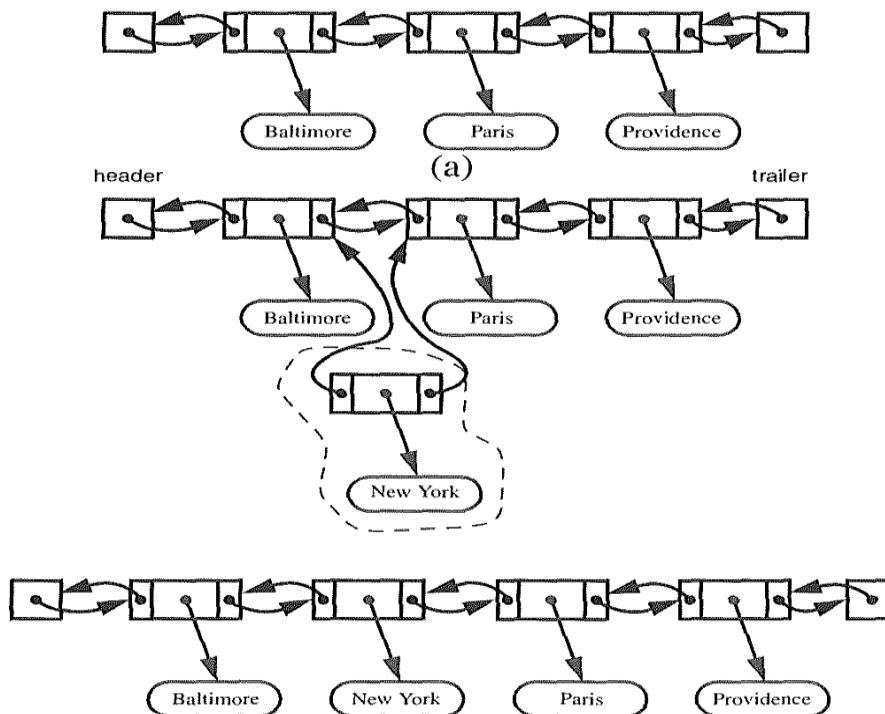
v.prev  $\leftarrow p$  {link v to its predecessor}

v.next  $\leftarrow p.next$  {link v to its successor}

(p.next).prev  $\leftarrow v$  {link p's old successor to v}

p.next  $\leftarrow v$  {link p to its new successor, v}

**return v** {the position for the element e}



Page 28

## LIST - ADT linked list Implementation

- In the implementation of the List ADT by means of a linked list
  - All the operations of the List ADT run in  $O(1)$  time
  - Operation `element()` of the Position ADT runs in  $O(1)$  time

Page 30

## LIST - ADT-Doubly linked list Implementation

- DELETION**

**Algorithm** `delete(p)`:

*t*  $\leftarrow$  *p.element* {a temporary variable to hold the return value}

(*p.prev*).next  $\leftarrow$  *p.next* {linking out *p*}

(*p.next*).prev  $\leftarrow$  *p.prev*

*p.prev*  $\leftarrow$  **null** {invalidating the position *p*}

*p.next*  $\leftarrow$  **null**

**return** *t*

- link the two neighbours of *p* to refer to one another as new neighbours-linking out *p*.

Page 29

## VECTOR-ADT

A Vector stores a list of elements:

- Access via rank/index.

Accessor methods:

`elementAtRank(r)`,

Update methods:

`replaceAtRank(r, o)`,

`insertAtRank(r, n)`,

`removeAtRank(r)`

Generic methods:

`size()`, `isEmpty()`

Here *r* is of type integer, *n, m* are nodes, *o* is an object (data).

Page 31

| Method                  | Time   |
|-------------------------|--------|
| size()                  | $O(1)$ |
| isEmpty()               | $O(1)$ |
| elemAtRank( $r$ )       | $O(1)$ |
| replaceAtRank( $r, e$ ) | $O(1)$ |
| insertAtRank( $r, e$ )  | $O(n)$ |
| removeAtRank( $r$ )     | $O(n)$ |

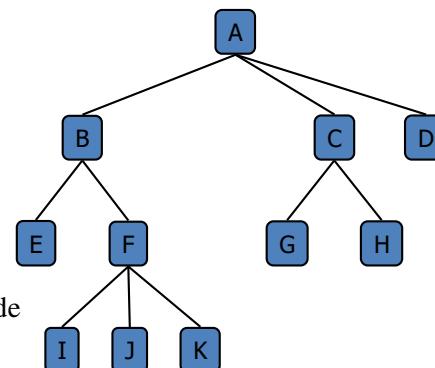
## TREES

- In computer science, a tree is an abstract model of a hierarchical structure
- A tree consists of nodes with a parent-child relation
- **Applications:**
  - Organization charts
  - File systems
  - Compiler Design/Text processing (syntax analysis & to display the structure of a sentence in a language)
  - Searching Algorithms
  - Evaluating a mathematical expression.

- ▶ Iterator allows to traverse the elements in a list or set.
- ▶ Iterator ADT provides the following methods:
  - ▶ `object()`: returns the current object
  - ▶ `hasNext()`: indicates whether there are more elements
  - ▶ `nextObject()`: goes to the next object and returns it

## TREE Terminologies

- **Root:** node without parent (A)
- **Internal node:** node with at least one child (A, B, C, F)
- **External node** (a.k.a. leaf): node without children (E, I, J, K, G, H, D)
- **Ancestors of a node:** parent, grandparent, grand-grandparent, etc.
- **Depth of a node:** number of ancestors
- **Height of a tree:** maximum depth of any node (3)
- **Descendant of a node:** child, grandchild, grand-grandchild, etc.
- **Degree of a node:** the number of its children



## TREE ADT-Depth and Height

- Let  $v$  be a node of a tree  $T$ .
- The depth of  $v$  is the number of ancestors of  $v$ , excluding  $v$  itself
- If  $v$  is the root, then the depth of  $v$  is 0.
- Otherwise, the depth of  $v$  is one plus the depth of the parent of  $v$ .

**Algorithm  $\text{depth}(T, v)$ :**

```
if  $T.\text{isRoot}(v)$  then
    return 0
else
    return  $1 + \text{depth}(T, T.\text{parent}(v))$ 
```

- The running time of algorithm  $\text{depth}(T, v)$  is  $O(1 + d_v)$ , where  $d_v$  denotes the depth of the node  $v$  in the tree  $T$ .
- In the worst case, the depth algorithm runs in  $O(n)$  time, where  $n$  is the total number of nodes in the tree  $T$

## TREE ADT-Depth and Height

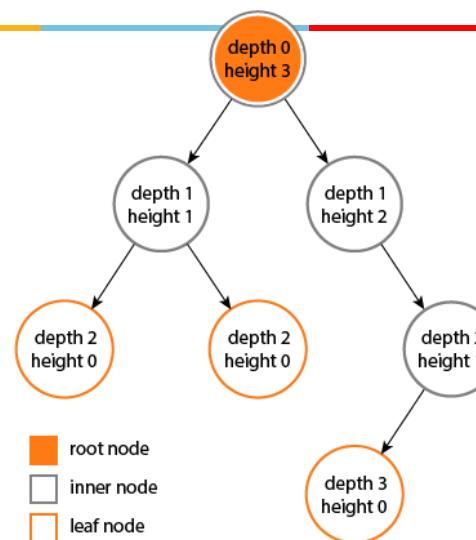
- The **height of a tree**  $T$  is equal to the maximum depth of an external node of  $T$ .
- If  $v$  is an external node, then the height of  $v$  is 0.
- Otherwise, the height of  $v$  is one plus the maximum height of a child of  $v$ .

**Algorithm  $\text{height}(T, v)$ :**

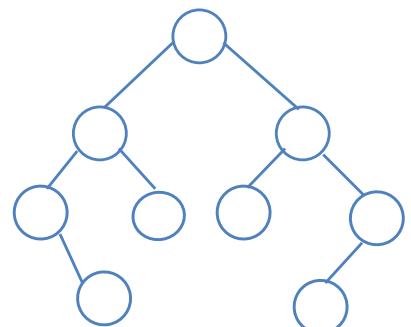
```
if  $T.\text{isExternal}(v)$  then
    return 0
else
     $h = 0$ 
    for each  $w \in T.\text{children}(v)$  do
         $h = \max(h, \text{height}(T, w))$ 
    return  $1 + h$ 
```

```
Algorithm  $\text{depth}(T, v)$ :
if  $T.\text{isRoot}(v)$  then
    return 0
else
    return  $1 + \text{depth}(T, T.\text{parent}(v))$ 
```

## TREE ADT-Depth and Height

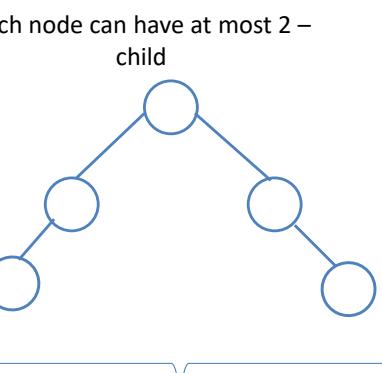


# Binary Tree



Each node can have at most 2 – child

This is also binary tree



What about this ?

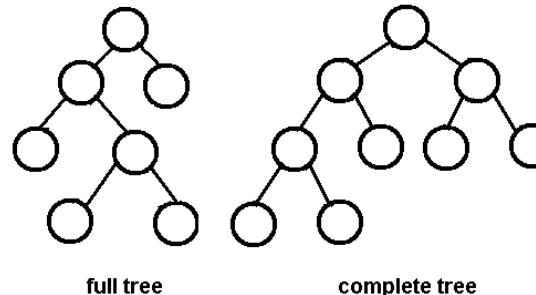
40

## TREE ADT

- We use **Positions** to abstract nodes
- Generic methods:
  - **integer size()**:Return the number of nodes in the tree.
  - **boolean isEmpty()** :
  - **ObjectIterator elements()**:Return an iterator of all the elements stored at nodes of the tree.
  - **positionIterator positions()**:Return an iterator of all the nodes of the tree
- Accessor methods:
  - **position root()**:Return the root of the tree
  - **position parent(p)**:Return the parent of node v; error if v is root.
  - **positionIterator children(p)**:Return an iterator of the children of node v.

[Back](#)

## Complete and Full(Proper) Binary tree



A **full binary tree** (sometimes proper **binary tree** or **2-tree**) is a **tree** in which every node other than the leaves has two children

In Complete binary tree All levels except possibly the last are completely filled and all nodes are as left as possible.

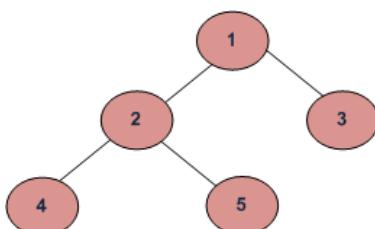
## TREE ADT

- Query methods:
  - **boolean isInternal(p)**:Test whether node v is internal.
  - **boolean isEmpty(p)**:Test whether node v is external
  - **boolean isRoot(p)**:Test whether node v is the root.
- Update methods:
  - **swapElements(v, w)**:Swap the elements stored at the nodes v and w.
  - **object replaceElement(v, e)**:Replace with e and return the element stored at node v

# Assumptions

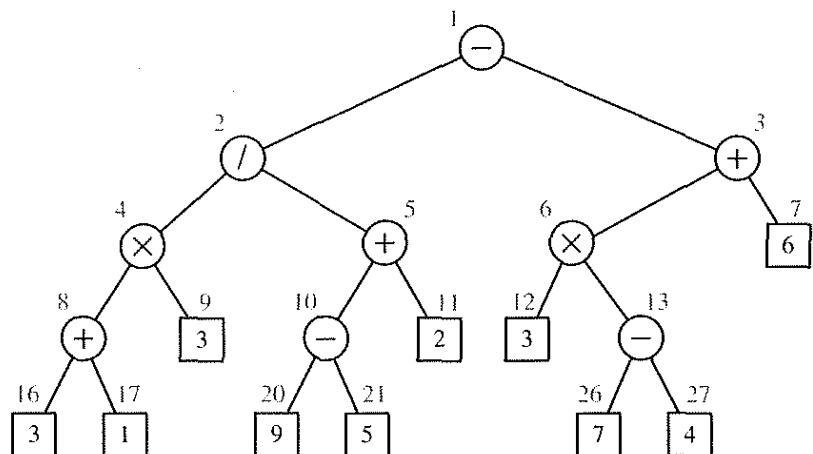
- The accessor methods `root()` and `parent( $v$ )` take  $O(1)$  time.
- The query methods `isInternal( $v$ )`, `isExternal( $v$ )`, and `isRoot( $v$ )` take  $O(1)$  time, as well.
- The accessor method `children( $v$ )` takes  $O(c_v)$  time, where  $c_v$  is the number of children of  $v$ .
- The generic methods `swapElements( $v, w$ )` and `replaceElement( $v, e$ )` take  $O(1)$  time.
- The generic methods `elements()` and `positions()`, which return iterators, take  $O(n)$  time, where  $n$  is the number of nodes in the tree.
- For the iterators returned by methods `elements()`, `positions()`, and `children( $v$ )`, the methods `hasNext()`, `nextObject()` or `nextPosition()` take  $O(1)$  time each.

# TREE Traversals



- (a) Inorder (Left, Root, Right) : 4 2 5 1 3  
 (b) Preorder (Root, Left, Right) : 1 2 4 5 3  
 (c) Postorder (Left, Right, Root) : 4 5 2 3 1

# TREE Traversals-Qn1-HW

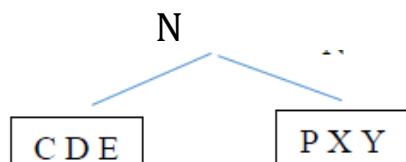


## QN-2-Class Discussion

- Find the preorder traversal for the binary tree using
- Inorder traversal : C D E N P X Y
- Postorder traversal: D C E P Y X N
- Also construct the tree.

## Qn2:Traversal-ANSWER

- Inorder traversal -C D E N P X Y
- Post order traversal - D C E P Y X N

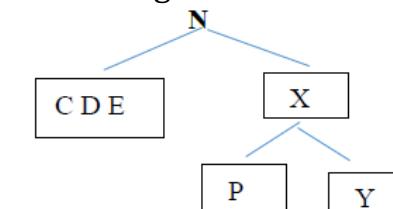


## Qn2:Traversal-ANSWER

- Inorder traversal -C D E N P X Y
- Post order traversal - D C E P Y X N
- We first find the last node in postorder. The last node is “N”, we know this value is root as root always appear in the end of postorder traversal.
- We search “N” in inorder to find left and right subtrees of root. Everything on left of “N” in inorder is in left subtree and everything on right is in right subtree.

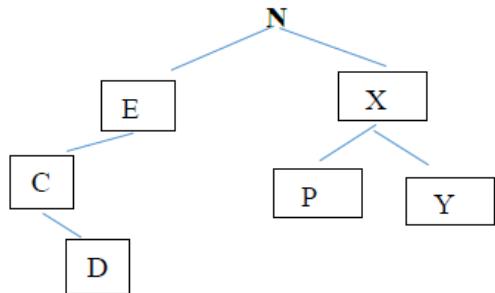
## Qn2:Traversal-ANSWER

- Inorder traversal -C D E N P X Y
- Post order traversal - D C E P Y X N
- We recur the above process for following
- Recur for in = {P,X,Y} and post = {P,Y,X}
- Make the created tree as right child of root



## Qn2:Traversal-ANSWER

- Inorder traversal -C D E N P X Y
- Post order traversal - D C E P Y X N
- Recur for in = {C,D,E} and post = {D,C,E}



Page 53

## QN-3-HW

- Suppose that you are using a doubly linked list, maintaining a reference to the first and last node in the list, along with its size, to implement the operations below
- **addFirst(item)**: prepend the item to the beginning of the list
- **get(i)** :return the item at position i in the list
- **set(i, item)** :replace position i in the list with the item
- **removeLast()** delete and return the item at the end of the list
- What is the worst-case running time of each of the operation above?

Page 55

## Qn2:Traversal-ANSWER

- Inorder traversal -C D E N P X Y
- Post order traversal - D C E P Y X N
- 
- **ANSWER: N E C D X P Y**

Page 54

## QN-4-HW

- We can construct a full binary tree from pre order and post order traversals. Discuss with an example.

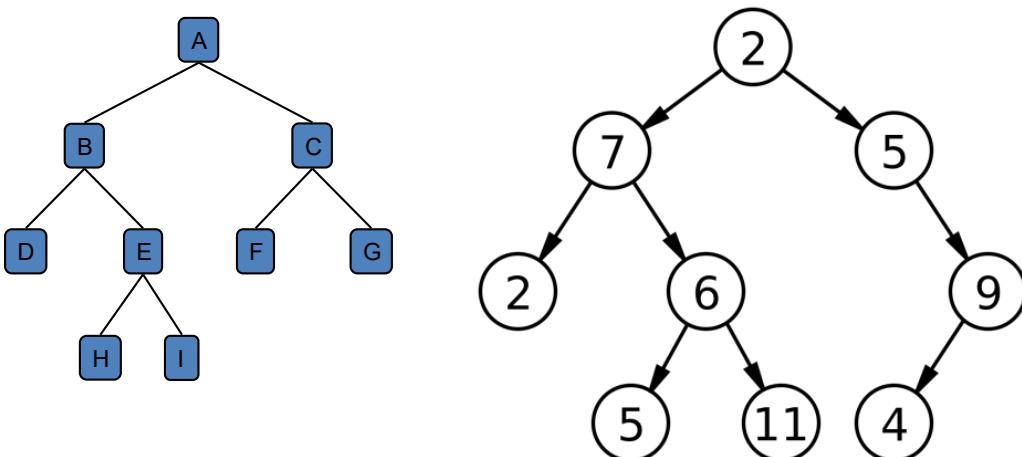
Page 56

## Binary Trees

- A binary tree is a tree with the following properties:
  - Each internal node has two children
  - Each internal node has **ATMOST** two children
  - The children of a node are an ordered pair
- We call the children of an internal node **-left child and right child**
- Alternative recursive definition: a binary tree is either
  - a tree consisting of a single node, or
  - a tree whose root has an ordered pair of children, each of which is a binary tree

Page 57

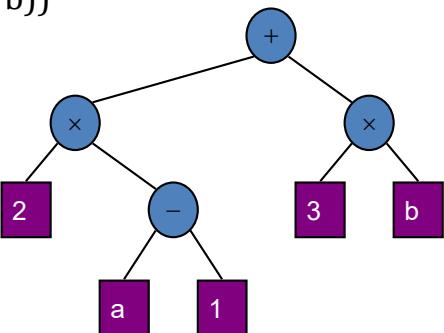
## Binary Trees



Page 58

## Arithmetic Expression Tree

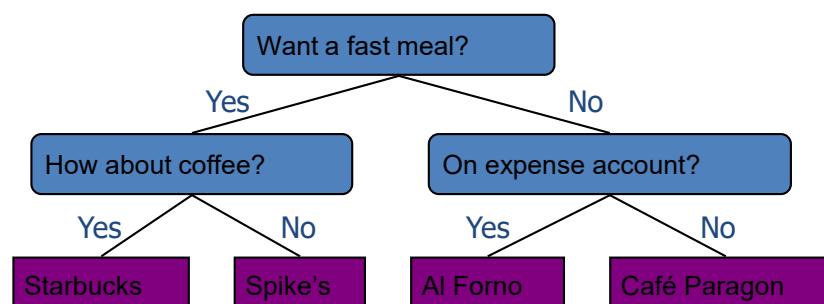
- Binary tree associated with an arithmetic expression
  - internal nodes: operators
  - external nodes: operands
- Example: arithmetic expression tree for the expression  $((2 \times (a - 1)) + (3 \times b))$



Page 59

## Decision Tree

- Binary tree associated with a decision process
  - internal nodes: questions with yes/no answer
  - external nodes: decisions
- Example: dining decision

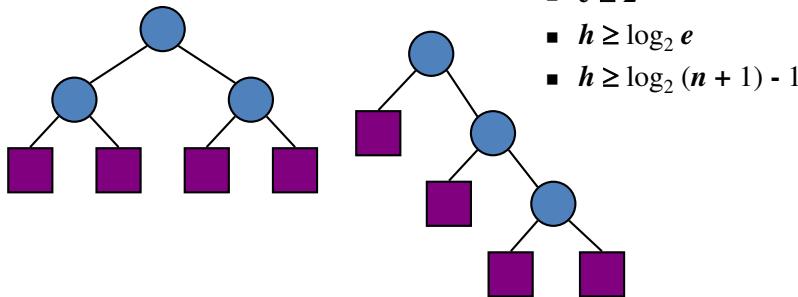


Page 60

# Properties of (proper)Binary Trees

- Notation

- $n$  number of nodes
- $e$  number of external nodes
- $i$  number of internal nodes
- $h$  height



- Properties:

- $e = i + 1$
- $n = 2e - 1$
- $h \leq i$
- $h \leq (n - 1)/2$
- $e \leq 2^h$
- $h \geq \log_2 e$
- $h \geq \log_2 (n + 1) - 1$

## BinaryTree ADT-Methods

- The BinaryTree ADT extends the Tree ADT, i.e., it inherits all the methods of the Tree ADT

### Additional methods:

- position leftChild(v)** Return the left child of v; an error condition occurs if v is an external node.
- position rightChild(v)**
- position sibling(p)**
- Update methods may be defined by data structures implementing the BinaryTree ADT

# Properties of Binary Trees

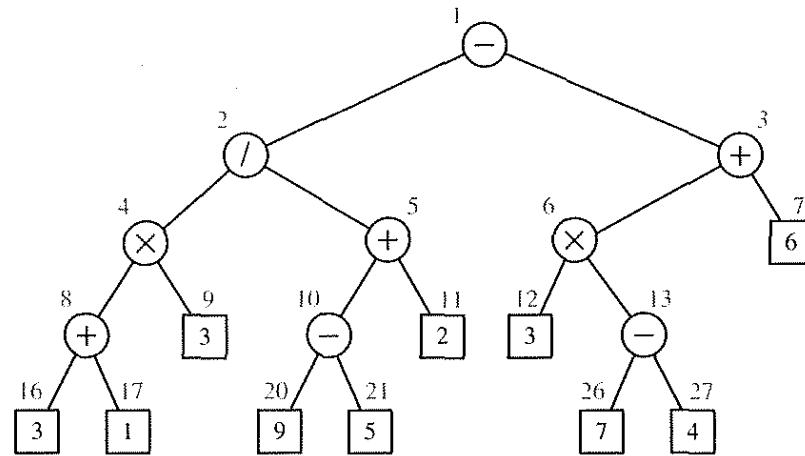
Let T be a (proper) binary tree with n nodes, and let h denote the height of T. Then T has the following properties:

- The number of external nodes in T is at least  $h + 1$  and at most  $2^h$ .
- The number of internal nodes in T is at least  $h$  and at most  $2^h - 1$ .
- The total number of nodes in T is at least  $2h + 1$  and at most  $2^{h+1} - 1$ .
- The height of T is at least  $\log(n + 1) - 1$  and at most  $(n - 1)/2$ , that is,  $\log(n + 1) - 1 \leq h \leq (n - 1)/2$ .
- The number of external nodes is 1 more than the number of internal nodes.

## Binary Trees-Representations Vector Based

- For every node v of T , let  $p(v)$  be the integer defined as follows.
- If v is the root of T, then  $p(v) = 1$  .
- If v is the left child of node u, then  $p(v) = 2p(u)$  .
- If v is the right child of node u, then  $p(v) = 2p(u) + 1$  .
- p is known as a level numbering***

# Binary Trees-Representations Vector Based



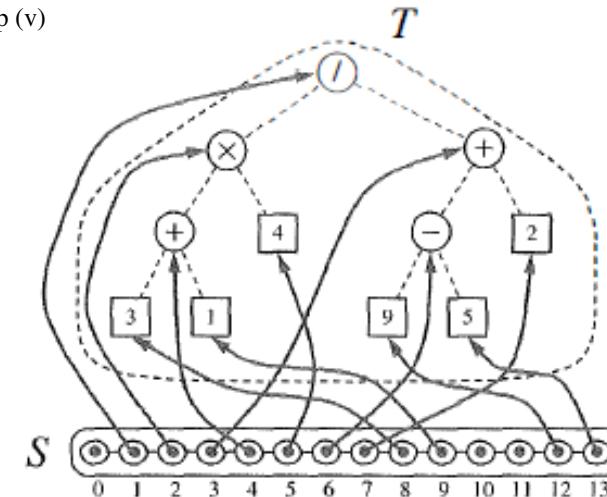
Page 65

# Binary Trees-Representations Vector Based

- Let  $n$  be the number of nodes of  $T$ , and let  $P_M$  be the maximum value of  $p(v)$  over all the nodes of  $T$ .
- Vector  $S$  has size  $N = P_M + 1$  since the element of  $S$  at rank 0 is not associated with any node of  $T$ .
- Vector  $S$  will have, in general, a number of empty elements that do not refer to existing nodes of  $T$ .
- These empty slots could correspond to empty external nodes or even slots where descendants of such nodes would go
- In the worst case,  $N = 2^{(n+1)/2}$
- $//n$  is the number of nodes of  $T$ ,  $N$  is the vector size

# Binary Trees-Representations- Vector Based

Node  $v$  of  $T$  is associated with the element of  $S$  at rank  $p(v)$



Page 66

# Binary Trees-Representations Vector Based

- Operation Time
  - positions, elements  $O(n)$
  - swap Elements, replaceElement  $O(1)$
  - root, parent, children  $O(1)$
  - leftChild, rightChild, sibling  $O(1)$
  - isInternal, isExternal, isRoot  $O(1)$
- Methods
  - Fast and Simple
  - Space inefficient if the height of the tree is large

Page 68

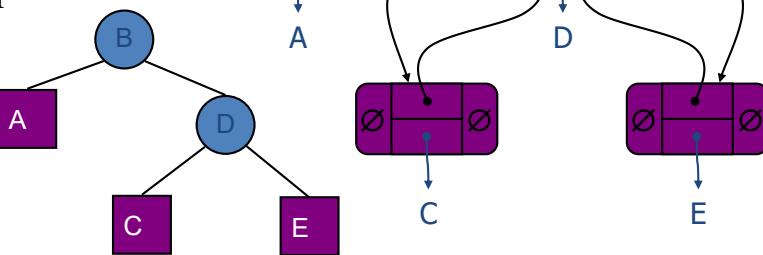
# Binary Trees-Representations

## Linked Structure

A node is represented by an object storing

- Element
- Parent node
- Left child node
- Right child node

**Node objects implement the Position ADT**



Page 69

# Binary Trees-Representations

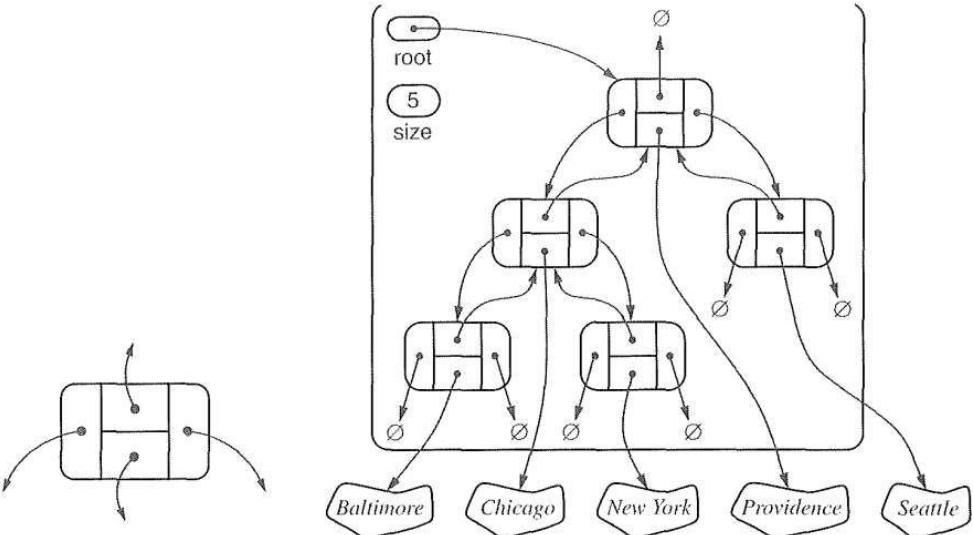
## Linked Structure

- Operation Time
  - Size()
  - isEmpty()
  - swapElements(v,w)
  - replaceElement(v,e)
  - Positions()
  - Elements()
- $O(1)$
- $O(n)$

Page 71

# Binary Trees-Representations

## Linked Structure



# Binary Trees-Applications

- Data Base indexing
- BSP in Video Games
- Path finding algorithms in AI applications
- Huffman coding
- Heaps
- SET AND MAP IN C++
- Syntax tree

Page 72



**BITS Pilani**  
Hyderabad Campus

# THANK YOU!



**BITS Pilani**

# Data Structures and Algorithms Design (ZG519)

## SESSION 4 -PLAN

Innovate achieve lead

| Contact Sessions(#) | List of Topic Title                                                                                              | Text/Ref Book/external resource |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 4                   | Heaps - Definition and Properties, Representations (Vector Based and Linked), Insertion and deletion of elements | T1: 2.4                         |

## The Heap Data Structure

Innovate achieve lead

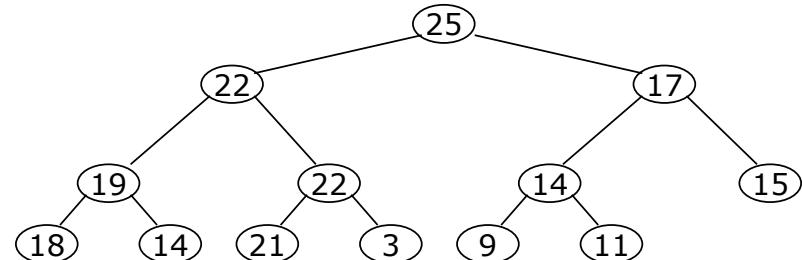
- The heap is a binary tree T that stores a collection of keys at its nodes and that satisfies two additional properties: a relational property defined in terms of the way keys are stored in T and a structural property defined in terms of T itself.
- We assume that a **total order relation** on the keys is given, for example, by a comparator.

## Total order relation

- Comparison rule is defined for every pair of keys and it must satisfy the following properties:
  - Reflexive property:**  $k \leq k$ .
  - Antisymmetric property:** if  $k_1 \leq k_2$  and  $k_2 \leq k_1$ , then  $k_1 = k_2$ .
  - Transitive property:** if  $k_1 \leq k_2$  and  $k_2 \leq k_3$ , then  $k_1 \leq k_3$ .
- Any comparison rule  $\leq$  that satisfies these three properties will never lead to a comparison contradiction.

Page 4

## The Heap Data Structure



Page 6

## The Heap Data Structure:

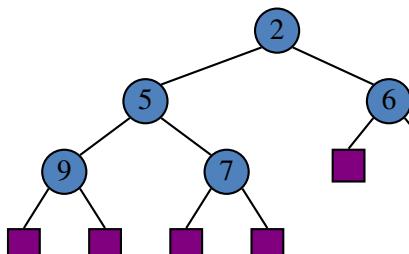
- A heap is a binary tree storing elements at its nodes and satisfying the following properties:
  - **Heap-Order property (Relational property):**
    - for every node  $v$  other than the root,  $\text{key}(v) \geq \text{key}(\text{parent}(v))$  -Min heap
    - $\text{key}(v) \leq \text{key}(\text{parent}(v))$ -Max heap
  - The keys encountered on a path from the root to an external node of T are in non decreasing /non increasing order.
  - A minimum/max key is always stored at the root of T.

Page 5

## The Heap Data Structure

### Structural property:

- Heap data structure is always a complete binary tree



Page 7

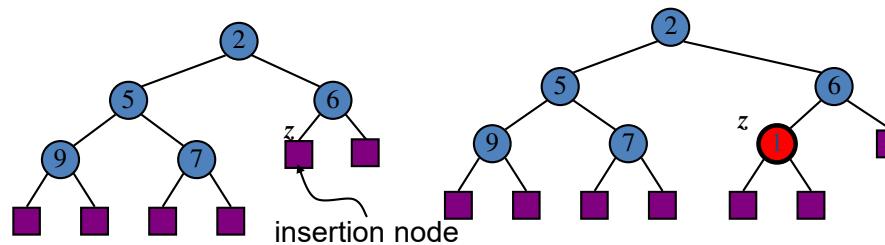
# Vector-based Heap Implementation

- We can represent a heap with  $n$  keys by means of a vector of length  $n + 1$
- For the node at rank  $i$ 
  - the left child is at rank  $2i$
  - the right child is at rank  $2i + 1$
- Links between nodes are not explicitly stored
- In other words the parent of a node stored in  $i^{\text{th}}$  location is at  $\text{floor}[i/2]$
- The cell at rank 0 is not used

Page 8

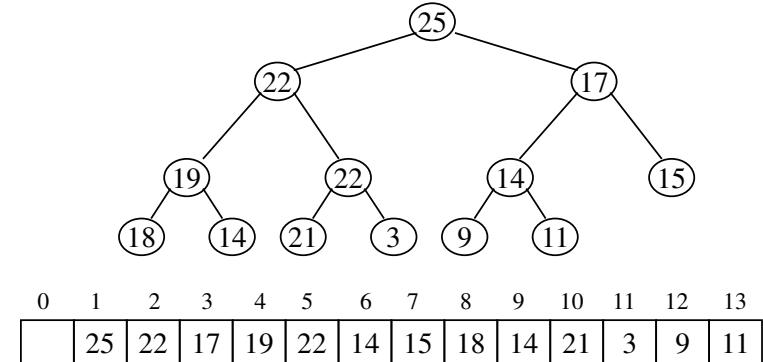
## Insertion into a Heap

- Method `insertItem` corresponds to the insertion of a key  $k$  to the heap
- The insertion algorithm consists of three steps
  - Find the insertion node  $z$  (the new last node)
  - Store  $k$  at  $z$  and expand  $z$  into an internal node
  - Restore the heap-order property (discussed next)



– External nodes are represented as

# Vector-based Heap Implementation



- the left child is at rank  $2i$
- the right child is at rank  $2i + 1$ 
  - Example: the children of node 3 (17) are 6 (14) and 7 (15)
  - Note that when the heap  $T$  is implemented with a vector, the index of the last node is always equal to  $n$

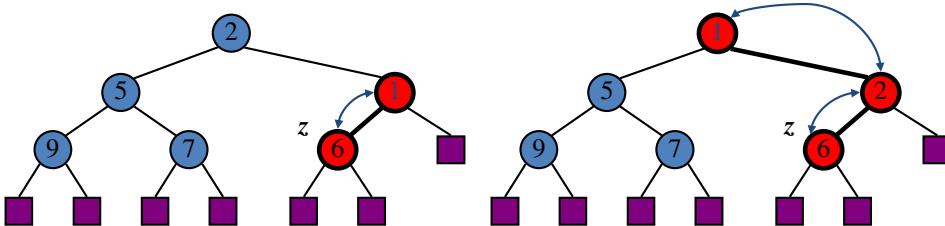
Page 9

## Upheap

- After the insertion of a new key  $k$ , the heap-order property may be violated
- Algorithm upheap restores the heap-order property by swapping  $k$  along an upward path from the insertion node
- Upheap terminates when the key  $k$  reaches the root or a node whose parent has a key smaller than or equal to  $k$
- Since a heap has height  $O(\log n)$ , upheap runs in  $O(\log n)$  time

Page 11

## Upheap



Page 12

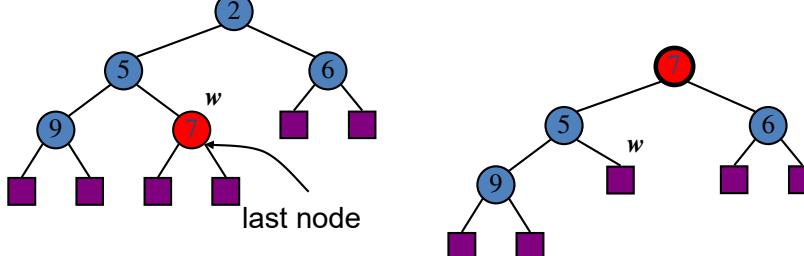
## Downheap

- After replacing the root key with the key  $k$  of the last node, the heap-order property may be violated
- Algorithm downheap restores the heap-order property by swapping key  $k$  along a downward path from the root
- Downheap terminates when key  $k$  reaches a leaf or a node whose children have keys greater than or equal to  $k$
- Since a heap has height  $O(\log n)$ , downheap runs in  $O(\log n)$  time

Page 14

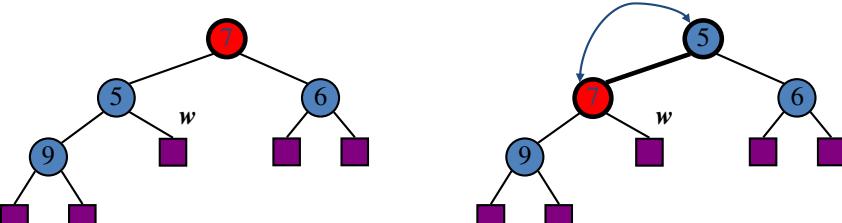
## Removal from a Heap

- Method removeMin corresponds to the removal of the root key from the (min) heap
- The removal algorithm consists of three steps
  - Replace the root key with the key of the last node  $w$
  - Compress  $w$  and its children into a leaf
  - Restore the heap-order property (discussed next)



Page 13

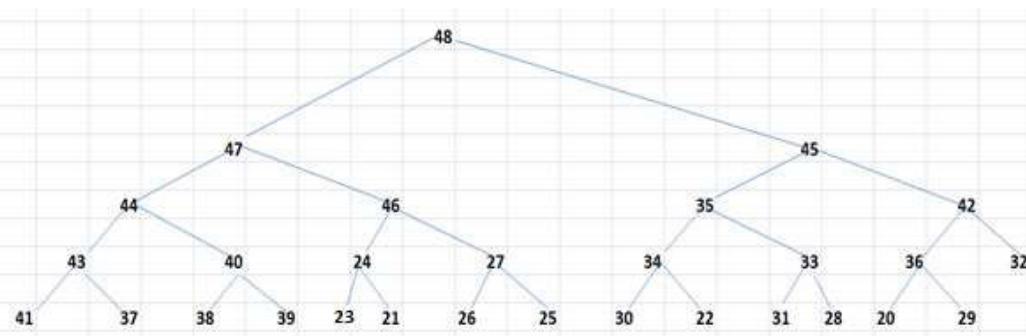
## Downheap



Page 15

**QN-1**

- Consider the following binary heap.



Page 16

**Solution:**

- 29 36 42 45 To insert a node in a binary heap, we place it in the next available leaf node and swim it up. Thus, 29 36 42 45, and 48 are the only keys that might move. But, the last inserted key could not have been 48, because, then, 45 would have been the old root (which would violate heap order because the left child of the root is 47).
- 24 ,27,29,44,45,46,47 The compares are 45-47,29-47, 44-46, 29-46 ,24-27, 29-27

Page 18

**QN-1 Contd.**

- Suppose that the last operation performed in the binary heap above was inserting the key x. Find all possible values of x. Give suitable explanations
- Suppose that you delete the maximum key from the binary heap above. Find all keys that are involved in one (or more) comparisons. Show the comparisons.

Page 17

**QN-2**

- Write an algorithm to find the **kth largest** element of an array using a
  - Min Heap.
  - Max Heap
- What is the time complexity in both cases if the array is **unsorted**?

Page 19

## QN-2-Solution

- For Min Heap:** Create a min heap of size k by taking k elements of the array. Now we compare the root with the remaining elements of the array. If the element is greater than the root, then replace root with this element and min\_heapify .Iterate this for all elements of the array. The root of the heap will be the kth largest element.
- Time Complexity:  $O(k + (n-k)\log k)$

Page 20



## Data Structures and Algorithms Design

**BITS** Pilani  
Hyderabad Campus

Febin.A.Vahab

## QN-3

- For Max Heap:** Create a max heap of size n by taking all elements of the array. Now remove the root k-1 times and re-heapify. The root of the heap now will be the kth largest element.
- Time Complexity: for building a Max Heap –  $O(n)$ , for deleting the root k-1 times –  $O((k-1)\log n)$ , so total is  $O(n + (k-1)\log n)$

Page 21

## SESSION 4 -PLAN

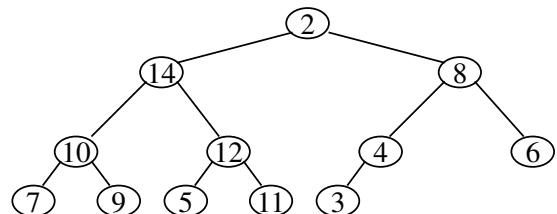
| Contact Sessions(#) | List of Topic Title                              | Text/Ref Book/external resource |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 4                   | Heap implementation of priority queue, Heap sort | T1: 2.4<br>T2:6                 |

Page 2

# Heapify

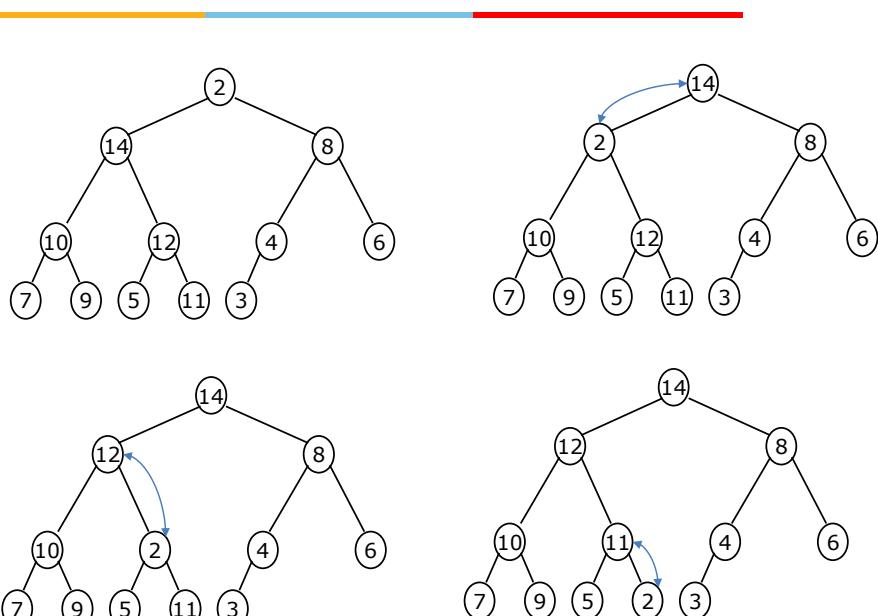
- Before discussing the method for building heap from an arbitrary complete binary tree, we discuss a simpler problem.
- Let us consider a binary tree in which left and right subtrees of the root satisfy the heap property but not the root.

See the following fig



- Now the Question is how to transform the above tree into a Heap?

# Heapify



# Solution for the Question

- Swap the root and left child of root, to make the root satisfy the heap property.
- Then check the subtree rooted at left child of the root is heap or not. If it is we are done, if not repeat the above action of swapping the root with the maximum of its children.
- That is, push down the element at root till it satisfies the heap property.
- The following sequence of fig depicts the **heapification** process

# Max-Heapify

**MAX-HEAPIFY( $A, i$ )**

```

1  l = LEFT( $i$ )
2  r = RIGHT( $i$ )
3  if  $l \leq A.\text{heap-size}$  and  $A[l] > A[i]$ 
4      largest =  $l$ 
5  else largest =  $i$ 
6  if  $r \leq A.\text{heap-size}$  and  $A[r] > A[\text{largest}]$ 
7      largest =  $r$ 
8  if largest  $\neq i$ 
9      exchange  $A[i]$  with  $A[\text{largest}]$ 
10     MAX-HEAPIFY( $A, \text{largest}$ )
  
```

Time complexity????

$O(\log n)$  (**Height of the tree**)

## Building a MAX heap

- By means of n successive insert item operations we can construct a heap storing n key-element pairs in O (n log n) time
- Example

## Building a Max Heap-Bottom Up

### **Build-Max-Heap(A)**

- // Input: A: an (unsorted) array
- // Output: A modified to represent a heap.
- // Running Time: O(n) where n = length[A]

*heap-size[A]  $\leftarrow$  length[A]*

*for i  $\leftarrow$  floor(length[A]/2) downto 1  
 Max-Heapify(A, i)*

Why start at n/2?

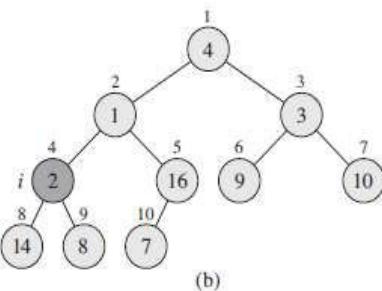
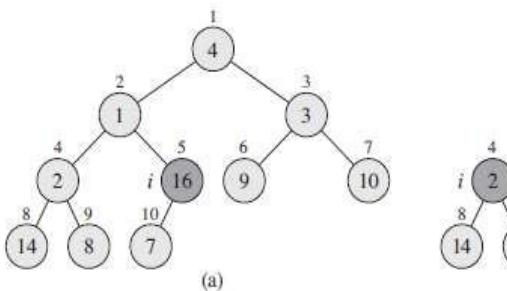
- Because elements A[n/2 + 1 ... n] are all leaves of the tree
- $2i > n$ , for  $i > n/2 + 1$

## Building a Max Heap-Bottom Up-Steps

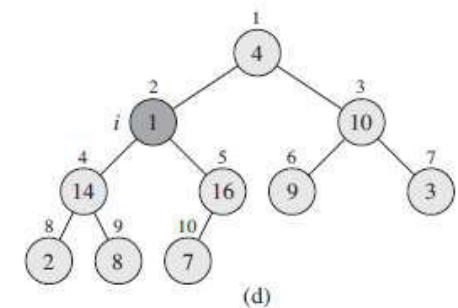
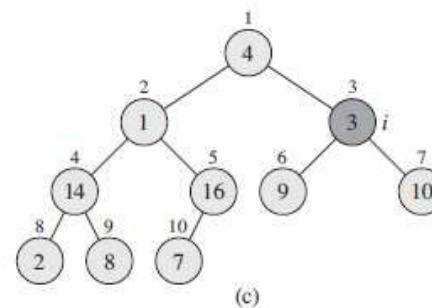
- Step 0: Initialize the structure with keys in the order given
- Step 1: Starting with the last (rightmost) parental node, fix the heap rooted at it, if it doesn't satisfy the heap condition: keep exchanging it with its largest child until the heap condition holds
- Step 2: Repeat Step 1 for the preceding parental node

## Building a Max Heap-Bottom Up

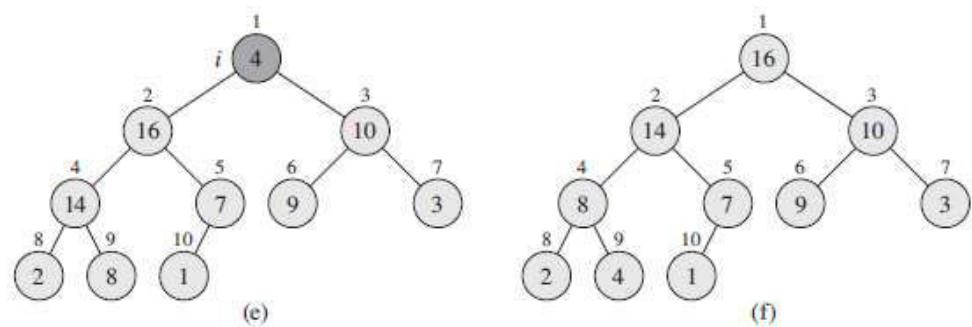
$A[4, 1, 3, 2, 16, 9, 10, 14, 8, 7]$



## Building a Max Heap-Bottom Up



## Building a Max Heap-Bottom Up



Page 15

## Building a Max Heap-Bottom Up-Analysis

- The total cost of BUILD-MAX-HEAP

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= \sum_{h=0}^{\log n} n/2^{h+1} * O(h) \\ &= O(n/2 * \sum_{h=0}^{\log n} h/2^h) \\ &\leq O(n/2 * \sum_{h=0}^{\infty} h/2^h) \\ &\leq O(n * [1 + 1/2 + 1/4 + \dots]) \text{ infinite GP} \\ &\leq O(n * [1/(1 - (1/2))]) \\ &\leq O(2n) \\ &\leq O(n) \end{aligned}$$

Page 17

## Building a Max Heap-Bottom Up-Analysis

- The time for MAX-HEAPIFY to run at a node varies with the height of the node in the tree
- The heights of most nodes are small
- Our tighter analysis relies on the properties that an
  - $n$ -element heap has height  $\lg n$
  - There are at most  $n/2^{(h+1)}$  nodes at any height  $h$
  - ie
    - Max\_Heapify takes  $O(1)$  for time for nodes that are one level above the leaves, and in general,  $O(L)$  for the nodes that are  $L$  levels above the leaves.

Page 16

## Building a Max Heap-Bottom Up-Analysis

### Running Time of Build-Max-Heap

**Trivial Analysis:** Each call to Max-Heapify requires  $\log(n)$  time, we make  $n$  such calls  $\Rightarrow O(n \log n)$ .

**Tighter Bound:** Each call to Max-Heapify requires time  $O(h)$  where  $h$  is the height of node  $i$ . Therefore running time is

$$\sum_{h=0}^{\log n} \frac{n}{(2^{h+1})} * O(h) = O(n)$$

Page 18

## Priority Queue ADT

- A priority queue is a container of elements, each having an associated key that is provided at the time the element is inserted.
- The name "priority queue" comes from the fact that keys determine the "priority" used to pick elements to be removed
- An item is a pair (key, element)
- Main methods of the Priority Queue ADT
  - `insertItem(k, o)`  
inserts an item with key k and element o
  - `removeMin()`  
removes the item with smallest key and returns its element

Page 19

## Priority Queue ADT -Total Order Relation

- Keys in a priority queue can be arbitrary objects on which an order is defined.
- Two distinct items in a priority queue can have the same key
- Total order relation

Page 21

## Priority Queue ADT

- Additional methods
  - `minKey()`  
returns, but does not remove, the smallest key of an item
  - `minElement()`  
returns, but does not remove, the element of an item with smallest key
  - `size()`, `isEmpty()`
- Applications:
  - Standby flyers
  - Auctions
  - Stock market

Page 20

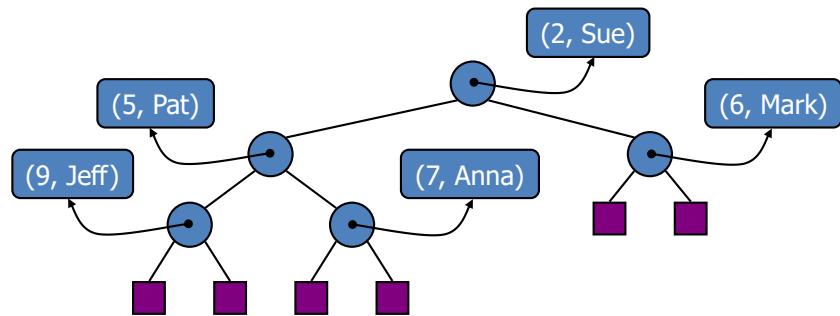
## Sorting with a Priority Queue

- We can use a priority queue to sort a set of comparable elements
- Given a collection C of n elements that can be compared according to a total order relation, and we want to rearrange them in increasing order (or at least in nondecreasing order if there are ties).
  - Insert the elements into a PQ one by one with a series of `insertItem(e, e)` operations
  - Remove the elements in sorted order with a series of `removeMin()` operations putting them back into C
- The running time of this sorting method depends on the priority queue implementation

Page 22

# Heaps and Priority Queues

- We can use a heap to implement a priority queue
- A (key, element) item is stored at each internal node
- **Keep track of the position of the last node**



Page 23

## Heap Sort-Steps

- Given an array of n elements, first we build the heap
- The largest element is at the root, but its position in sorted array should be at the end. So swap the root with the last.
- We have placed the highest element in its correct position we left with an array of n-1 elements. Repeat the same of these remaining n-1 elements to place the next largest elements in its correct position.
- Repeat the above step till all elements are placed in their correct positions.

Page 25

# Heap-Sort

## Heap-Sort(A)

// Input: A: an (unsorted) array

// Output: A modified to be sorted from smallest to largest

// Running Time: O(n log n) where n = length[A]

Build-Max-Heap(A)

for i = length[A] down to 2

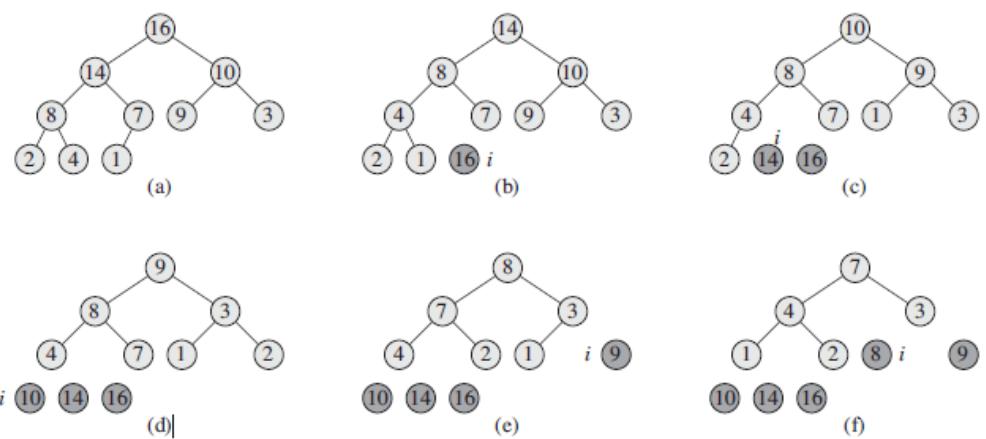
exchange A[1] and A[i]

heap-size[A]  $\leftarrow$  heap-size[A] - 1

Max-Heapify(A, 1)

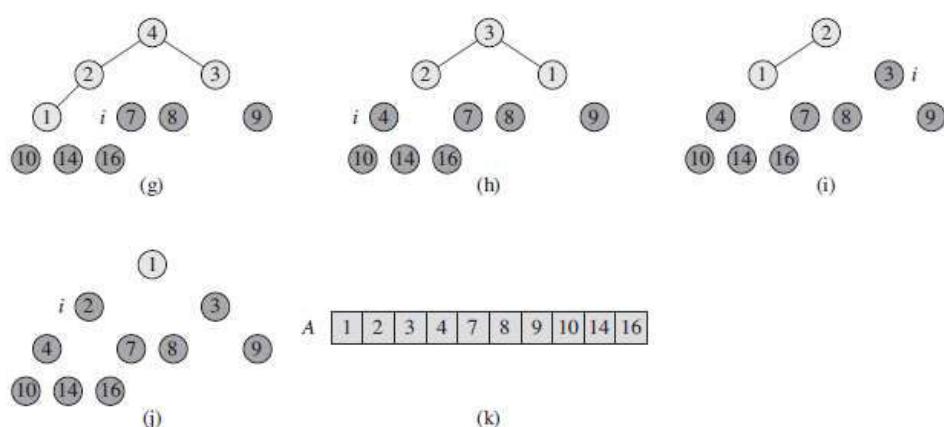
Page 24

## Heap Sort-Example



Page 26

## Heap Sort-Example



Page 27

## Heap-Algorithms

### Parent( $A, i$ )

```
// Input: A: an array representing a heap, i: an array index
// Output: The index in A of the parent of i
// Running Time: O(1)
if i == 1 return NULL
return floor(i/2)
```

Page 29

## Heap-Sort

- Consider a priority queue with  $n$  items implemented by means of a heap
  - the space used is  $O(n)$
  - methods `insertItem` and `removeMin` take  $O(\log n)$  time
  - methods `size`, `isEmpty`, `minKey`, and `minElement` take time  $O(1)$  time
- Using a **heap-based priority queue**, we can sort a sequence of  $n$  elements in  $O(n \log n)$  time
- The resulting algorithm is called **heap-sort**
- Heap-sort is much faster than quadratic sorting algorithms, such as insertion-sort and selection-sort

Page 28

## Heap-Algorithms

### Left( $A, i$ )

```
// Input: A: an array representing a heap, i: an array index
// Output: The index in A of the left child of i
// Running Time: O(1)
if 2 * i <= heap-size[A]
  return 2 * i
else return NULL
```

Page 30

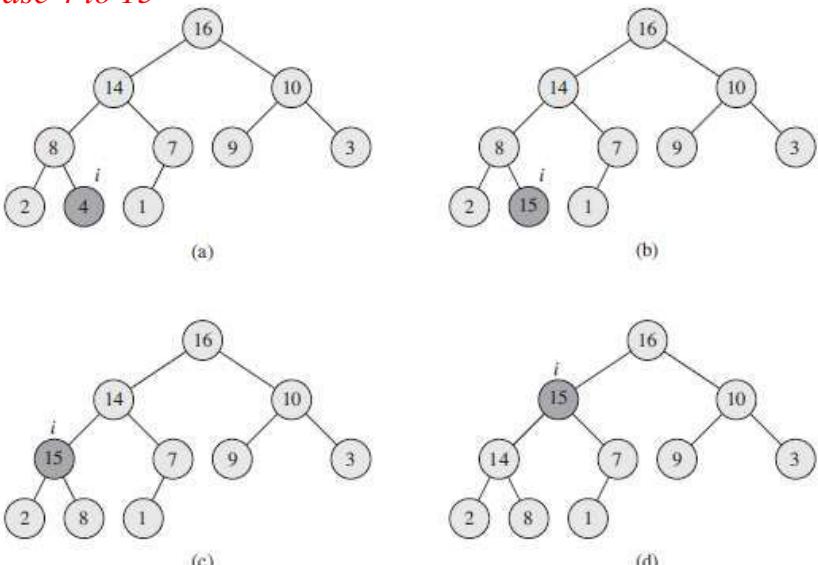
## Right(A, i)

```
// Input: A: an array representing a heap, i: an array index  
// Output: The index in A of the right child of i  
// Running Time: O(1)  
if  $2 * i + 1 \leq \text{heap-size}[A]$   
return  $2 * i + 1$   
else return NULL
```

Page 31

## Heap-Increase-Key

increase 4 to 15



Page 33

## Heap-Increase-Key(A, i, key)

```
// Input: A: an array representing a heap, i: an array index, key: a new key greater than  
A[i]  
// Output: A still representing a heap where the key of A[i] was increased to key  
// Running Time: O(log n) where n = heap-size[A]  
if key < A[i]  
    error("New key must be larger than current key")  
A[i] ← key  
while i > 1 and A[Parent(i)] < A[i]  
    exchange A[i] and A[Parent(i)]  
    i ← Parent(i)
```

Page 32

## Heap-Algorithms

## Heap-Extract-Max(A)

```
// Input: A: an array representing a heap  
// Output: The maximum element of A and A as a heap with  
this element removed  
// Running Time: O(log n) where n = heap-size[A]  
max ← A[1]  
A[1] ← A[heap-size[A]]  
heap-size[A] ← heap-size[A] - 1  
Max-Heapify(A, 1)  
return max
```

Page 34

## Max-Heap-Insert( $A$ , key)

```
// Input: A: an array representing a heap, key: a key to insert  
// Output: A modified to include key  
// Running Time: O(log n) where n =heap-size[A]  
 $heap\text{-size}[A] \leftarrow heap\text{-size}[A] + 1$   
 $A[heap\text{-size}[A]] \leftarrow -\infty$   
Heap-Increase-Key(A[heap-size[A]], key)
```

Page 35

**HW**

## Heap-Increase-Key

Show what happens when you use HeapIncrease-Key to increase key 5 to 33

Page 37

**HW**

## Max-Heapify and Build-Max-Heap

Demonstrate how Build-Max-Heap turns it into a heap

|   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|
| 7 | 9 | 3 | 5 | 6 | 8 | 13 | 32 | 12 | 22 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|

Page 36

**HW**

## Heap-Sort

Given the heap show how you use it to sort .Explain why the runtime of this algorithm is  $O(n \log n)$

Page 38

**Group 4:**

Priority Queue implementation using an Unordered Sequence (implemented using an array/linked list)

Page 39



## Data Structures and Algorithms Design

**BITS** Pilani  
Hyderabad Campus

Febin.A.Vahab

## Comparison of Different Priority Queue Implementations

| Method                                          | Unsorted Sequence | Sorted Sequence | Heap        |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|-------------|
| <code>size, isEmpty, key, replaceElement</code> | $O(1)$            | $O(1)$          | $O(1)$      |
| <code>minElement, min, minKey</code>            | $O(n)$            | $O(1)$          | $O(1)$      |
| <code>insertItem, insert</code>                 | $O(1)$            | $O(n)$          | $O(\log n)$ |
| <code>removeMin</code>                          | $O(n)$            | $O(1)$          | $O(\log n)$ |
| <code>remove</code>                             | $O(1)$            | $O(1)$          | $O(\log n)$ |
| <code>replaceKey</code>                         | $O(1)$            | $O(n)$          | $O(\log n)$ |

Page 40

## SESSION 5 -PLAN

| Sessions(#) | List of Topic Title                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Text/Ref Book/external resource |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 5           | Unordered Dictionary :ADT, Applications Hash Tables: Notion of Hashing and Collision (with a simple vector based hash table)Hash Functions: Properties, Simple hash functions<br>Methods for Collision Handling: Separate Chaining, Notion of Load Factor, Rehashing, Open Addressing [ Linear; Quadratic Probing, Double Hash] | T1: 2.5                         |

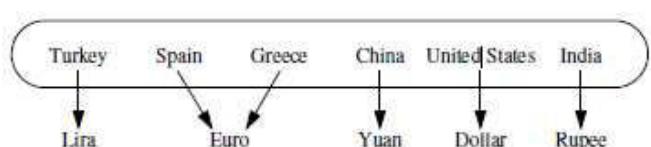
Page 2

## Dictionary ADT

- The dictionary ADT models a searchable collection of key-element items.
- A dictionary stores **key-element pairs ( k , e )**, which we call **items**, where k is the key and e is the element
- The main operations of a dictionary are searching, inserting, and deleting items
- A key is an identifier that is assigned by an application or user to an associated element.
- Multiple items with the same key are allowed*
- In cases when keys are unique, the key associated with an object can be viewed as an "address" for that object in memory.

Page 3

## The Unordered Dictionary ADT



From countries (the keys) to their units of currency (the values).

- Dictionaries use an array-like syntax for indexing such as **currency[ Greece ]** to access a value associated with a given key **currency[ Greece ] = New value** to remap it to a new value.
- Unlike a standard array, indices for a dictionary need not be consecutive nor even numeric.

Page 5

## The Dictionary ADT

- For example, in a dictionary storing student records (such as the student's name, address, and course grades), the key might be the **student's ID number**. (we would probably want to disallow two students having the same ID).

Page 4

## Applications

- The domain-name system (DNS) maps a host name, such as [www.bits-pilani.ac.in](http://www.bits-pilani.ac.in), to an Internet-Protocol (IP) address.
- A social media site typically relies on a (nonnumeric) username as a key that can be efficiently mapped to a particular user's associated information.
- A computer graphics system may map a color name, such as turquoise, to the triple of numbers that describes the color's RGB (red-green-blue) representation, such as (64,224,208).
- Python uses a dictionary to represent each namespace, mapping an identifying string, such as pi, to an associated object, such as 3.14159.

Page 6

- Counting Word Frequencies
  - Consider the problem of counting the number of occurrences of words in a document.
  - A dictionary is an ideal data structure to use here, for we can use words as keys and word counts as values.

Try implementing this using Python Dictionary class!!!

## Dictionary ADT methods:

- Special element (NO\_SUCH\_KEY) is known as a sentinel.
- If we wish to store an item 'e' in a dictionary so that the item is itself its own key, then we would insert e with the method call `insertItem(e, e)`.
- *findAIEElements(k)* - which returns an iterator of all elements with key equal to k
- *removeAIEElements (k)*, which removes from D all the items with key equal to k

## Dictionary ADT methods:

- Dictionary ADT methods:
  - **findElement(k)**: if the dictionary has an item with key k, returns its element, else, returns the special element NO\_SUCH\_KEY
  - **insertItem(k, e)**: Insert an item with element e and key k into D
  - **removeElement(k)**: if the dictionary has an item with key k, removes it from the dictionary and returns its element, else returns the special element NO\_SUCH\_KEY
  - **size()**, **isEmpty()**
  - **keys()**, **elements()**-Iterators

## Log Files/Unordered Sequence Implementation



- A log file is a dictionary implemented by means of an **unordered sequence**
- Often called **audit trail**
- We store the items of the dictionary in a sequence (based on an array or list to store the key-element pairs), in arbitrary order
- The space required for a log file is  $O(n)$ , since the array data structure can maintain its memory usage to be proportional to its size.

## Log Files

- Performance:
  - **Insertion?** insert Item (k, e)
  - **insertItem takes O(1) time** since we can insert the new item at the end of the sequence
  - **Search?? Removal??**
  - **[findElement(k), removeElement(k)]**
  - findElement and removeElement **take O(n) time** since in the worst case (the item is not found) we traverse the entire sequence to look for an item with the given key
- The log file is effective only for dictionaries of small size or for dictionaries on which insertions are the most common operations, while searches and removals are rarely performed
- (e.g., historical record of logins to a workstation)

Page 11

## Bucket Arrays



- A bucket array for a hash table is an array A of size N, where each cell of A is thought of as a "bucket" (that is, a container of key-element pairs)
- Integer N defines the capacity of the array.
- **An element e with key k is simply inserted into the bucket A [k].**
- Any bucket cells associated with keys not present in the dictionary are assumed to hold the special NO SUCH KEY object.

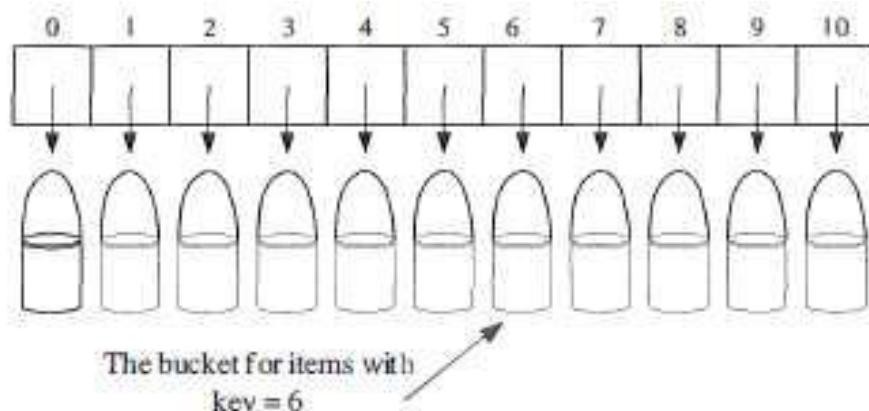
Page 13

## Dictionary Implementation using Hash Tables

- A hash table for a given key type consists of
  - Array (called table) of size N-(Bucket Array)
  - Hash function h
- **When implementing a dictionary with a hash table, the goal is to store item (k, e) at index i = h(k)**

Page 12

## Bucket Arrays



Page 14

## Bucket Arrays

- If keys are not unique, then two different elements may be mapped to the same bucket in A .
- A **collision** has occurred.
- If each bucket of A can store only a single element, then we cannot associate more than one element with a single bucket
- ↑ problem in the case of collisions.
- There are ways of dealing with collisions
- The best strategy is to try to avoid them in the first place

## Dictionary Implementation using Hash Tables-Motivation

- The bucket array requires keys be **unique integers** in the range **[0 ,N - 1 ]** , which is often not the case
- There are two challenges in extending this framework to the more general setting
- **What can we do if we have at most 100 entries with integer keys but the keys are in range 0 to 1,000,000,000 ?**
- **What can we do if keys are not integers ?**

## Bucket Arrays-Analys

- If keys are unique, then collisions are not a concern, and searches, insertions, and removals in the hash table take
- **worst-case time O( 1 ) .**
- **Uses O(N) space**

## Bucket Arrays-Analys

- What we can do???
- Define the hash table data structure to consist of a bucket array together with a "good" mapping from our keys to
  - 1. integers,**
  - 2.in the range [0, N - 1 ]**

## Hash Functions

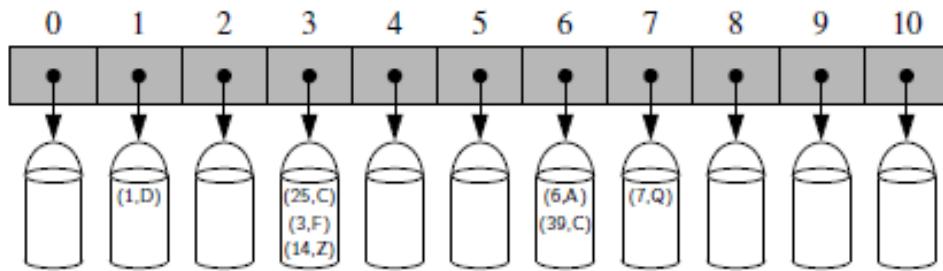
- A hash function  $h$  maps keys of a given type to integers in a fixed interval  $[0, N - 1]$
- Now, bucket array method can be applied to arbitrary keys
- Example:  

$$h(x) = x \bmod N$$
  
is a hash function for integer keys
- The integer  $h(x)$  is called **the hash value of key  $x$** .

## Hash Functions

- **Main Idea**
- Use the hash function value,  $h(k)$ , as an index to bucket array,  $A$ , instead of the key  $k$  (which is most likely inappropriate for use as a bucket array index).
- That is, store the item( $k, e$ ) in the bucket  $A[h(k)]$ .
- A hash function is "good" if it maps the keys in our dictionary so as to **minimize collisions** as much as possible.

## Bucket Arrays with a hash function

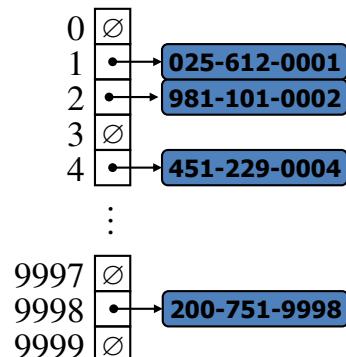


A bucket array of capacity 11 with items (1,D), (25,C), (3,F), (14,Z), (6,A), (39,C), and (7,Q), using a simple hash function

## Hash Tables-Example

- We design a hash table for a dictionary storing items (SSN, Name), where SSN (social security number) is a nine-digit positive integer
- Hash table uses an array of size  $N = 10,000$  and the hash function  

$$h(x) = \text{last four digits of } x$$



## Evaluation of a hash function, $h(k)$

- A hash function,  $h(k)$ , is usually specified as the composition of two functions:

### Hash code map:

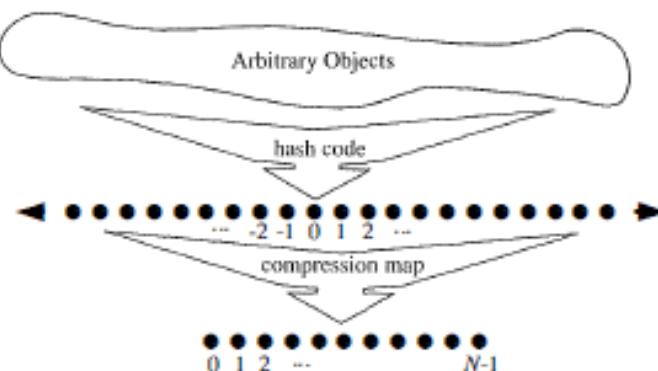
$h_1: \text{keys} \rightarrow \text{integers}$  [mapping the key  $k$  to an integer]

### Compression map:

$h_2: \text{integers} \rightarrow [0, N - 1]$

[mapping the hash code to an integer within the range of indices of a bucket array]

## Evaluation of a hash function



## Evaluation of a hash function, $h(k)$

- The hash code map is applied first, and the compression map is applied next on the result, i.e.,  

$$h(x) = h_2(h_1(x))$$
- The goal of the hash function is to “disperse” the keys in an apparently random way.

## Hash code in python

```
In [12]: print('Hash for 220 is:', hash(220))
# hash for decimal
print('Hash for 220.34 is:',hash(220.34))

# hash for string
print('Hash for Data is:', hash('Data'))

Hash for 220 is: 220
Hash for 220.34 is: 783986623132664028
Hash for Data is: 2539907043859605924
```

```
In [13]: id(220.34)
```

```
Out[13]: 3207284319792
```

```
In [14]: id('Data')
```

```
Out[14]: 3207240693944
```

# Compression Maps

- **Division:**
  - Let  $y=h_1(x)$ //integer hash code for a key object k
  - $h_2(y) = y \bmod N$
  - The size N of the hash table is usually chosen to be a prime
  - **The reason has to do with number theory and is beyond the scope of this course!!!**

Page 36



## Data Structures and Algorithms Design

**BITS Pilani**  
Hyderabad Campus

Febin.A.Vahab

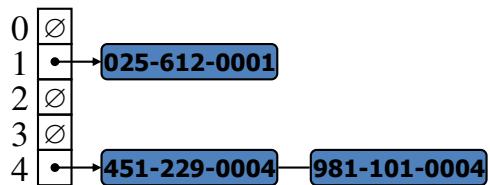
**THANK YOU!**

## SESSION 5 -PLAN

| Sessions(#) | List of Topic Title                                                                                                                            | Text/Ref Book/external resource |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 5           | Methods for Collision Handling: Separate Chaining, Notion of Load Factor, Rehashing, Open Addressing [ Linear; Quadratic Probing, Double Hash] | T1: 2.5                         |

## Collision- Handling Schemes

- Collisions occur when different elements are mapped to the same cell
- Separate Chaining:** let each cell in the table point to a linked list of elements that map there



Page 3

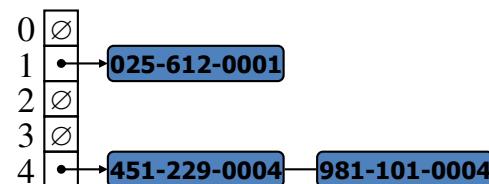
## Separate Chaining

- A simple and efficient way for dealing with collisions is to have each bucket A [i] store a reference to a list that stores all the items that our hash function has mapped to the bucket A [i]
- Fundamental dictionary operations

- findElement (k) :
 

```

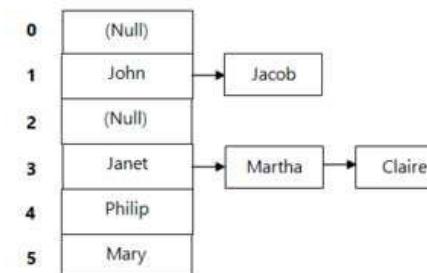
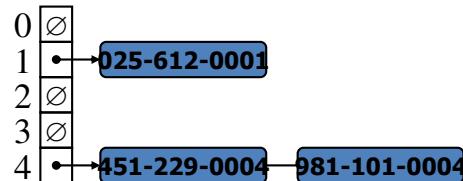
B ← A[h (k)]
if B is empty then
  return NO SUCH KEY
else
  { search for the key k in the sequence for this bucket}
  return B.findElement(k)
      
```



Page 5

## Collision- Handling Schemes

- Chaining is simple, but requires additional memory outside the table



Page 4

## Separate Chaining

- Fundamental dictionary operations
- insertItem(k, e) :
 

```

if A[h (k)] is empty then
  Create a new initially empty, sequence-based dictionary B
  A[h (k)] ← B
else
  B ← A[h (k)]
  B.insertItem(k, e)
      
```

Page 6

# Separate Chaining

- Fundamental dictionary operations

`removeElement (k) :`

```
B ← A[h (k)]
if B is empty then
    return NO_SUCH_KEY
else
    return B. removeElement(k)
```

Page 7

## Separate chaining

- Example:** Load the keys 23, 13, 21, 14, 7, 8, and 15 , in this order, in a hash table of size 7 using separate chaining with the hash function:  $h(\text{key}) = \text{key \% 7}$

$$h(23) = 23 \% 7 = 2$$

$$h(13) = 13 \% 7 = 6$$

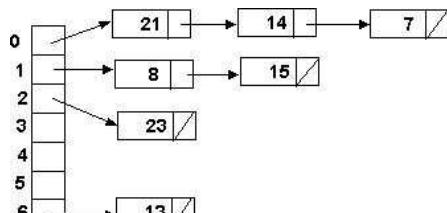
$$h(21) = 21 \% 7 = 0$$

$$h(14) = 14 \% 7 = 0 \quad \text{collision}$$

$$h(7) = 7 \% 7 = 0 \quad \text{collision}$$

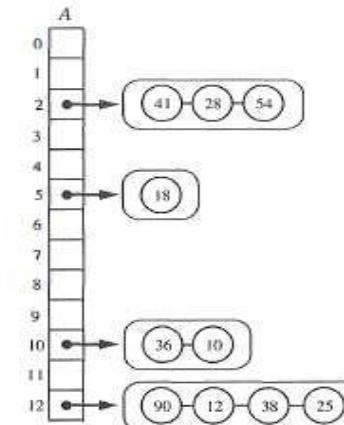
$$h(8) = 8 \% 7 = 1$$

$$h(15) = 15 \% 7 = 1 \quad \text{collision}$$



Page 9

# Separate Chaining



Example of a hash table of size 13, storing 10 integer keys, with collisions resolved by the chaining method. The compression map in this case is  $h (k) = k \bmod 13$ .

Page 8

## Separate Chaining

- A good hash function will try to minimize collisions as much as possible, which will imply that most of our buckets are either empty or store just a single entry.
- Assume we use a good hash function to index the  $n$  entries of our map in a bucket array of capacity  $N$ , we expect each bucket to be of size  $n/N(\text{average})$
- This value is called the **load factor** of the hash table
- Should be bounded by a small constant, preferably below 1

Page 10

## Separate Chaining



- For a good hash function, the expected running time of operations `findElement`, `insertItem`, `removeElement` in a dictionary implemented using hash table which uses separate chaining to resolve collisions is  $O(n/N)$ .
- Thus we can expect the standard dictionary operations to run in  $O(1)$  expected time provided we know that  $n$  is  $O(N)$

Page 11



Page 13

## Rehashing



- Mostly load factor ,0.75 is common
- Whenever we add elements we need to increase the size of our bucket array and change our compression map to match this new size, in order to keep the load factor below the specified constant.
- Moreover, we must then insert all the existing hash-table elements into the new bucket array using the new compression map. Such a size increase and hash table rebuild is called **rehashing**
- A good choice is to rehash into an array roughly double the size of the original array, choosing the size of the new array to be a prime number

Page 12



Page 14

## Open Addressing

- **Open addressing:** the colliding item is placed in a different cell of the table
- This approach saves space because no auxiliary structures are employed, but it requires a bit more complexity to deal with collisions

## Linear Probing

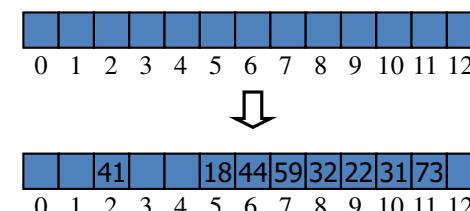
- Linear probing handles collisions by placing the colliding item in the next (circularly) available table cell
- Each table cell inspected is referred to as a “probe”
- Colliding items lump together, causing future collisions to cause a longer sequence of probes

## Linear Probing

- In this method, if we try to insert an entry  $(k, v)$  into a bucket  $A[i]$  that is already occupied, where  $i = h(k)$ , then we try next at  $A[(i+1) \bmod N]$ .
- This process will continue until we find an empty bucket that can accept the new entry.

## Linear Probing

- **Example:** An insertion into a hash table using linear probing to resolve collisions.
  - $h(x) = x \bmod 13$
  - Insert keys 18, 41, 22, 44, 59, 32, 31, 73, in this order



- **Example**

- We want to add the following (phone, address) entries to an addressBook with size 101:
  - addressBook.add("869-1264", "8-128");
  - addressBook.add("869-8132", "9-101");
  - addressBook.add("869-4294", "8-156");
  - addressBook.add("869-2072", "9-101");

The hash function is  $h(k) = (k \% 10000) \% 101$

All of the above keys (phone numbers) map to index 52. By linear probing, all entries will be put to indices 52 - 55

## Search with Linear Probing

### Algorithm `findElement(k)`

```
i ← h(k)
p ← 0
repeat
    c ← A[i]
    if c = ∅
        return NO_SUCH_KEY
    else if c.key() = k
        return c.element()
    else
        i ← (i + 1) mod N
        p ← p + 1
until p = N
return NO_SUCH_KEY
```

## Search with Linear Probing

- Consider a hash table A that uses linear probing
- **findElement(k)**
  - We start at cell  $h(k)$
  - We probe consecutive locations until one of the following occurs
    - An item with key  $k$  is found, or
    - An empty cell is found, or
    - $N$  cells have been unsuccessfully probed

## Updates with Linear Probing

- To handle insertions and deletions, we introduce special object, called AVAILABLE, which replaces deleted elements

### removeElement(k)

- We search for an item with key  $k$
- If such an item  $(k, e)$  is found, we replace it with the special item AVAILABLE and we return element  $e$
- Else, we return NO\_SUCH\_KEY

## Updates with Linear Probing

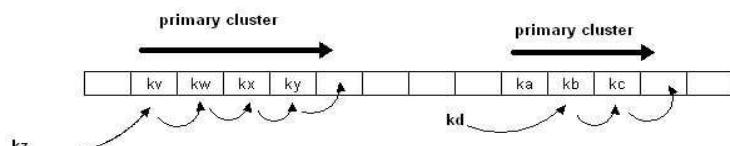
- **insertItem( $k, e$ )**

- We throw an exception if the table is full
- We start at cell  $h(k)$
- We probe consecutive cells until one of the following occurs
  - A cell  $i$  is found that is either empty or stores **AVAILABLE**, or
  - $N$  cells have been unsuccessfully probed
- We store item  $(k, e)$  in cell  $i$

Page 23

## Problem with Linear Probing

- Linear probing is subject to a primary clustering phenomenon.
- Elements tend to cluster around table locations that they originally hash to.
- Primary clusters can combine to form larger clusters. This leads to long probe sequences and hence deterioration in hash table efficiency.



Page 25

## Problem with Linear Probing

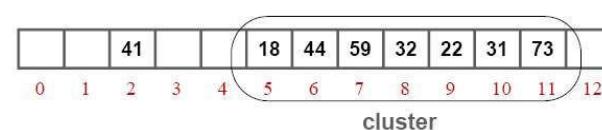
- Primary Clustering

Page 24

## Problem with Linear Probing

**Example of a primary cluster:** Insert keys: **18, 41, 22, 44, 59, 32, 31, 73**, in this order, in an originally empty hash table of size **13**, using the hash function  $h(\text{key}) = \text{key \% } 13$  and  $c(i) = i$ :

$$\begin{aligned} h(18) &= 5 \\ h(41) &= 2 \\ h(22) &= 9 \\ h(44) &= 5+1 \\ h(59) &= 7 \\ h(32) &= 6+1+1 \\ h(31) &= 5+1+1+1+1 \\ h(73) &= 8+1+1+1 \end{aligned}$$



Page 26

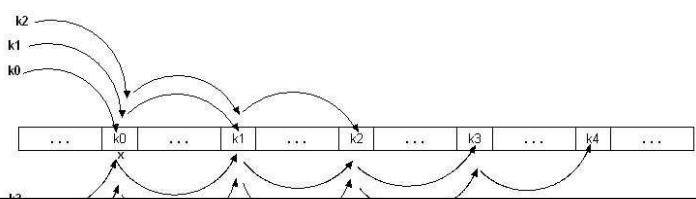
## Quadratic probing

- This open addressing strategy involves iteratively trying the buckets
- $A[(i + f(j)) \bmod N]$ ,**  
for  $j = 1, 2, \dots$ , where  $f(j) = j^2$ , until finding an empty bucket
- This strategy may not find an empty slot even when the array is not full.(If N is not chosen as a prime)
  - This strategy may not find an empty slot, if the bucket array is at least half full.

Page 27

## Quadratic probing -Secondary Clusters

- Quadratic probing is better than linear probing because it eliminates primary clustering.
- However, it may result in **secondary clustering**: if  $h(k_1) = h(k_2)$  the probing sequences for  $k_1$  and  $k_2$  are exactly the same. This sequence of locations is called a **secondary cluster**.
- Secondary clustering is less harmful than primary clustering because secondary clusters do not combine to form large clusters.
- 



Page 29

## Example

Insert the elements 76,40,48,5 and 55,  $N=7$ ,  $h(k)=k \bmod N$

- $76 \% 7 = 6$
- $40 \% 7 = 5$
- $48$ 
  - $h(k) = k \bmod N$
  - $= 48 \% 7 = 6$  --collision
  - $h_1(k) = h(k) + i + i^2$
  - $= (6+1+1) \bmod 7 = 1$

|   |    |   |   |   |    |    |
|---|----|---|---|---|----|----|
| 0 | 1  | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5  | 6  |
|   | 48 |   |   | 5 | 40 | 76 |

Page 28

Page 30

## Linear Vs Quadratic probing

- An advantage of linear probing is that it can reach every location in the hash table.
- This property is important since it guarantees the success of the *insertItem* operation when the hash table is not full.
- Quadratic probing can only guarantee a successful *insertItem* operation when the hash table is at most half full.

## Double Hashing

- Common choice of compression map for the secondary hash function:  

$$h_2(k) = q - k \bmod q$$

where

  - $q < N$
  - $q$  is a prime
- The possible values for  $h_2(k)$  are  
 $1, 2, \dots, q$

## Double Hashing

- Double hashing uses a secondary hash function  $h'$ ,
- If  $h$  maps some key  $k$  to a bucket  $A[i]$ , with  $i = h(k)$ , that is already occupied, then we iteratively try the bucket
  - $A[(i + f(j)) \bmod N]$  next,
  - for  $j = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ , where  $f(j) = j * h'(k)$
- The secondary hash function cannot have zero values
- The table size  $N$  must be a prime to allow probing of all the cells
- Choose a secondary hash function that will attempt to minimize clustering as much as possible

## Example of Double Hashing

- Consider a hash table storing integer keys that handles collision with double hashing
  - $N = 13$
  - $h(k) = k \bmod 13$
  - $h'(k) = 7 - k \bmod 7$
- Insert keys 18, 41, 22, 44, 59, 32, 31, 73, in this order

## Example of Double Hashing

| $k$ | $h(k)$ | $h'(k)$ | Probes |
|-----|--------|---------|--------|
| 18  | 5      | 3       | 5      |
| 41  | 2      | 1       | 2      |
| 22  | 9      | 6       | 9      |
| 44  | 5      | 5       | 5 10   |
| 59  | 7      | 4       | 7      |
| 32  | 6      | 3       | 6      |
| 31  | 5      | 4       | 5 9 0  |
| 73  | 8      | 4       | 8      |

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12

31 | 41 | 18 | 32 | 59 | 73 | 22 | 44 |   |   |   |   |  

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12

Page 35

## Performance of Hashing

- The expected running time of all the dictionary ADT operations in a hash table is  $O(1)$
- In practice, hashing is very fast provided the load factor is not close to 100%
- Applications of hash tables:
  - small databases
  - compilers
  - browser caches

Page 37

## Performance of Hashing

- In the worst case, searches, insertions and removals on a hash table take  $O(n)$  time
- The worst case occurs when all the keys inserted into the dictionary collide
- The load factor =  $n/N$  affects the performance of a hash table
- Assuming that the hash values are like random numbers, it can be shown that the expected number of probes for an insertion with open addressing is

$$1 / (1 - \text{load factor}) \quad [\text{R2:Section 11.4,Theorem 11.6,11.8}]$$

Page 36

## Open Addressing

- Advantages of Open addressing:**
  - All items are stored in the hash table itself. There is no need for another data structure.
  - Open addressing is more efficient storage-wise.
- Disadvantages of Open Addressing:**
  - The keys of the objects to be hashed must be distinct.
  - Dependent on choosing a proper table size.
  - Requires the use of a three-state (Occupied, Empty, or Deleted) flag in each cell.

Page 38

## Open Addressing

- In general, primes give the best table sizes.
- With any open addressing method of collision resolution, as the table fills, there can be a severe degradation in the table performance.
- Load factors between 0.6 and 0.7 are common.
- Load factors > 0.7 are undesirable.
- The search time depends only on the load factor, *not* on the table size.

## Separate chaining Vs Open Addressing

- Table size need not be a prime number.
- The keys of the objects to be hashed need not be unique.

## Separate chaining Vs Open Addressing

**Separate Chaining has several advantages over open addressing:**

- Collision resolution is simple and efficient.
- The hash table can hold more elements without the large performance deterioration of open addressing (The load factor can be 1 or greater)
- The performance of chaining declines much more slowly than open addressing.
- Deletion is easy - no special flag values are necessary.

## Separate chaining Vs Open Addressing

**Disadvantages of Separate Chaining:**

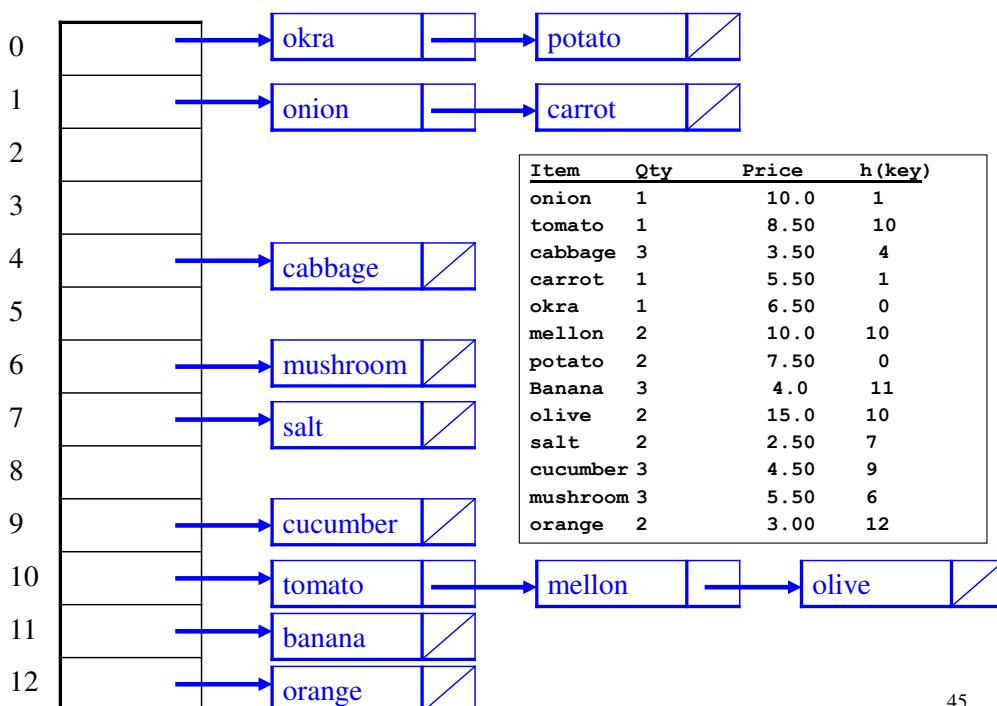
- It requires the implementation of a separate data structure for chains, and code to manage it.
- The main cost of chaining is the extra space required for the linked lists.

## Exercises-1

- Use the hash function **hash** to load the following commodity items into a hash table of size **13** using separate chaining:

|          |   |      |
|----------|---|------|
| onion    | 1 | 10.0 |
| tomato   | 1 | 8.50 |
| cabbage  | 3 | 3.50 |
| carrot   | 1 | 5.50 |
| okra     | 1 | 6.50 |
| mellan   | 2 | 10.0 |
| potato   | 2 | 7.50 |
| Banana   | 3 | 4.00 |
| olive    | 2 | 15.0 |
| salt     | 2 | 2.50 |
| cucumber | 3 | 4.50 |
| mushroom | 3 | 5.50 |
| orange   | 2 | 3.00 |

Page 43



45

## Exercises-I Solution

| character  | a  | b  | c  | e   | g   | h   | i   | k   | l   | m   | n   | o   | p   | r   | s   | t   | u   | v   |
|------------|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| ASCII code | 97 | 98 | 99 | 101 | 103 | 104 | 105 | 107 | 108 | 109 | 110 | 111 | 112 | 114 | 115 | 116 | 117 | 118 |

$$\text{hash(onion)} = (111 + 110 + 105 + 111 + 110) \% 13 = 547 \% 13 = 1$$

$$\text{hash(salt)} = (115 + 97 + 108 + 116) \% 13 = 436 \% 13 = 7$$

$$\text{hash(orange)} = (111 + 114 + 97 + 110 + 103 + 101) \% 13 = 636 \% 13 = 12$$

Page 44

## Exercises-II

### Example:

Perform the operations given below, in the given order, on an initially empty hash table of size **13** using linear probing with  $c(i) = i$  and the hash function:  $h(\text{key}) = \text{key} \% 13$ :

insert(18), insert(26), insert(35), insert(9), find(15), find(48), delete(35), delete(40), find(9), insert(64), insert(47), find(35)

- The required probe sequences are given by:

$$h_i(\text{key}) = (h(\text{key}) + i) \% 13 \quad i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, 12$$

Page 46

## Exercises-II

| OPERATION    | PROBE SEQUENCE                 | COMMENT                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| insert(18)   | $h_0(18) = (18 \% 13) = 5$     | SUCCESS                                                                                                                                             |
| insert(26)   | $h_0(26) = (26 \% 13) = 0$     | SUCCESS                                                                                                                                             |
| insert(35)   | $h_0(35) = (35 \% 13) = 9$     | SUCCESS                                                                                                                                             |
| insert(9)    | $h_0(9) = (9 \% 13) = 9$       | COLLISION                                                                                                                                           |
|              | $h_1(9) = (9+1) \% 13 = 10$    | SUCCESS                                                                                                                                             |
| find(15)     | $h_0(15) = (15 \% 13) = 2$     | FAIL because location 2 has <b>Empty</b> status                                                                                                     |
| find(48)     | $h_0(48) = (48 \% 13) = 9$     | COLLISION                                                                                                                                           |
|              | $h_1(48) = (9 + 1) \% 13 = 10$ | COLLISION                                                                                                                                           |
|              | $h_2(48) = (9 + 2) \% 13 = 11$ | FAIL because location 11 has <b>Empty</b> status                                                                                                    |
| withdraw(35) | $h_0(35) = (35 \% 13) = 9$     | SUCCESS because location 9 contains 35 and the status is <b>Occupied</b> . The status is changed to <b>Deleted</b> , but the key 35 is not removed. |
| find(9)      | $h_0(9) = (9 \% 13) = 9$       | The search continues, location 9 does not contain 9; but its status is <b>Deleted</b>                                                               |
|              | $h_1(9) = (9+1) \% 13 = 10$    | SUCCESS                                                                                                                                             |
| insert(64)   | $h_0(64) = (64 \% 13) = 12$    | SUCCESS                                                                                                                                             |
| insert(47)   | $h_0(47) = (47 \% 13) = 8$     | SUCCESS                                                                                                                                             |
| find(35)     | $h_0(35) = (35 \% 13) = 9$     | FAIL because location 9 contains 35 but its status is <b>Deleted</b>                                                                                |

| Index | Status | Value |
|-------|--------|-------|
| 0     | O      | 26    |
| 1     | E      |       |
| 2     | E      |       |
| 3     | E      |       |
| 4     | E      |       |
| 5     | O      | 18    |
| 6     | E      |       |
| 7     | E      |       |
| 8     | O      | 47    |
| 9     | D      | 35    |
| 10    | O      | 9     |
| 11    | E      |       |
| 12    | O      | 64    |

Page 47

## Exercises-IV

- Given a **hash table** of size 7 and hash function  $h(x) = x \bmod 7$ , show the final table after inserting the following elements in the table **19, 26, 13, 48, 17** for each of the cases
  - i. When **linear probing** is used
  - ii. When **double hashing** is used with a second function  $g(x) = 5 - (x \bmod 5)$

Page 49

## Exercises-III

- Suppose you are given an array  $A[1 : n]$  stored in read-only memory from which you want to sample  $k$  elements **uniformly** at random *without replacement* (so all of the sampled elements are distinct). Show how to do this, in  $O(n)$  expected time and  $O(k)$  space using an ADT covered in the contact sessions, and **do not** assume that the elements of  $A$  are *integer-valued*.

Page 48

## Exercise-V

- Example: Load the keys **23, 13, 21, 14, 7, 8, and 15**, in this order, in a hash table of size 7 using quadratic probing and the hash function:  $h(\text{key}) = \text{key} \% 7$
- The required probe sequences are given by:

$$h_i(\text{key}) = (h(\text{key}) + i^2) \% 7 \quad i = 0, 1, 2, 3$$

Page 50

## Exercise-V-Solution

$h_0(23) = (23 \% 7) \% 7 = 2$   
 $h_0(13) = (13 \% 7) \% 7 = 6$   
 $h_0(21) = (21 \% 7) \% 7 = 0$   
 $h_0(14) = (14 \% 7) \% 7 = 0$  collision  
 $h_1(14) = (0 + 1^2) \% 7 = 1$   
 $h_0(7) = (7 \% 7) \% 7 = 0$  collision  
 $h_1(7) = (0 + 1^2) \% 7 = 1$  collision  
 $h_2(7) = (0 + 2^2) \% 7 = 4$   
 $h_0(8) = (8 \% 7) \% 7 = 1$  collision  
 $h_1(8) = (1 + 1^2) \% 7 = 2$  collision  
 $h_2(8) = (1 + 2^2) \% 7 = 5$   
 $h_0(15) = (15 \% 7) \% 7 = 1$  collision  
 $h_1(15) = (1 + 1^2) \% 7 = 2$  collision  
 $h_2(15) = (1 + 2^2) \% 7 = 5$  collision  
 $h_3(15) = (1 + 3^2) \% 7 = 3$

|   |    |
|---|----|
| 0 | 21 |
| 1 | 14 |
| 2 | 23 |
| 3 | 15 |
| 4 | 7  |
| 5 | 8  |
| 6 | 13 |

## Exercise-VI-Solution

$h_0(18) = (18 \% 13) \% 13 = 5$   
 $h_0(26) = (26 \% 13) \% 13 = 0$   
 $h_0(35) = (35 \% 13) \% 13 = 9$   
 $h_0(9) = (9 \% 13) \% 13 = 9$  collision  
 $h_p(9) = 1 + 9 \% 12 = 10$   
 $h_1(9) = (9 + 1 * 10) \% 13 = 6$   
 $h_0(64) = (64 \% 13) \% 13 = 12$   
 $h_0(47) = (47 \% 13) \% 13 = 8$   
 $h_0(96) = (96 \% 13) \% 13 = 5$  collision  
 $h_p(96) = 1 + 96 \% 12 = 1$   
 $h_1(96) = (5 + 1 * 1) \% 13 = 6$  collision  
 $h_2(96) = (5 + 2 * 1) \% 13 = 7$   
 $h_0(36) = (36 \% 13) \% 13 = 10$   
 $h_0(70) = (70 \% 13) \% 13 = 5$  collision  
 $h_p(70) = 1 + 70 \% 12 = 11$   
 $h_1(70) = (5 + 1 * 11) \% 13 = 3$

$$hi(key) = [h(key) + i * hp(key)] \% 13$$

$$h(key) = key \% 13$$

$$hp(key) = 1 + key \% 12$$

## Exercise-VI

Load the keys **18, 26, 35, 9, 64, 47, 96, 36, and 70** in this order; in an empty hash table of size **13**

- (a) using double hashing with the first hash function:  $h(key) = \text{key \% 13}$  and the second hash function:  $h_p(key) = 1 + \text{key \% 12}$
- (b) using double hashing with the first hash function:  $h(key) = \text{key \% 13}$  and the second hash function:  $h_p(key) = 7 - \text{key \% 7}$

Show all computations.

## Exercise-VI-Solution

|    |   |   |    |   |    |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|----|---|---|----|---|----|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 0  | 1 | 2 | 3  | 4 | 5  | 6 | 7  | 8  | 9  | 10 | 11 | 12 |
| 26 |   |   | 70 |   | 18 | 9 | 96 | 47 | 35 | 36 |    | 64 |

## CONTACT SESSION 6 -PLAN

| Contact Sessions(#) | List of Topic Title                                                                                                                                                 | Text/Ref Book/external resource |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 6                   | Graphs - Terms and Definitions, Properties, Representations (Edge List, Adjacency list, Adjacency Matrix), Graph Traversals (Depth First and Breadth First Search ) | T1: 6.1, 6.2, 6.3               |



# Data Structures and Algorithms Design

**BITS** Pilani  
Hyderabad Campus



Febin.A.Vahab

## Depth-First Search



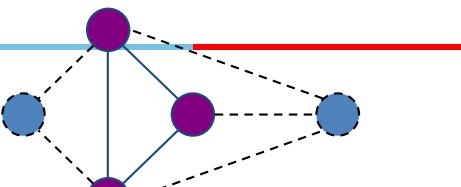
- Definitions
  - Subgraph
  - Connectivity
  - Spanning trees and forests
- Depth-first search
  - Algorithm
  - Example
  - Properties
  - Analysis
- Applications of DFS
  - Cycle finding
  - Path finding

## SUBGRAPHS

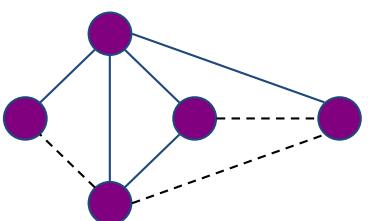


- Subgraphs
- A subgraph S of a graph G is a graph such that
  - The vertices of S are a subset of the vertices of G
  - The edges of S are a subset of the edges of G
- A spanning subgraph of G is a subgraph that contains all the vertices of G

## SUBGRAPHS



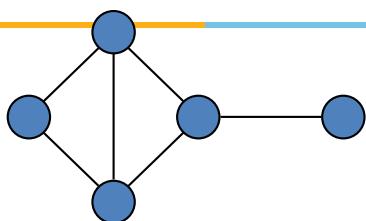
Subgraph



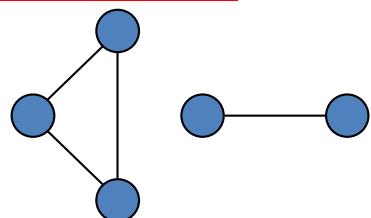
Spanning subgraph

Page 5

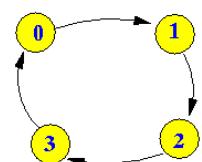
## Connected graph



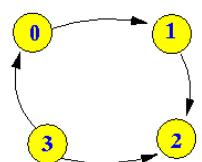
Connected graph



Non connected graph with two connected components



Strongly Connected



Not Strongly Connected

Page 7

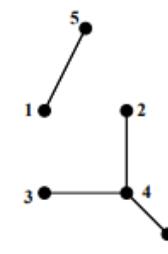
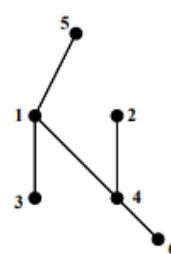
## Connectivity

- A graph is **connected** if there is a path between every pair of vertices
- A connected component of a graph G is a maximal connected subgraph of G
- A directed graph G is **strongly connected** if:
  - For any two vertices u and v:
  - There is a directed path  $u \rightarrow v$ , and
  - There is a directed path  $v \rightarrow u$

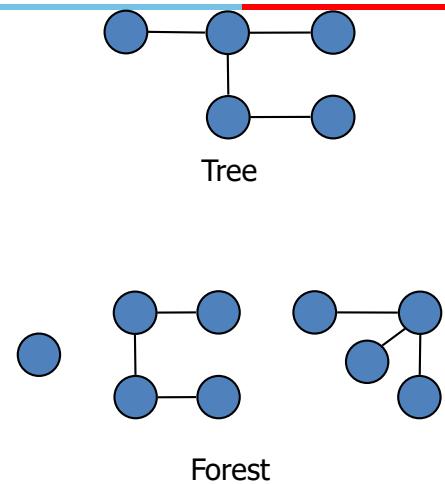
Page 6

## Trees and Forests

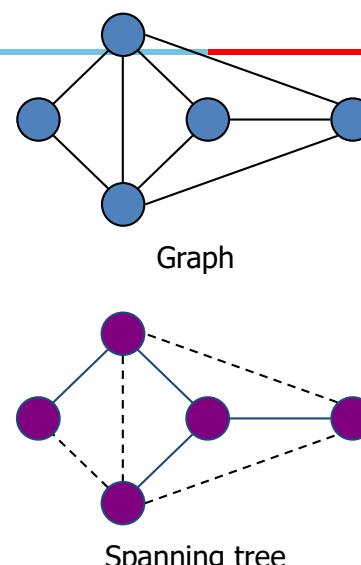
- A tree is a connected graph with no cycles.
- A forest is a graph with each connected component a tree



Page 8



## Spanning Tree



Page 9

## Spanning Trees

- A spanning tree of a connected graph is a spanning subgraph that is a tree:
- which includes all of the vertices of  $G$ , with minimum possible number of edges

Page 10

## Subgraphs,trees-Example

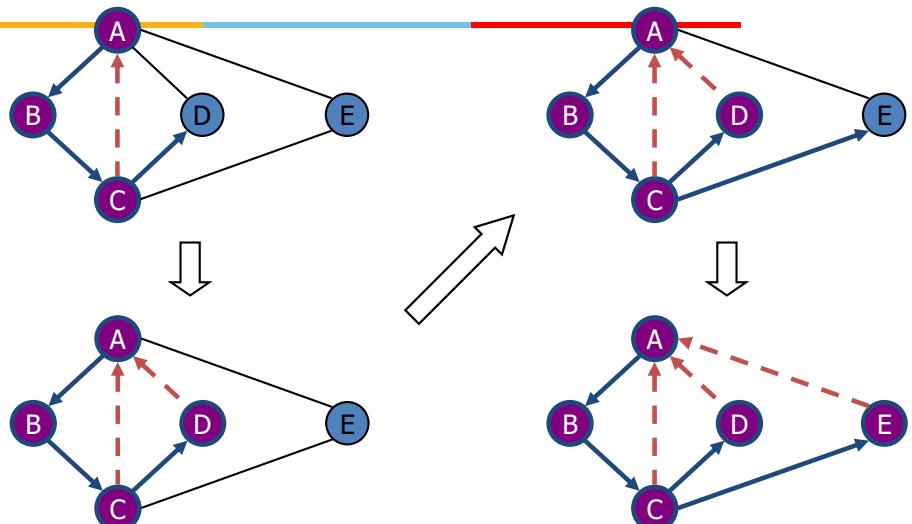
- Perhaps the most talked about graph today is the Internet, which can be viewed as a graph whose vertices are computers and whose (undirected) edges are communication connections between pairs of computers on the Internet.
- The computers and the connections between them in a single domain, like <http://www.bits-pilani.ac.in/>, form a subgraph of the Internet. If this subgraph is connected, then two users on computers in this domain can send e-mail to one another without having their information packets ever leave their domain.
- Suppose the edges of this subgraph form a spanning tree. This implies that, even if a single connection goes down (for example, because someone pulls a communication cable out of the back of a computer in this domain), then this subgraph will no longer be connected.

Page 12

## Depth-First Search

- Depth-first search (DFS) is a general technique for traversing a graph
- Search “deeper” in the graph whenever possible
- Explores edges out of the most recently discovered vertex that still has unexplored edges leaving it.
- Once all of v’s edges have been explored, the search “backtracks” to explore edges leaving the vertex from which v was discovered.
- This process continues until we have discovered all the vertices that are reachable from the original source vertex.
- If any undiscovered vertices remain, then depth-first search selects one of them as a new source, and it repeats the search from that source.
- The algorithm repeats this entire process until it has discovered every vertex

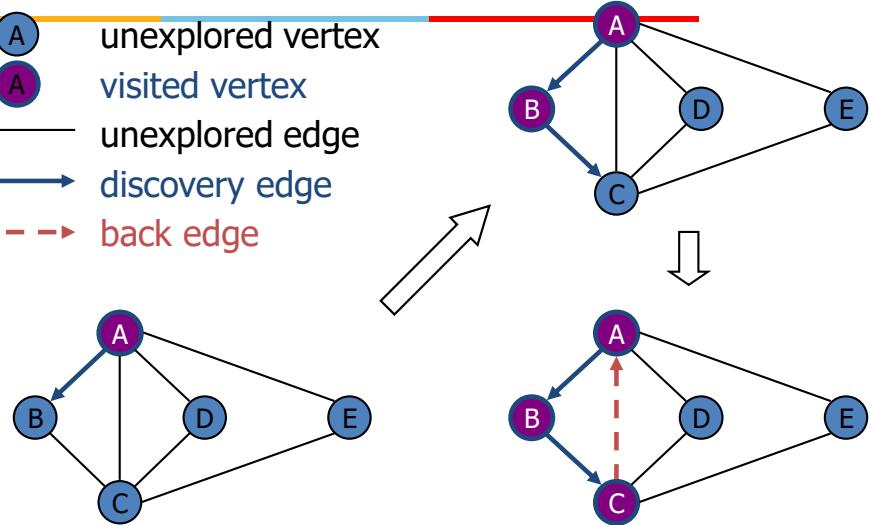
## Depth-First Search



Page 13

## Depth-First Search

- unexplored vertex
- visited vertex
- unexplored edge
- discovery edge
- back edge



Page 14

## Depth-First Search

- The DFS algorithm is similar to a classic strategy for exploring a maze
  - We mark each intersection, corner and dead end (vertex) visited
  - We mark each corridor (edge) traversed
  - We keep track of the path back to the entrance (start vertex) by means of a rope (recursion stack)

Page 15

Page 16

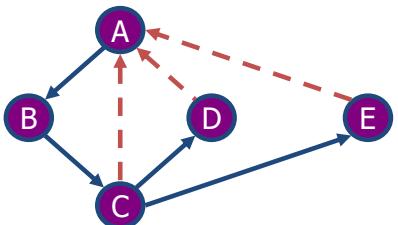
# Depth-First Search-Properties

## Property 1

$DFS(G, v)$  visits all the vertices and edges in the connected component of  $v$

## Property 2

The discovery edges labeled by  $DFS(G, v)$  form a spanning tree of the connected component of  $v$



Page 17

# Depth-First Search

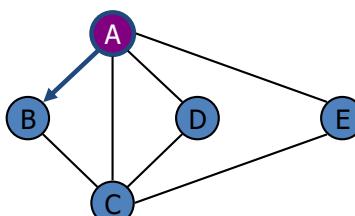
## Algorithm $DFS(G, v)$

**Input** graph  $G$  and a start vertex  $v$  of  $G$

**Output** labeling of the edges of  $G$  in the connected component of  $v$  as discovery edges and back edges

$setLabel(v, VISITED)$

```
for all  $e \in G.incidentEdges(v)$ 
    if  $getLabel(e) = UNEXPLORED$ 
         $w \leftarrow G.opposite(v, e)$ 
        if  $getLabel(w) = UNEXPLORED$ 
             $setLabel(e, DISCOVERY)$ 
             $DFS(G, w)$ 
        else
             $setLabel(e, BACK)$ 
```



Page 19

# Depth-First Search

- The algorithm uses a mechanism for setting and getting “labels” of vertices and edges

## Algorithm $DFS(G)$

**Input** graph  $G$

**Output** labeling of the edges of  $G$  as discovery edges and back edges

```
for all  $u \in G.vertices()$ 
     $setLabel(u, UNEXPLORED)$ 
for all  $e \in G.edges()$ 
     $setLabel(e, UNEXPLORED)$ 
for all  $v \in G.vertices()$ 
    if  $getLabel(v) = UNEXPLORED$ 
         $DFS(G, v)$ 
```

Page 18

# Analysis of DFS

- Setting/getting a vertex/edge label takes  $O(1)$  time
- Each vertex is labeled twice
  - once as **UNEXPLORED**
  - once as **VISITED**
- Each edge is labeled twice
  - once as **UNEXPLORED**
  - once as **DISCOVERY** or **BACK**
- Method `incidentEdges` is called once for each vertex
- DFS runs in  $O(n + m)$  time provided the graph is represented by the adjacency list structure
  - Recall that  $\sum_v \deg(v) = 2m$

Page 20

# Depth-First Search

- A DFS traversal of a graph  $G$ 
  - Visits all the vertices and edges of  $G$
  - Determines whether  $G$  is connected
  - Computes the connected components of  $G$
  - Computes a spanning tree of  $G$
  - Computing a cycle in  $G$ , or reporting that  $G$  has no cycles
  - Find and report a path between two given vertices

# Path Finding

```
Algorithm pathDFS( $G, v, z$ )
  setLabel( $v, VISITED$ )
   $S.push(v)$ 
  if  $v = z$ 
    return S.elements()
  for all  $e \in G.incidentEdges(v)$ 
    if getLabel( $e$ ) = UNEXPLORED
       $w \leftarrow opposite(v, e)$ 
      if getLabel( $w$ ) = UNEXPLORED
        setLabel( $e, DISCOVERY$ )
         $S.push(e)$ 
        pathDFS( $G, w, z$ )
         $S.pop()$           {  $e$  gets popped }
      else
        setLabel( $e, BACK$ )
     $S.pop()$           {  $v$  gets popped }
```

# Path Finding

- We can specialize the DFS algorithm to find a path between two given vertices  $u$  and  $z$  using the template method pattern
- We call  $DFS(G, u)$  with  $u$  as the start vertex
- We use a stack  $S$  to keep track of the path between the start vertex and the current vertex
- As soon as destination vertex  $z$  is encountered, we return the path as the contents of the stack

# Cycle Finding

- We can specialize the DFS algorithm to find a simple cycle using the template method pattern
- We use a stack  $S$  to keep track of the path between the start vertex and the current vertex
- As soon as a back edge ( $v, w$ ) is encountered, we return the cycle as the portion of the stack from the top to vertex  $w$

# Cycle Finding

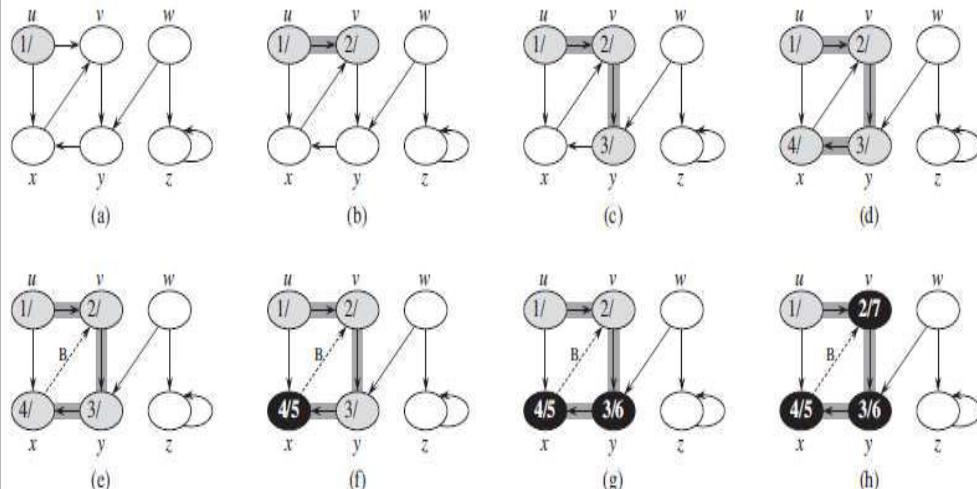
```

Algorithm cycleDFS(G, v, z)
  setLabel(v, VISITED)
  S.push(v)
  for all e ∈ G.incidentEdges(v)
    if getLabel(e) = UNEXPLORED
      w ← opposite(v,e)
      S.push(e)
      if getLabel(w) = UNEXPLORED
        setLabel(e, DISCOVERY)
        pathDFS(G, w, z)
        S.pop()
    else
      C ← new empty stack
      repeat
        o ← S.pop()
        C.push(o)
      until o = w
      return C.elements()
  S.pop()

```

Page 25

## DFS:R2-Chapter 22



Page 27

## DFS:R2-Chapter 22

DFS( $G$ )

```

1 for each vertex  $u \in G.V$ 
2    $u.\text{color} = \text{WHITE}$ 
3    $u.\pi = \text{NIL}$ 
4    $\text{time} = 0$ 
5 for each vertex  $u \in G.V$ 
6   if  $u.\text{color} == \text{WHITE}$ 
7     DFS-VISIT( $G, u$ )

```

DFS-VISIT( $G, u$ )

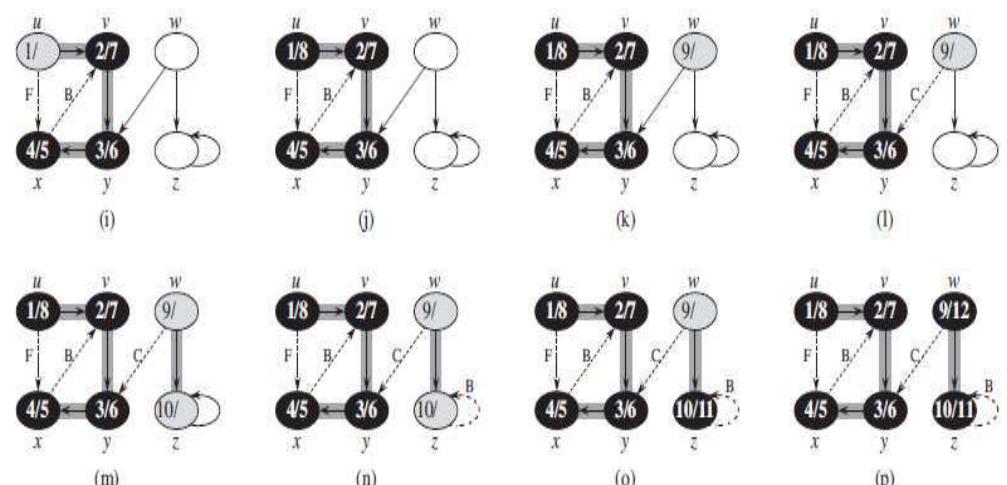
```

1  $\text{time} = \text{time} + 1$  // white vertex  $u$  has just been discovered
2  $u.d = \text{time}$ 
3  $u.\text{color} = \text{GRAY}$ 
4 for each  $v \in G.\text{Adj}[u]$  // explore edge  $(u, v)$ 
5   if  $v.\text{color} == \text{WHITE}$ 
6      $v.\pi = u$ 
7     DFS-VISIT( $G, v$ )
8  $u.\text{color} = \text{BLACK}$  // blacken  $u$ ; it is finished
9  $\text{time} = \text{time} + 1$ 
10  $u.f = \text{time}$ 

```

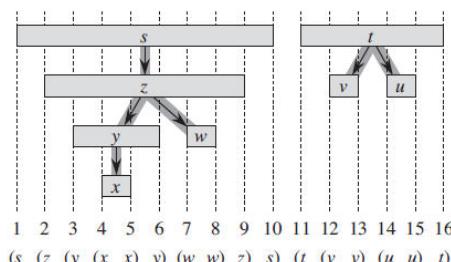
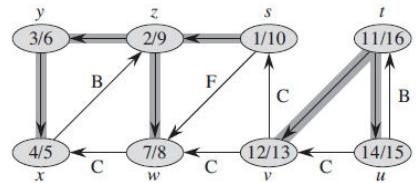
Page 26

## DFS:R2-Chapter 22



Page 28

## DFS:R2-Chapter 22 Paranthesis Structure



Page 29

## Connected components

How can DFS be used to check whether a graph is connected or not?

Can you implement it????  
What will be the time complexity?

Page 31

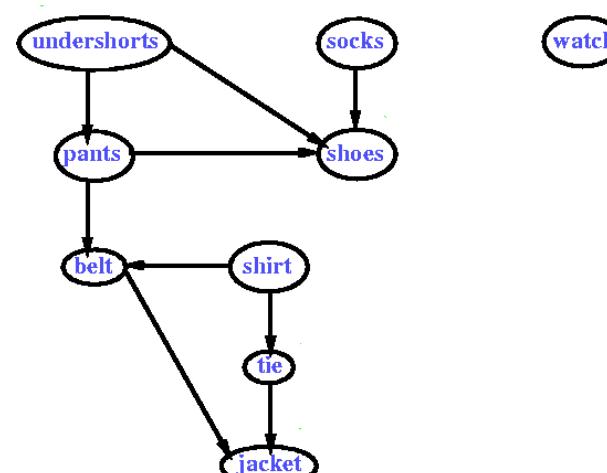
## Connected components

How can DFS be used to find the connected components of a graph!

Can you implement it????  
What will be the time complexity?

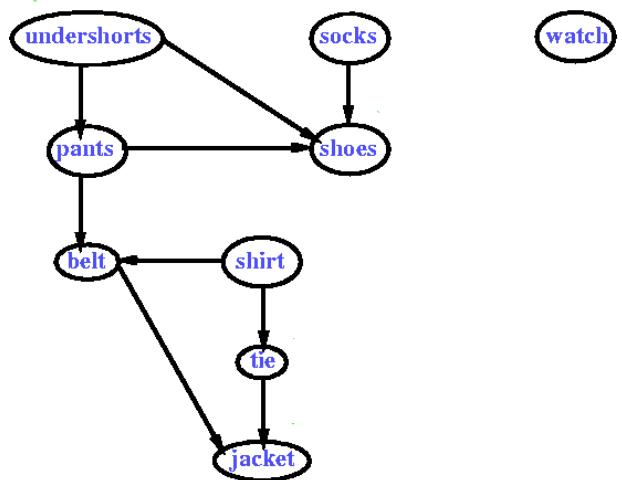
Page 30

## DFS for Toplogical Sort

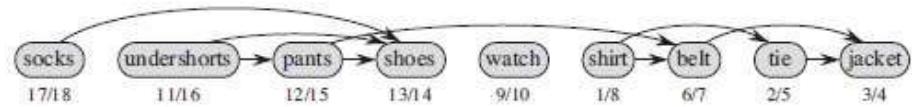


Page 32

## DFS for Toplogical Sort



## DFS for Toplogical Sort-Result



Page 33

## Breadth-first search

- Algorithm
- Example
- Properties
- Analysis
- Applications

Page 35

## Breadth-first search

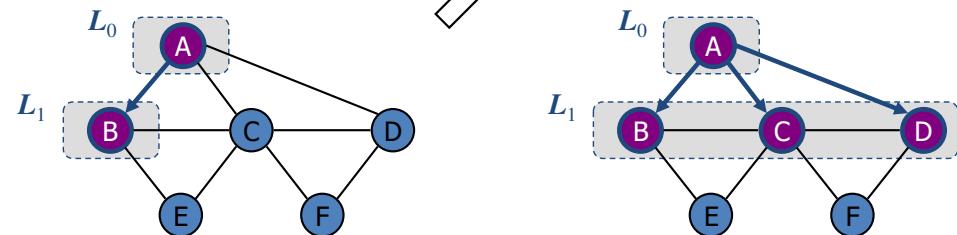
- Breadth-first search (BFS) is a general technique for traversing a graph
- A BFS traversal of a graph G
  - discovers all vertices at distance  $k$  from  $s$  before discovering any vertices at distance  $k + 1$ .
- For any vertex  $v$  reachable from vertex  $s$ , the simple path in the breadth-first tree from  $s$  to  $v$  corresponds to a “**shortest path**” from  $s$  to  $v$  in  $G$ , that is, a path containing the smallest number of edges.

Page 36

## Breadth-first search

Innovate achieve lead

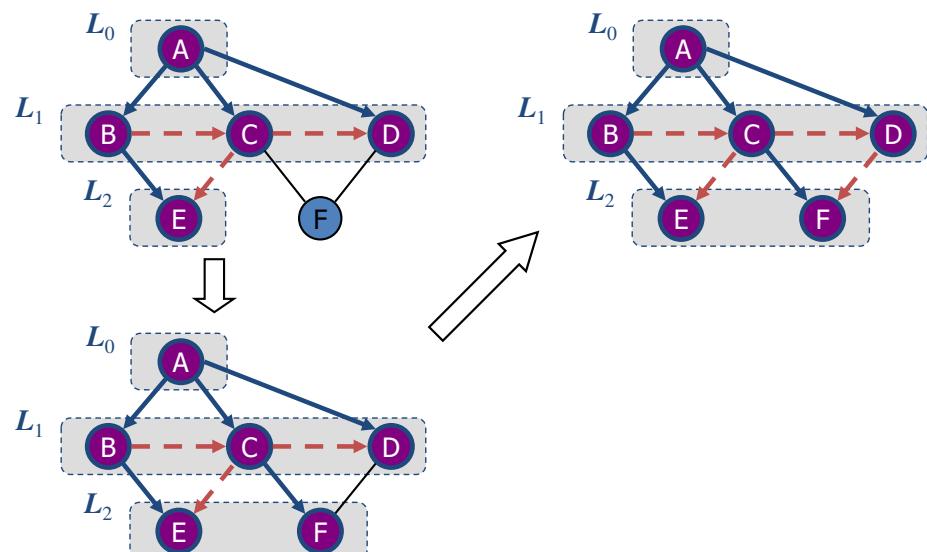
-  unexplored vertex
-  visited vertex
- unexplored edge
- discovery edge
- cross edge



Page 37

## Breadth-first search

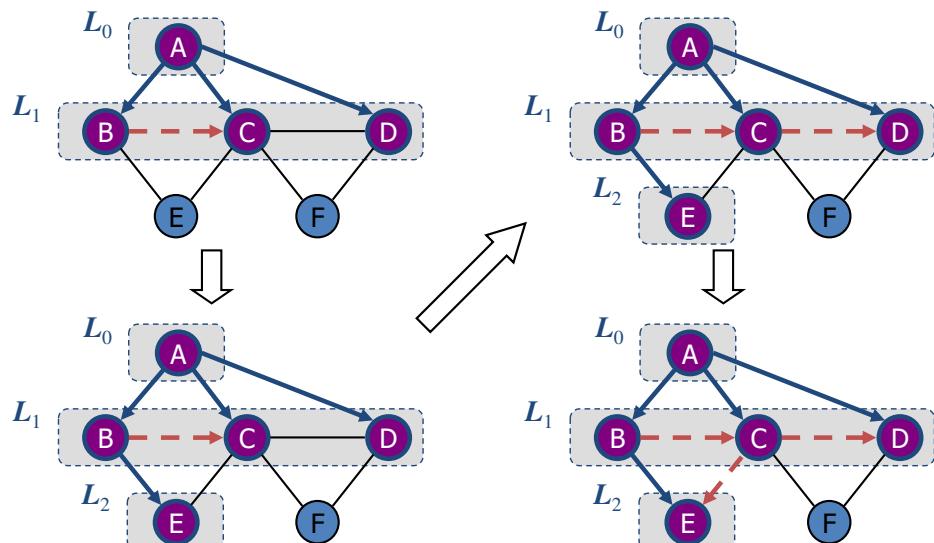
Innovate achieve lead



Page 39

## Breadth-first search

Innovate achieve lead



Page 38

## Breadth-first search

Innovate achieve lead

- The algorithm uses a mechanism for setting and getting “labels” of vertices and edges

**Algorithm  $BFS(G)$**

**Input** graph  $G$

**Output** labeling of the edges and partition of the vertices of  $G$

```

for all  $u \in G.vertices()$ 
    setLabel( $u$ , UNEXPLORED)
for all  $e \in G.edges()$ 
    setLabel( $e$ , UNEXPLORED)
for all  $v \in G.vertices()$ 
    if getLabel( $v$ ) = UNEXPLORED
         $BFS(G, v)$ 
    
```

Page 40

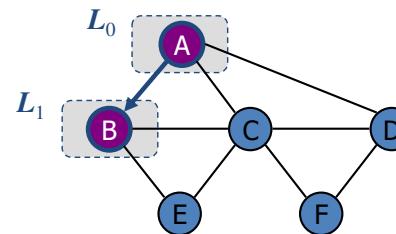
## Breadth-first search – Algorithm $BFS(G, s)$



```

 $L_0 \leftarrow$  new empty sequence
 $L_0.insertLast(s)$ 
setLabel( $s, VISITED$ )
 $i \leftarrow 0$ 
while  $\neg L_i.isEmpty()$ 
     $L_{i+1} \leftarrow$  new empty sequence
    for all  $v \in L_i.elements()$ 
        for all  $e \in G.incidentEdges(v)$ 
            if getLabel( $e$ ) = UNEXPLORED
                 $w \leftarrow opposite(v, e)$ 
                if getLabel( $w$ ) = UNEXPLORED
                    setLabel( $e, DISCOVERY$ )
                    setLabel( $w, VISITED$ )
                     $L_{i+1}.insertLast(w)$ 
                else
                    setLabel( $e, CROSS$ )
     $i \leftarrow i + 1$ 

```



Page 41

## Properties



### Notation

$G_s$ : connected component of  $s$

### Property 1

$BFS(G, s)$  visits all the vertices and edges of  $G_s$

### Property 2

The discovery edges of a connected component labeled by  $BFS(G, s)$  form a spanning tree  $T_s$  of  $G_s$

Page 43

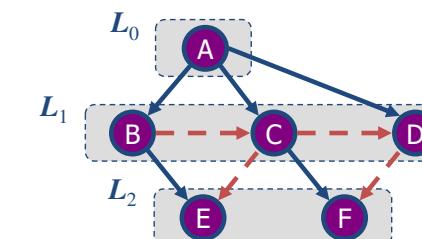
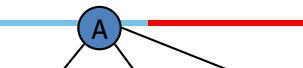
## Breadth-first search – Algorithm $BFS(G, s)$



- We use auxiliary space to label edges, mark visited vertices, and store containers associated with levels.
- That is, the containers  $L_0, L_1, L_2$ , and so on, store the nodes that are in level 0, level 1, level 2, and so on.

Page 42

## Properties



Page 44

# Analysis



- Setting/getting a vertex/edge label takes  $O(1)$  time
- Each vertex is labeled twice
  - once as UNEXPLORED
  - once as VISITED
- Each edge is labeled twice
  - once as UNEXPLORED
  - once as DISCOVERY or CROSS
- Each vertex is inserted once into a sequence  $L_i$
- Method incidentEdges is called once for each vertex
- BFS runs in  $O(n + m)$  time provided the graph is represented by the adjacency list structure
  - Recall that  $\sum_v \deg(v) = 2m$

Page 45

# Facebook as Graph



- Traversal: go to ‘Friends’ to display all your friends (like G.Neighbors)
- BFS: the tabs are a queue - open all friends profiles in new tabs, then close current tab and go to the next one
- DFS: the history is a stack - open the first hot friend profile in the same window; when hitting a dead end, use back button

Page 47

# Applications



- We can specialize the BFS traversal of a graph  $G$  to solve the following problems in  $O(n + m)$  time
  - Compute the connected components of  $G$
  - Compute a spanning forest of  $G$
  - Find a simple cycle in  $G$ , or report that  $G$  is a forest
  - Given two vertices of  $G$ , find a path in  $G$  between them with the minimum number of edges, or report that no such path exists

Page 46

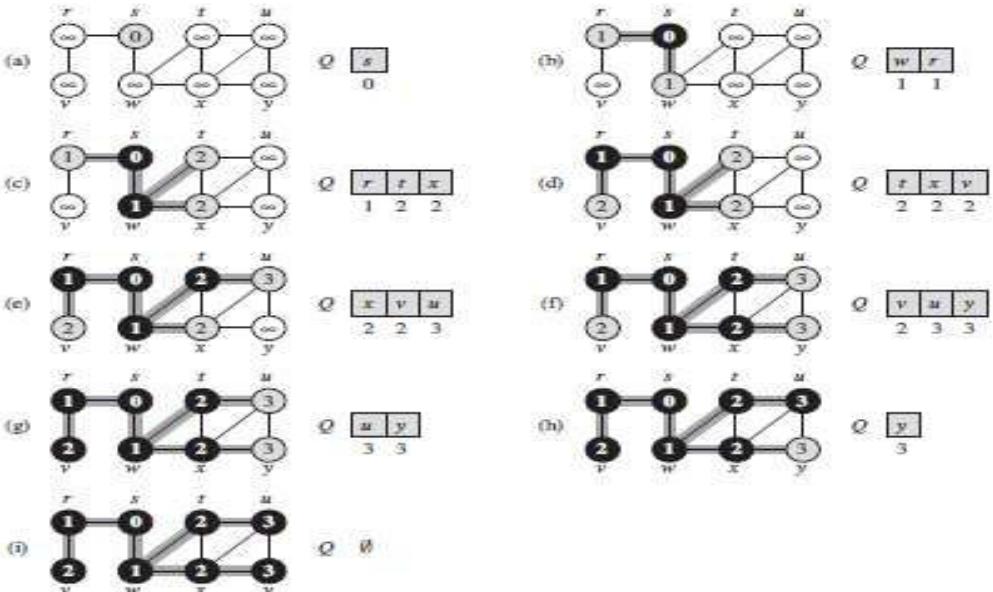
# BFS-CLRS



```
BFS( $G, s$ )
1 for each vertex  $u \in G.V - \{s\}$ 
2    $u.\text{color} = \text{WHITE}$ 
3    $u.d = \infty$ 
4    $u.\pi = \text{NIL}$ 
5    $s.\text{color} = \text{GRAY}$ 
6    $s.d = 0$ 
7    $s.\pi = \text{NIL}$ 
8    $Q = \emptyset$ 
9   ENQUEUE( $Q, s$ )
10  while  $Q \neq \emptyset$ 
11     $u = \text{DEQUEUE}(Q)$ 
12    for each  $v \in G.\text{Adj}[u]$ 
13      if  $v.\text{color} == \text{WHITE}$ 
14         $v.\text{color} = \text{GRAY}$ 
15         $v.d = u.d + 1$ 
16         $v.\pi = u$ 
17        ENQUEUE( $Q, v$ )
18     $u.\text{color} = \text{BLACK}$ 
```

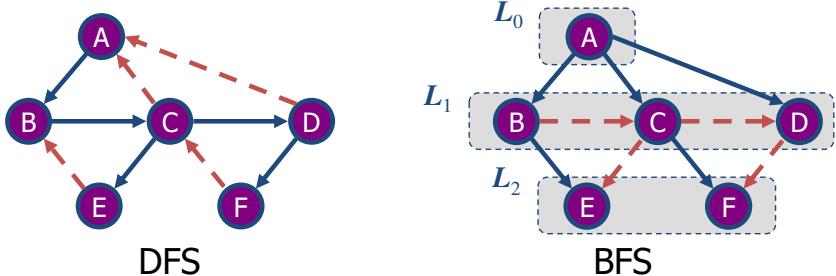
Page 48

# BFS-CLRS



Page 49

# DFS vs. BFS



Page 51

# DFS vs. BFS

| Application                                          | DFS | BFS |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----|-----|
| Spanning forest, connected components, paths, cycles | Y   | Y   |
| Shortest Paths                                       |     | Y   |

Page 50

# DFS vs. BFS

## Back edge ( $v, w$ )

- $w$  is an ancestor of  $v$  in the tree of discovery edges

## Cross edge ( $v, w$ )

- $w$  is in the same level as  $v$  or in the next level in the tree of discovery edges

Page 52



BITS Pilani  
Hyderabad Campus

# THANK YOU!



Innovate achieve lead

## Depth-First Search

### Algorithm $DFS(G)$

```
Input graph  $G$ 
Output labeling of the edges of  $G$  as discovery edges and back edges
for all  $u \in G.vertices()$ 
    setLabel( $u$ , UNEXPLORED)
for all  $e \in G.edges()$ 
    setLabel( $e$ , UNEXPLORED)
for all  $v \in G.vertices()$ 
    if getLabel( $v$ ) = UNEXPLORED
        DFS( $G, v$ )
```

### Algorithm $DFS(G, v)$

```
Input graph  $G$  and a start vertex  $v$  of  $G$ 
Output labeling of the edges of  $G$  in the connected component of  $v$  as discovery edges and back edges
setLabel( $v$ , VISITED)
for all  $e \in G.incidentEdges(v)$ 
    if getLabel( $e$ ) = UNEXPLORED
         $w \leftarrow opposite(v, e)$ 
        if getLabel( $w$ ) = UNEXPLORED
            setLabel( $e$ , DISCOVERY)
            DFS( $G, w$ )
        else
            setLabel( $e$ , BACK)
```



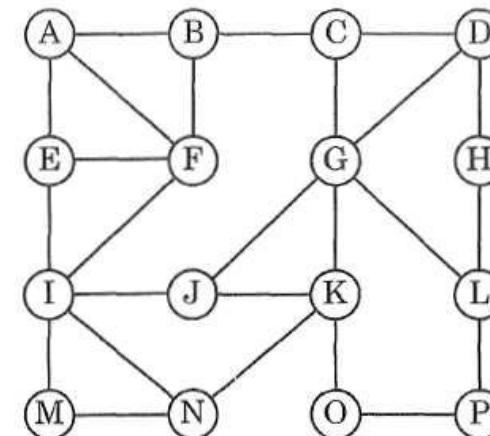
BITS Pilani  
Hyderabad Campus

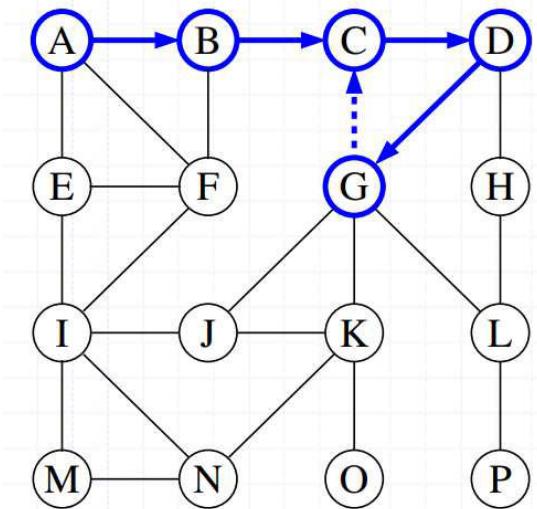
## Data Structures and Algorithms Design



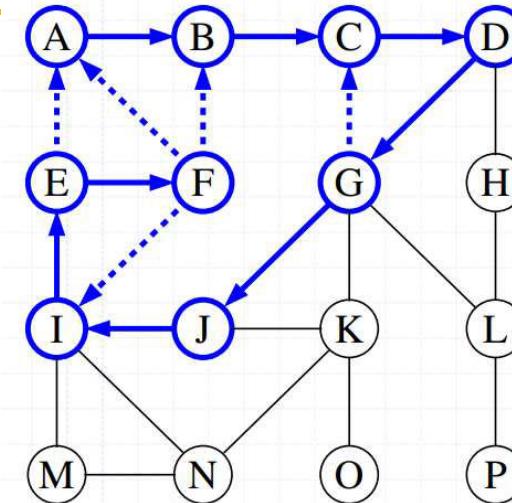
Febin.A.Vahab

## Example 1-Solved

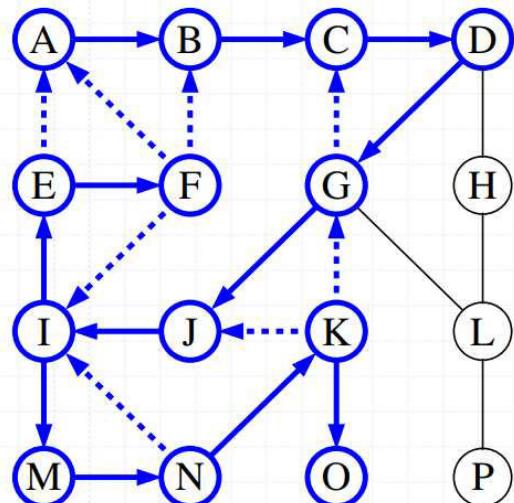




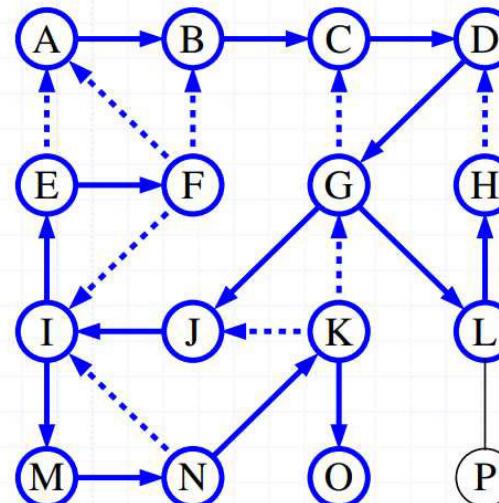
Page 4



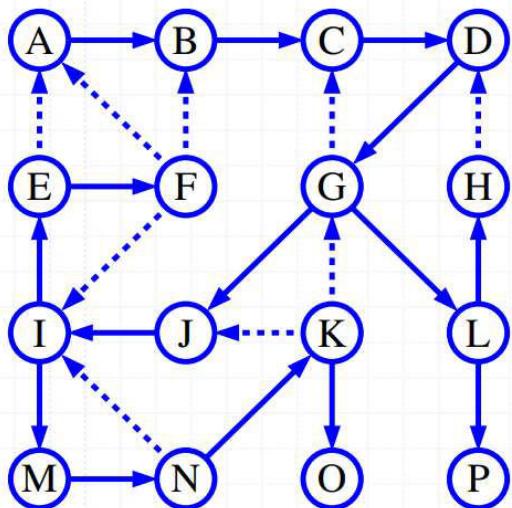
Page 5



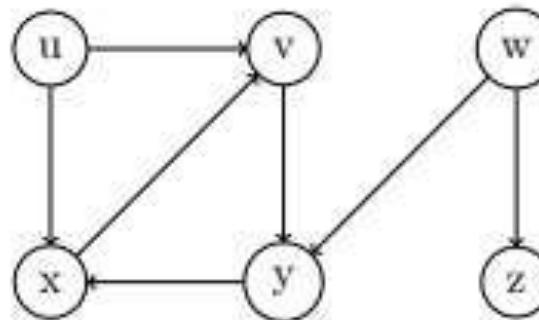
Page 6



Page 7

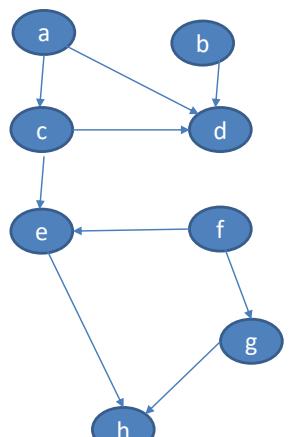


## Example 2-Directed graph-Find the DFS tree-Discuss in Canvas



Page 8

## Example 3-Directed graph-Find the connected Components-Discuss in Canvas



Page 10



**BITS Pilani**  
Hyderabad Campus

**THANK YOU!**



# Data Structures and Algorithms Design

BITS Pilani  
Hyderabad Campus



Febin.A.Vahab

## Graphs

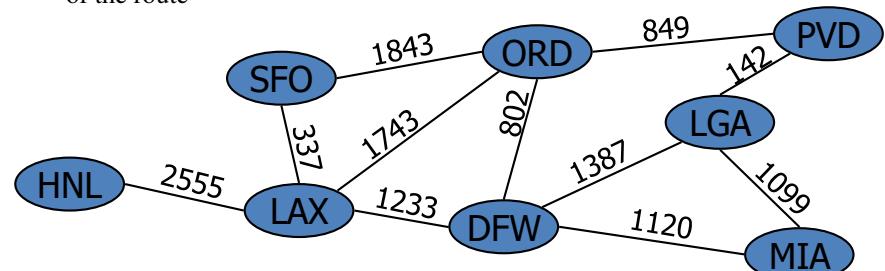
- Graphs
  - Definition
  - Applications
  - Terminology
  - Properties
  - ADT
- Data structures for graphs
  - Edge list structure
  - Adjacency list structure
  - Adjacency matrix structure

## CONTACT SESSION 6 -PLAN

| Contact Sessions(#) | List of Topic Title                                                                                                                                                 | Text/Ref Book/external resource |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 6                   | Graphs - Terms and Definitions, Properties, Representations (Edge List, Adjacency list, Adjacency Matrix), Graph Traversals (Depth First and Breadth First Search ) | T1: 6.1, 6.2, 6.3               |

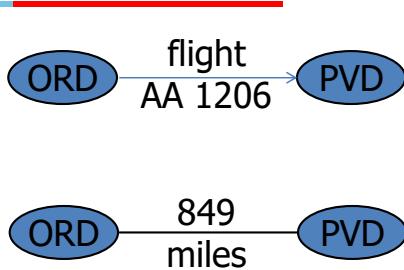
## Graphs

- A graph is a pair  $(V, E)$ , where
  - $V$  is a set of nodes, called **vertices**
  - $E$  is a collection of pairs of vertices, called **edges**
  - Vertices and edges are **positions** and store elements
- Example:
  - A vertex represents an airport and stores the three-letter airport code
  - An edge represents a flight route between two airports and stores the mileage of the route



# Graphs

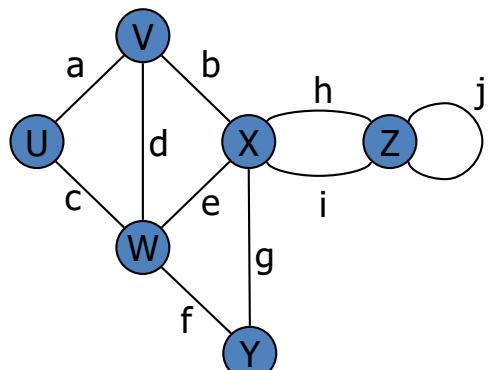
- Edge Types
- Directed edge
  - ordered pair of vertices  $(u,v)$
  - first vertex  $u$  is the origin
  - second vertex  $v$  is the destination
  - e.g., a flight
- Undirected edge
  - unordered pair of vertices  $(u,v)$
  - e.g., a flight route
- Directed graph
  - all the edges are directed
  - e.g., flight network
- Undirected graph
  - all the edges are undirected
  - e.g., route network



Page 5

# Graphs-Terminology

- End vertices (or endpoints) of an edge
  - U and V are the endpoints of a
- Edges incident on a vertex
  - a, d, and b are incident on V
- Adjacent vertices
  - U and V are adjacent
- Degree of a vertex
  - X has degree 5
- Parallel edges
  - h and i are parallel edges
- Self-loop
  - j is a self-loop



Page 7

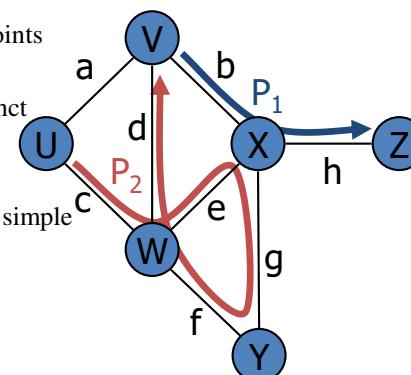
# Graphs-Applications

- Electronic circuits
  - Printed circuit board
- Transportation networks
  - Highway network
  - Flight network
- Computer networks
  - Local area network
  - Internet
- Databases
  - Entity-relationship diagram

Page 6

# Graphs-Terminology

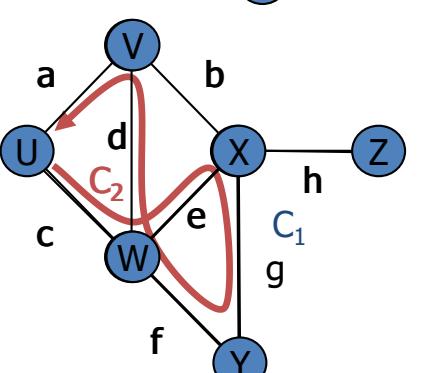
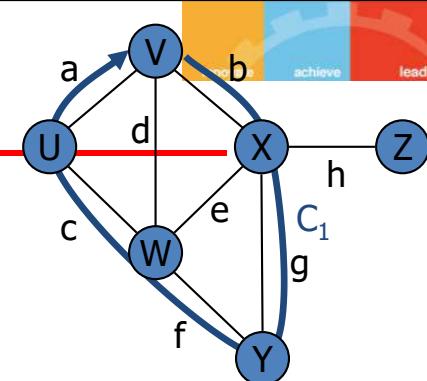
- Path
  - **sequence of alternating vertices and edges**
  - begins with a vertex
  - ends with a vertex
  - each edge is preceded and followed by its endpoints
- Simple path
  - path such that all its vertices and edges are distinct
- Examples
  - $P_1=(V,b,X,h,Z)$  is a simple path
  - $P_2=(U,c,W,e,X,g,Y,f,W,d,V)$  is a path that is not simple



Page 8

# Graphs-Terminology

- Cycle
  - circular sequence of alternating vertices and edges
  - each edge is preceded and followed by its endpoints
- Simple cycle
  - cycle such that all its vertices and edges are distinct
- Examples
  - $C_1 = (V, b, X, g, Y, f, W, c, U, a)$  is a simple cycle
  - $C_2 = (U, c, W, e, X, g, Y, f, W, d, V, a)$  is a cycle that is not simple



Page 9

# Graph-Example 2

- We can associate with an object-oriented program a graph whose vertices represent the classes defined in the program, and whose edges indicate inheritance between classes. There is an edge from a vertex v to a vertex u if the class for v extends the class for u.
- Is it a directed or undirected graph?
- Such edges are directed because the inheritance relation only goes in one direction (that is, it is asymmetric).

Page 11

# Graph-Example 1

We can visualize collaborations among the researchers of a certain discipline by constructing a graph whose vertices are associated with the researchers themselves, and whose edges connect pairs of vertices associated with researchers who have coauthored a paper or book.

Is it a directed or undirected graph?

Such edges are **undirected** because coauthorship is a symmetric relation; that is, if A has coauthored something with B, then B necessarily has coauthored something with A.

Page 10

# Graph-Example 3

- A city map can be modelled by a graph whose vertices are intersections or dead ends, and whose edges are stretches of streets without intersections.
- Directed or undirected?
- This graph has **both undirected edges**, which correspond to stretches of two-way streets, **and directed edges**, which correspond to stretches of one-way streets. Thus, a graph modelling a city map is a mixed graph

Page 12

## Graph-Example 4

- Physical examples of graphs are present in the electrical wiring and plumbing networks of a building.
- Such networks can be modelled as graphs, where each connector, fixture, or outlet is viewed as a vertex, and each uninterrupted stretch of wire or pipe is viewed as an edge.
- Such graphs are actually components of much larger graphs, namely the local power and water distribution networks.
- Depending on the specific aspects of these graphs that we are interested in, we may consider their edges as undirected or directed, for, in principle, water can flow in a pipe and current can flow in a wire in either direction.

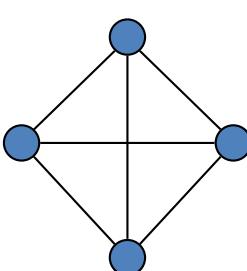
## Graphs-Properties

### Property 1

If  $G$  is a graph with  $m$  edges, then

$$\sum_v \deg(v) = 2m$$

Proof: each edge is counted twice



### Property 2

Let  $G$  be a simple graph with  $n$  vertices and  $m$  edges.

In an undirected graph with no self-loops and no multiple edges

$$m \leq n(n-1)/2 \text{ is } O(n^2)$$

Proof: each vertex has degree at most  $(n-1)$

### Property 3

If  $G$  is a directed graph with  $m$  edges, then

$$\sum_{v \in G} \text{indeg}(v) = \sum_{v \in G} \text{outdeg}(v) = m$$

## Graph-Example 5-Path and Cycle

Given a graph  $G$  representing a city map, we can model a couple driving from their home to dinner at a recommended restaurant as traversing a path through  $G$ .

If they know the way, and don't accidentally go through the same intersection twice, then they traverse a simple path in  $G$ .

Likewise, we can model the entire trip the couple takes, from their home to the restaurant and back, as a cycle.

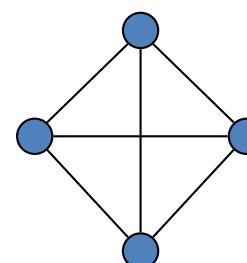
If they go home from the restaurant in a completely different way than how they went, not even going through the same intersection twice, then their entire round trip is a simple cycle.

Finally, if they travel along one-way streets for their entire trip, then we can model their night out as a directed cycle.

## Graphs-Properties

### Example

- $n = 4$
- $m = 6$
- $\deg(v) = 3$



- A graph is a positional container of elements that are stored at the graph's vertices and edges
- Vertices and edges
  - are positions
  - store elements
- **Accessor methods**
  - **incidentEdges(v)**:Return an iterator of the edges incident upon v
  - **endVertices(e)**:Return an array of size 2 storing the end vertices of e.
  - **degree(v)**:
  - **adjacentVertices(v)**:Return an iterator of the vertices adjacent to v.
  - **opposite(v, e)**:Return the endpoint of edge e distinct from v.
  - **areAdjacent(v, w)**:Return whether vertices v and w are adjacent

## Complexity

Page 19

## Update methods

- **insertVertex(o)**:Insert and return a new vertex storing the object o
- **insertEdge(v, w, o)**:Insert and return an undirected edge between vertices v and w, storing the object o.
- **insertDirectedEdge(v, w, o)**
- **removeVertex(v)**:Remove vertex v and all its incident edges.
- **removeEdge(e)**
- Generic methods
  - **numVertices()**
  - **numEdges()**
  - **vertices()**:Return an iterator of the vertices of G.
  - **edges()**

Page 21

## Methods Dealing with Directed Edges

- **directed Edges()**: Return an iterator of all directed edges.
- **undirected Edges()**: Return an iterator of all undirected edges.
- **destination( e)**: Return the destination of the directed edge e.
- **origin (e)**: Return the origin of the directed edge e.
- **isDirected(e)**: Return true if and only if the edge e is directed.

Page 20

Also supports

- **size()**
- **isEmpty ()**
- **elements ()**
- **positions()**
- **replaceElement(p, o )**
- **swapElements (p , q)**

where p and q denote positions, and o denotes an object (that is, an element)

Page 22

# Data Structure for Graphs



- Edge list structure
- Adjacency list structure
- Adjacency matrix

Page 23

# Edge List Structure

- Vertex object
  - **Element, o**
- Edge object
  - **element**
  - **origin vertex object**
  - **destination vertex object**
- Vertex sequence
  - sequence of vertex objects
- Edge sequence
  - sequence of edge objects

Page 24

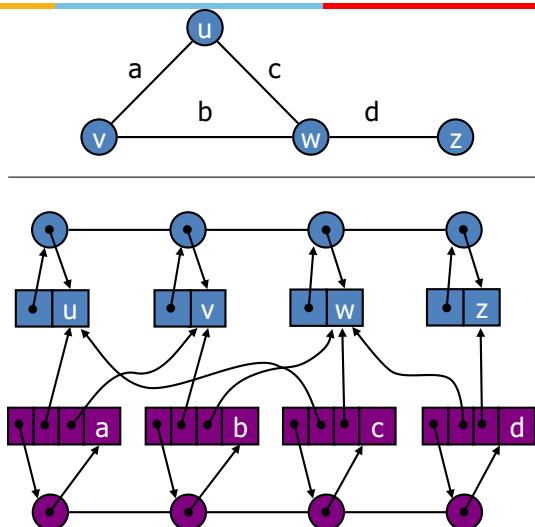
# Time Complexity

| Methods             | Edge List-Time Complexity |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| incidentEdges(v)    | O(m)                      |
| areAdjacent(v, w)   | O(m)                      |
| insertVertex(o)     | O(1)                      |
| insertEdge(v, w, o) | O(1)                      |
| removeVertex(v)     | O(m)                      |
| removeEdge(e)       | O(1)                      |

Page 25

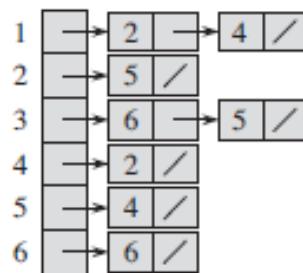
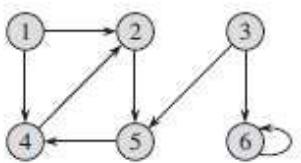
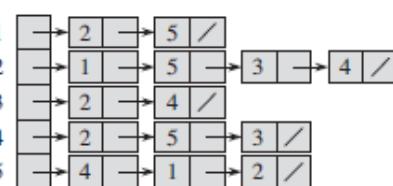
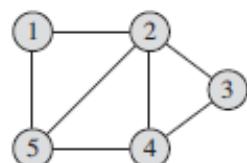
Page 26

## Edge List Structure



Page 27

## Adjacency List



## Adjacency List Structure

- Extends edge list structure
- Add extra information that supports direct access to the incident edges (and thus to the adjacent vertices) of each vertex
- For each vertex  $v$ , store a reference to a list of the vertices adjacent to it.

Page 28

## Time Complexity

|                         | Edge List | Adjacency List           |
|-------------------------|-----------|--------------------------|
| incidentEdges( $v$ )    | $m$       | $\deg(v)$                |
| areAdjacent( $v, w$ )   | $m$       | $\min(\deg(v), \deg(w))$ |
| insertVertex( $o$ )     | 1         | 1                        |
| insertEdge( $v, w, o$ ) | 1         | 1                        |
| removeVertex( $v$ )     | $m$       | $\deg(v)$                |
| removeEdge( $e$ )       | 1         | 1                        |

Page 30

## Adjacency Matrix Structure

- The **adjacency-matrix representation** of a graph  $G = (V, E)$ , the vertices are numbered  $1, 2, \dots, |V|$  in some arbitrary manner. Then the adjacency-matrix representation of a graph  $G$  consists of a  $|V| \times |V|$  matrix

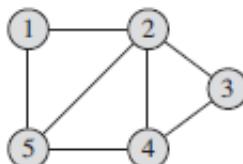
$A = (a_{ij})$  such that

$$a_{ij} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } (i, j) \in E, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

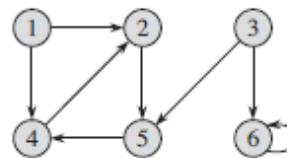
## Asymptotic Performance

|                     | Edge List | Adjacency List      | Adjacency Matrix |
|---------------------|-----------|---------------------|------------------|
| incidentEdges(v)    | m         | deg(v)              | n                |
| areAdjacent(v, w)   | m         | min(deg(v), deg(w)) | 1                |
| insertVertex(o)     | 1         | 1                   | $n^2$            |
| insertEdge(v, w, o) | 1         | 1                   | 1                |
| removeVertex(v)     | m         | deg(v)              | $n^2$            |
| removeEdge(e)       | 1         | 1                   | 1                |

## Adjacency Matrix



|   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |



|   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |



**BITS Pilani**

Hyderabad Campus

**THANK YOU!**



# Data Structures and Algorithms Design



Febin.A.Vahab

## Binary Search Tree

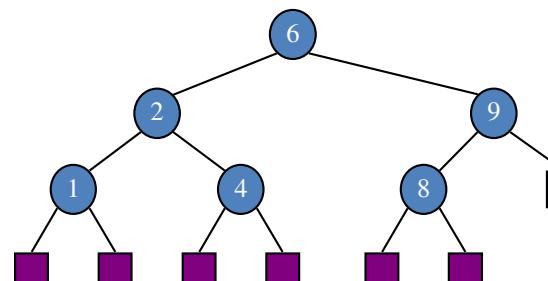
- A binary search tree is a binary tree storing keys (or key-element pairs) at its internal nodes and satisfying the following property
  - Let  $u$ ,  $v$ , and  $w$  be three nodes such that  $u$  is in the left subtree of  $v$  and  $w$  is in the right subtree of  $v$ . We have  $\text{key}(u) \leq \text{key}(v) \leq \text{key}(w)$

## SESSION 6 -PLAN

| Online Sessions(#) | List of Topic Title                                                                                                                                                        | Text/Ref Book/external resource |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 6                  | Binary Search Tree - Motivation with the task of Searching and Binary Search Algorithm, Properties of BST, Searching an element in BST, Insertion and Removal of Elements, | T1: 3.1                         |

## Binary Search Tree

- An inorder traversal of a binary search trees visits the keys in increasing order



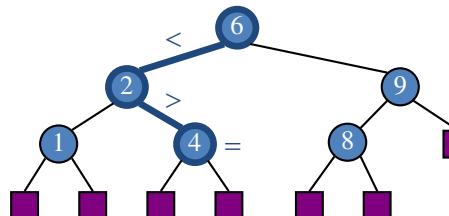
## Binary Search Tree- Search

- To search for a key  $k$ , we trace a downward path starting at the root
- The next node visited depends on the outcome of the comparison of  $k$  with the key of the current node
- If we reach a leaf, the key is not found and we return NO SUCH KEY
- Example: `findElement(4)`
- External nodes do not store items

## Binary Search Tree- Search

```
Algorithm findElement(k, v)
• Input: A search key k, and a node v of a binary search tree T
• Output: A node w of the subtree T(v) of T rooted at v, such that either w is an
internal node storing key k or w is the external node where an item with key k
would belong if it existed
if T.isExternal(v)
    return NO SUCH KEY
if k < key(v)
    return findElement(k, T.leftChild(v))
else if k = key(v)
    return element(v)
else { k > key(v) }
    return findElement(k, T.rightChild(v))
```

## Binary Search Tree- Search



## Analysis of Binary Tree Searching

- The binary tree search algorithm executes a constant number of primitive operations for each node it traverses in the tree.
- Each new step in the traversal is made on a child of the previous node.
- That is, the binary tree search algorithm is performed on the nodes of a path of T that starts from the root and goes down one level at a time.
- Thus, the number of such nodes is bounded by  $h + 1$ , where  $h$  is the height of T.

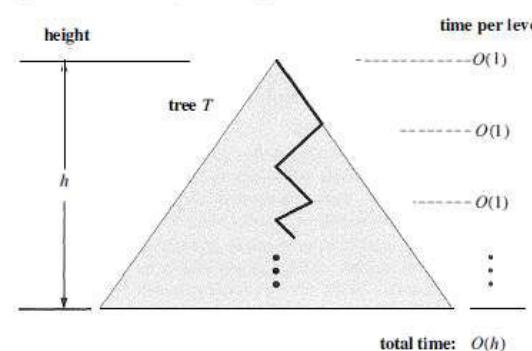
# Analysis of Binary Tree Searching

- In other words, since we spend  $O(1)$  time per node encountered in the search, method `findElement` (or any other standard search operation) runs in  $O(h)$  time, where  $h$  is the height of the binary search tree  $T$  used to implement the dictionary  $D$ .
- ie. The running time of searching in a binary search tree  $T$  is proportional to the height of  $T$ . The height of a tree with  $n$  nodes can be  $O(\log n)$

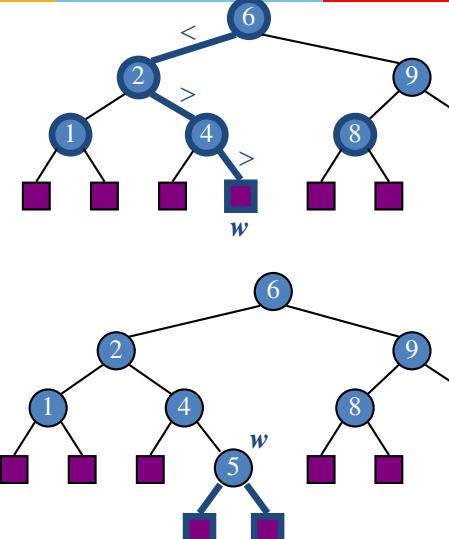
## Binary Search Tree- Insertion

- To perform operation `insertItem(k, o)`, we search for key  $k$
- Assume  $k$  is not already in the tree, and let  $w$  be the leaf reached by the search
- We insert  $k$  at node  $w$  and expand  $w$  into an internal node
- Example: insert 5

# Analysis of Binary Tree Searching



## Binary Search Tree- Insertion

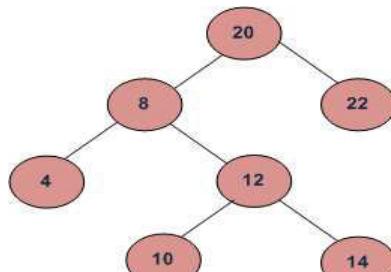


## In-order Successor and Predecessor

- In a Binary Search Tree, the successor of a given key is the smallest number which is larger than the key.
- In the same way, a predecessor is the largest number which is smaller than the key.
- If X has two children then its in-order predecessor is the maximum value in its left subtree and its in-order successor the minimum value in its right subtree.

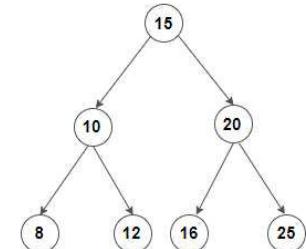
## Predecessor

- Inorder predecessor of a node is a node with maximum value in its left subtree. i.e left subtree's right most child.
- If left subtree doesn't exists, then predecessor is one of the ancestors. Travel up using the parent pointer until you see a node which is right child of it's parent. The parent of such a node is the predecessor.



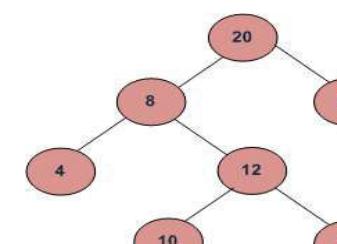
## Predecessor

- Inorder predecessor of 8 doesn't exist
- Inorder predecessor of 20 is 16
- Inorder predecessor of 12 is 10



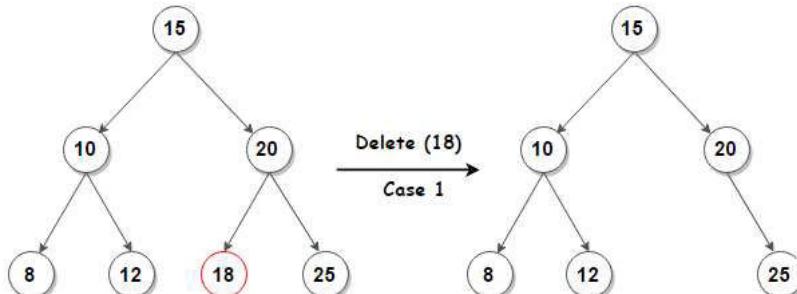
## Successor

- If right subtree of node is not NULL, then succ lies in right subtree. Go to right subtree and return the node with minimum key value in right subtree. i.e **right subtree's left most child**.
- If right subtree of node is NULL, then succ is one of the ancestors. Travel up using the parent pointer until you see a node which is left child of it's parent. The parent of such a node is the succ.



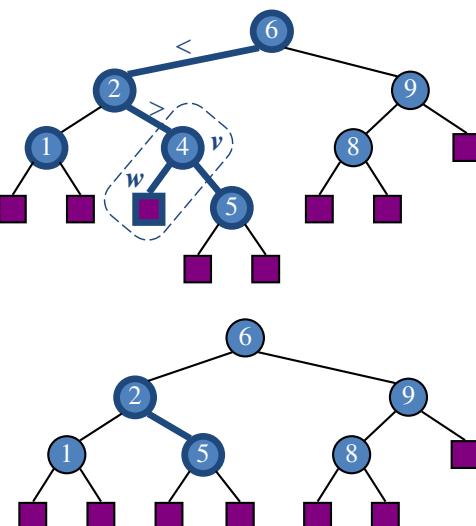
## Binary Search Tree-Deletion

- Deleting a node with no Children



Page 17

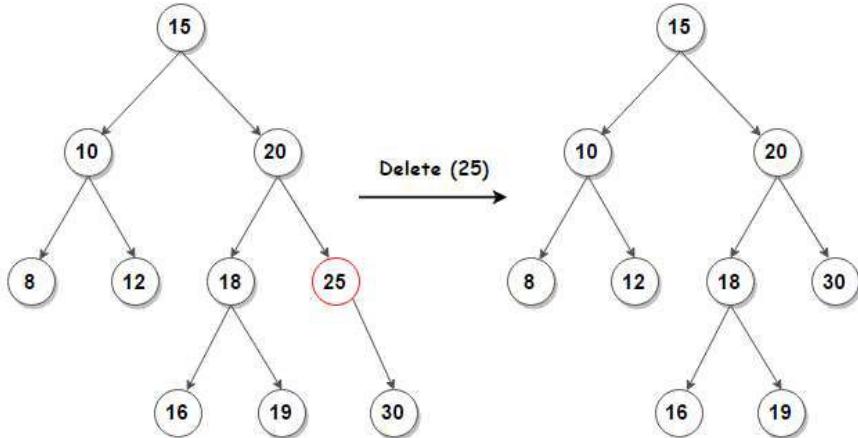
## Binary Search Tree-Deletion



Page 19

## Binary Search Tree-Deletion

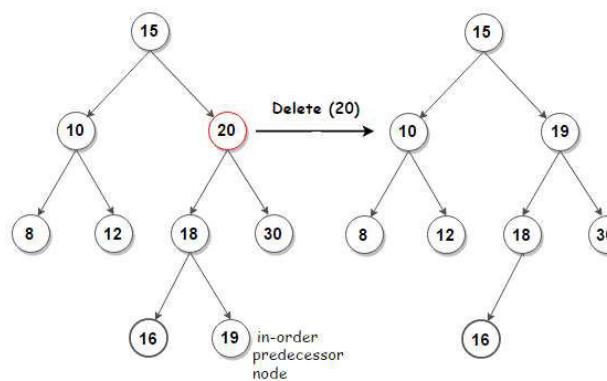
- Deleting a node with 1 child:** Remove the node and replace it with its child



Page 18

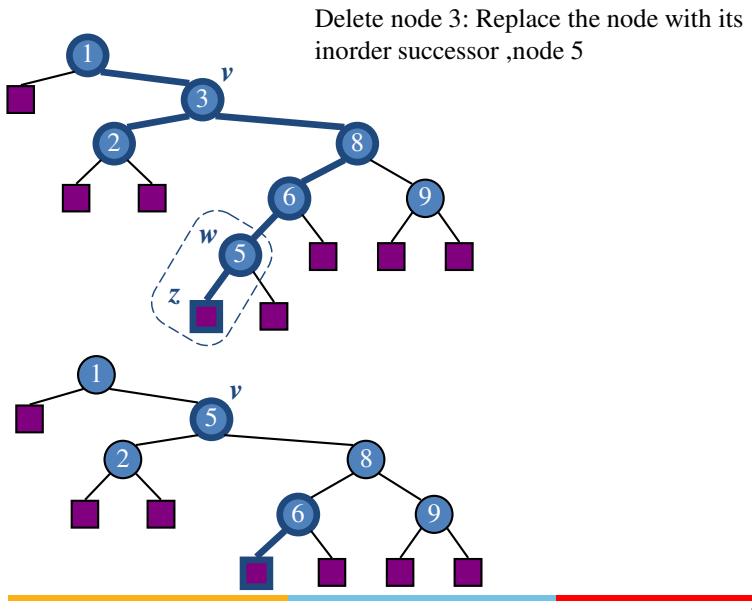
## Binary Search Tree-Deletion

- Deleting a node with 2 children: Replace the node with its inorder successor(Predcessor)



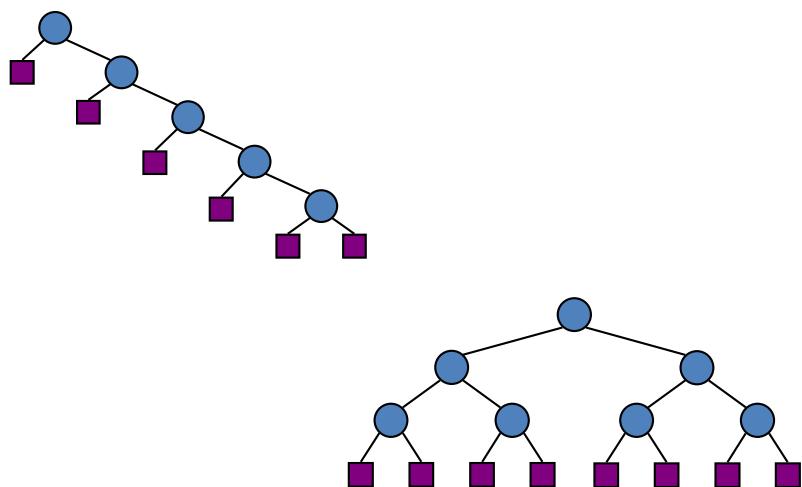
Page 20

## Binary Search Tree-Deletion



Page 21

## Binary Search Tree



Page 23

## Performance

- Consider a BST with  $n$  items and height  $h$
- The space used is  $O(n)$
- Methods `findElement`, `insertItem` and `removeElement` take  $O(h)$  time
- The height  $h$  is  $O(n)$  in the worst case and  $O(\log n)$  in the best case

Page 22

## Balanced tree

- The worst-case performance, a BST achieves for various operations is linear time, which is no better than the performance of sequence-based dictionary implementations (such as log files and lookup tables).
- A simple way of correcting this problem is balanced binary search tree.

Page 24

## Balanced tree

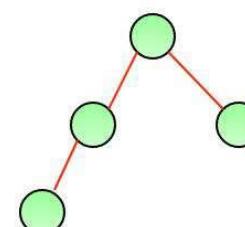
- A balanced tree is a tree where every leaf is “not more than a certain distance” away from the root than any other leaf.
- Add a rule to the binary search tree definition that will maintain a logarithmic height for the tree
- Height-balance property

## Leftsize

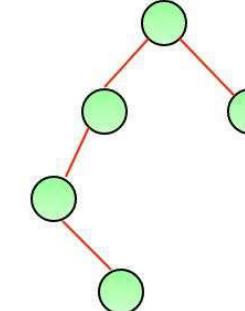
- Binary search tree.
- Each node has an additional field.
- leftSize = number of nodes in its left subtree

## Balanced tree

- Height-Balance Property:  
*For every internal node  $v$  of  $T$ , the heights of the children of  $v$  can differ by at most 1 .*

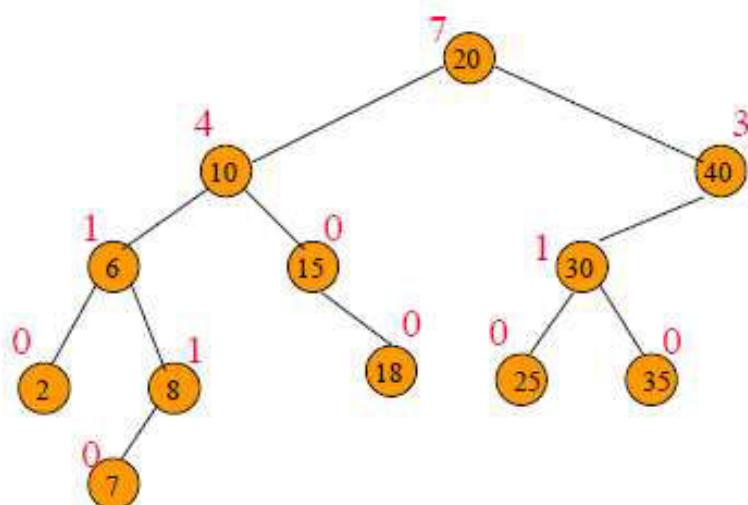


A height balanced tree



Not a height balanced tree

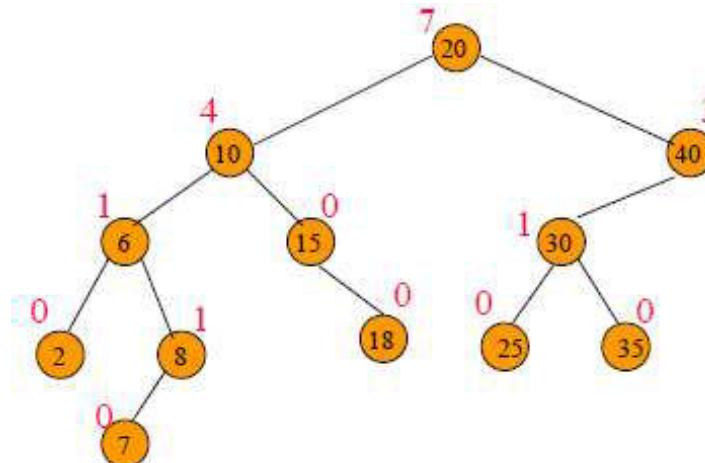
## Leftsize



## Rank

- Rank of an element is its position in inorder traversal (inorder = ascending key order).
- [2,6,7,8,10,15,18,20,25,30,35,40]
- rank(2) = 0
- rank(15) = 5
- rank(20) = 7
- leftSize(x) = rank(x) with respect to elements in subtree rooted at x**

## Rank



sorted list = [2,6,7,8,10,15,18,20,25,30,35,40]

## Find k-th smallest element in BST

- The idea is to maintain rank of each node.
- We can keep track of elements in a subtree of any node while building the tree.
- Since we need K-th smallest element, we can maintain number of elements of left subtree in every node.

## Find k-th smallest element in BST

- Assume that the root is having N nodes in its left subtree.
  - If  $K = N + 1$ , root is K-th node.
  - If  $K > N$ , we continue our search in the right subtree for the  $(K - (N + 1))$ -th smallest element.
  - Else we will continue our search (recursion) for the Kth smallest element in the left subtree of root.
  - Note that we need the count of elements in left subtree only.
- Time complexity:  $O(h)$  where h is height of tree.

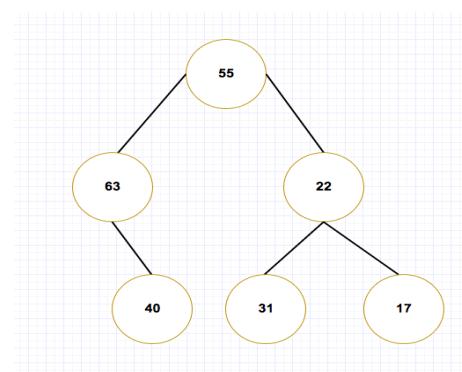
## Find k-th smallest element in BST

1. start
2. if  $K = \text{root.leftElements} + 1$ 
  1. root node is the K th node.
  2. goto stop
3. else if  $K > \text{root.leftElements}$ 
  1.  $K = K - (\text{root.leftElements} + 1)$
  2.  $\text{root} = \text{root.right}$
  3. goto start
4. else
  1.  $\text{root} = \text{root.left}$
  2. goto start
5. stop

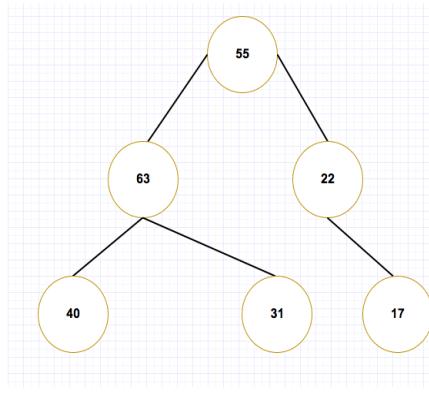
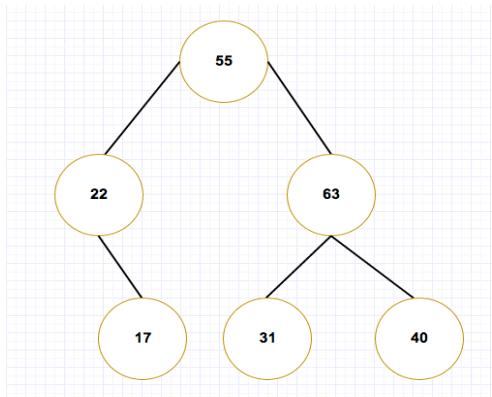
Page 33

Qn:

- Suppose the keys 55,63,31,17,22,40 are inserted into a binary tree in that order. Which of the following is the BST that is formed?



Page 34

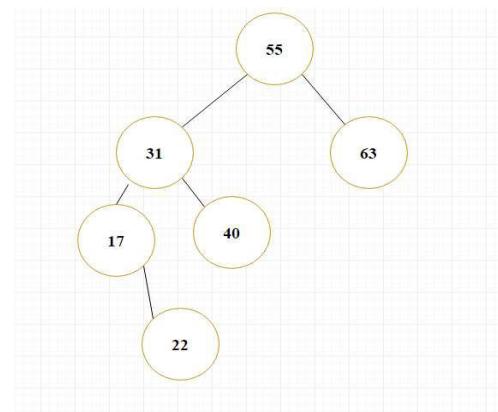
**Qn :**

Page 37

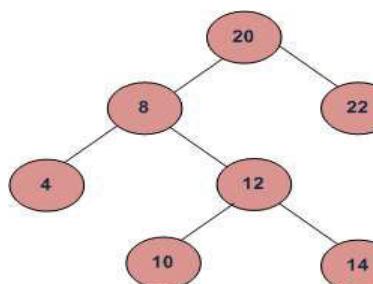
**Qn:LCA**

- Given a binary search tree and two values say n1 and n2, write a program to find the least common ancestor. You may assume that both the values exist in the tree and  $n1 < n2$ .

Page 39

**Qn :**

Page 38

**Qn:LCA-ANSWER**

LCA of 10 and 14 is 12

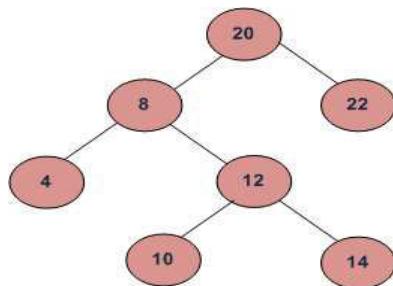
LCA of 14 and 8 is 8

LCA of 10 and 22 is 20

Page 40

## Qn:LCA-ANSWER

- Let T be a rooted tree. The lowest common ancestor between two nodes n<sub>1</sub> and n<sub>2</sub> is defined as the lowest node in T that has both n<sub>1</sub> and n<sub>2</sub> as descendants (where we allow a node to be a descendant of itself).
- The LCA of n<sub>1</sub> and n<sub>2</sub> in T is the shared ancestor of n<sub>1</sub> and n<sub>2</sub> that is located farthest from the root.



Page 41

## Qn:LCA-ANSWER

- Time complexity of above solution is O(h) where h is height of tree.

Page 43

## Qn:LCA-ANSWER

- We can solve this problem using BST properties. We can **recursively traverse** the BST from root.
- The main idea of the solution is, while traversing from top to bottom, the first node n we encounter with value between n<sub>1</sub> and n<sub>2</sub>, i.e., n<sub>1</sub> < n < n<sub>2</sub> or same as one of the n<sub>1</sub> or n<sub>2</sub>, is LCA of n<sub>1</sub> and n<sub>2</sub> (assuming that n<sub>1</sub> < n<sub>2</sub>).
- So just recursively traverse the BST, if node's value is greater than both n<sub>1</sub> and n<sub>2</sub> then our LCA lies in left side of the node, if it's is smaller than both n<sub>1</sub> and n<sub>2</sub>, then LCA lies on right side. Otherwise root is LCA (assuming that both n<sub>1</sub> and n<sub>2</sub> are present in BST)

Page 42



**BITS Pilani**  
Hyderabad Campus

**THANK YOU!!!**



# Data Structures and Algorithms Design

**BITS** Pilani  
Hyderabad Campus



Febin.A.Vahab

## Depth-First Search

- Depth-first search (DFS) is a general technique for traversing a graph
- Search “deeper” in the graph whenever possible
- Explores edges out of the most recently discovered vertex that still has unexplored edges leaving it.
- Once all of v’s edges have been explored, the search “backtracks” to explore edges leaving the vertex from which v was discovered.
- This process continues until we have discovered all the vertices that are reachable from the original source vertex.
- If any undiscovered vertices remain, then depth-first search selects one of them as a new source, and it repeats the search from that source.
- The algorithm repeats this entire process until it has discovered every vertex

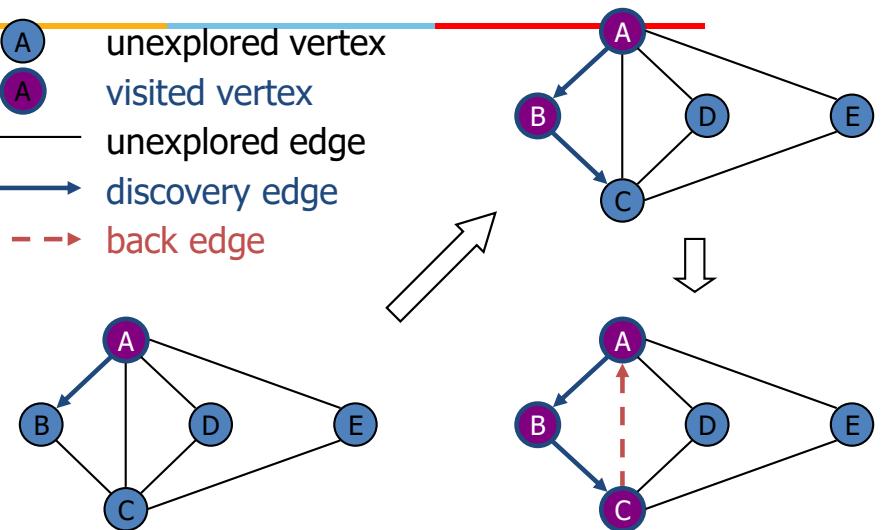
## Depth-First Search

- Definitions
  - Subgraph
  - Connectivity
  - Spanning trees and forests
- Depth-first search
  - Algorithm
  - Example
  - Properties
  - Analysis
- Applications of DFS
  - Cycle finding
  - Path finding

Page 2

## Depth-First Search

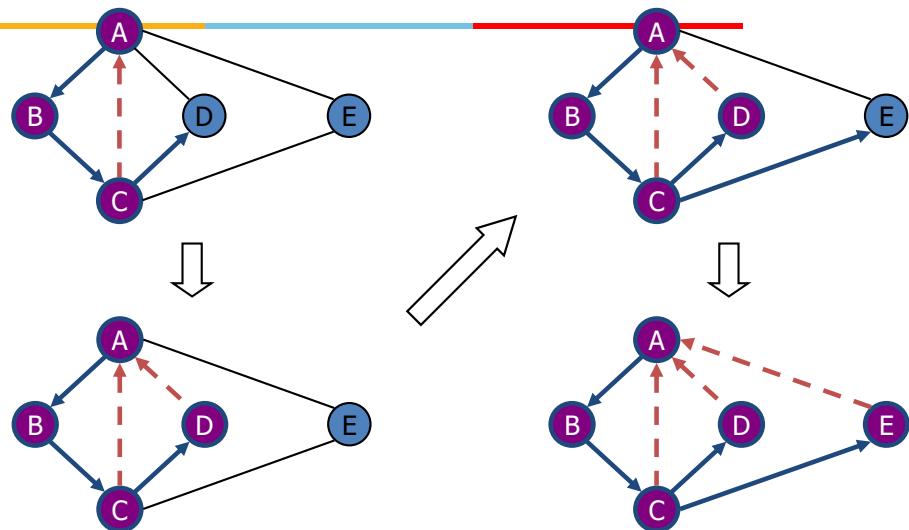
- A unexplored vertex
- A visited vertex
- — unexplored edge
- → discovery edge
- - - - back edge



Page 3

Page 4

## Depth-First Search



## Depth-First Search

- The DFS algorithm is similar to a classic strategy for exploring a maze
  - We mark each intersection, corner and dead end (vertex) visited
  - We mark each corridor (edge) traversed
  - We keep track of the path back to the entrance (start vertex) by means of a rope (recursion stack)

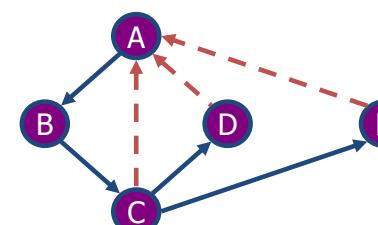
## Depth-First Search-Properties

### Property 1

$DFS(G, v)$  visits all the vertices and edges in the connected component of  $v$

### Property 2

The discovery edges labeled by  $DFS(G, v)$  form a spanning tree of the connected component of  $v$



# Depth-First Search

- The algorithm uses a mechanism for setting and getting “labels” of vertices and edges

Algorithm  $DFS(G)$

```
Input graph G
Output labeling of the edges of G as discovery edges and back edges
for all  $u \in G.vertices()$ 
    setLabel(u, UNEXPLORED)
for all  $e \in G.edges()$ 
    setLabel(e, UNEXPLORED)
for all  $v \in G.vertices()$ 
    if getLabel(v) = UNEXPLORED
        DFS(G, v)
```

## Analysis of DFS

- Setting/getting a vertex/edge label takes  $O(1)$  time
- Each vertex is labeled twice
  - once as UNEXPLORED
  - once as VISITED
- Each edge is labeled twice
  - once as UNEXPLORED
  - once as DISCOVERY or BACK
- Method incidentEdges is called once for each vertex
- DFS runs in  $O(n + m)$  time provided the graph is represented by the adjacency list structure
  - Recall that  $\sum_v \deg(v) = 2m$

# Depth-First Search

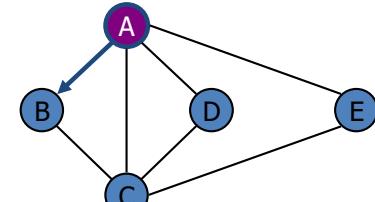
Algorithm  $DFS(G, v)$

**Input** graph  $G$  and a start vertex  $v$  of  $G$

**Output** labeling of the edges of  $G$  in the connected component of  $v$  as discovery edges and back edges

$setLabel(v, VISITED)$

```
for all  $e \in G.incidentEdges(v)$ 
    if getLabel(e) = UNEXPLORED
         $w \leftarrow G.opposite(v, e)$ 
        if getLabel(w) = UNEXPLORED
            setLabel(e, DISCOVERY)
            DFS(G, w)
        else
            setLabel(e, BACK)
```



## Depth-First Search

- A DFS traversal of a graph  $G$ 
  - Visits all the vertices and edges of  $G$
  - Determines whether  $G$  is connected
  - Computes the connected components of  $G$
  - Computes a spanning tree of  $G$
  - Computing a cycle in  $G$ , or reporting that  $G$  has no cycles
  - Find and report a path between two given vertices

## Path Finding

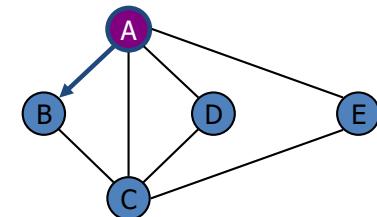
- We can specialize the DFS algorithm to find a path between two given vertices  $u$  and  $z$  using the template method pattern
- We call  $DFS(G, u)$  with  $u$  as the start vertex
- We use a stack  $S$  to keep track of the path between the start vertex and the current vertex
- As soon as destination vertex  $z$  is encountered, we return the path as the contents of the stack

## Cycle Finding

- We can specialize the DFS algorithm to find a simple cycle using the template method pattern
- We use a stack  $S$  to keep track of the path between the start vertex and the current vertex
- As soon as a back edge  $(v, w)$  is encountered, we return the cycle as the portion of the stack from the top to vertex  $w$

## Path Finding

```
Algorithm pathDFS(G, v, z)
    setLabel(v, VISITED)
    S.push(v)
    if v = z
        return S.elements()
    for all e ∈ G.incidentEdges(v)
        if getLabel(e) = UNEXPLORED
            w ← opposite(v, e)
            if getLabel(w) = UNEXPLORED
                setLabel(e, DISCOVERY)
                S.push(e)
                pathDFS(G, w, z)
                S.pop()                                { e gets popped }
            else
                setLabel(e, BACK)
                S.pop()                                { v gets popped }
```



{  $e$  gets popped }  
{  $v$  gets popped }

## Cycle Finding

```
Algorithm cycleDFS(G, v, z)
    setLabel(v, VISITED)
    S.push(v)
    for all e ∈ G.incidentEdges(v)
        if getLabel(e) = UNEXPLORED
            w ← opposite(v, e)
            S.push(e)
            if getLabel(w) = UNEXPLORED
                setLabel(e, DISCOVERY)
                pathDFS(G, w, z)
                S.pop()
            else
                C ← new empty stack
                repeat
                    o ← S.pop()
                    C.push(o)
                until o = w
                return C.elements()
            S.pop()
```

## DFS:R2-Chapter 22

$\text{DFS}(G)$

```

1 for each vertex  $u \in G.V$ 
2    $u.\text{color} = \text{WHITE}$ 
3    $u.\pi = \text{NIL}$ 
4    $\text{time} = 0$ 
5 for each vertex  $u \in G.V$ 
6   if  $u.\text{color} == \text{WHITE}$ 
7      $\text{DFS-VISIT}(G, u)$ 

```

$\text{DFS-VISIT}(G, u)$

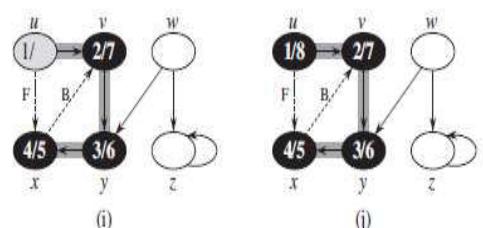
```

1  $\text{time} = \text{time} + 1$  // white vertex  $u$  has just been discovered
2  $u.d = \text{time}$ 
3  $u.\text{color} = \text{GRAY}$ 
4 for each  $v \in G.\text{Adj}[u]$  // explore edge  $(u, v)$ 
5   if  $v.\text{color} == \text{WHITE}$ 
6      $v.\pi = u$ 
7      $\text{DFS-VISIT}(G, v)$ 
8    $u.\text{color} = \text{BLACK}$  // blacken  $u$ ; it is finished
9    $\text{time} = \text{time} + 1$ 
10   $u.f = \text{time}$ 

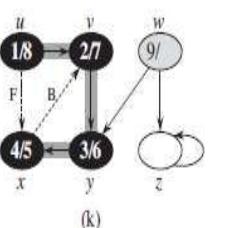
```

Page 17

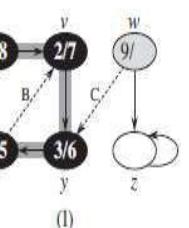
## DFS:R2-Chapter 22



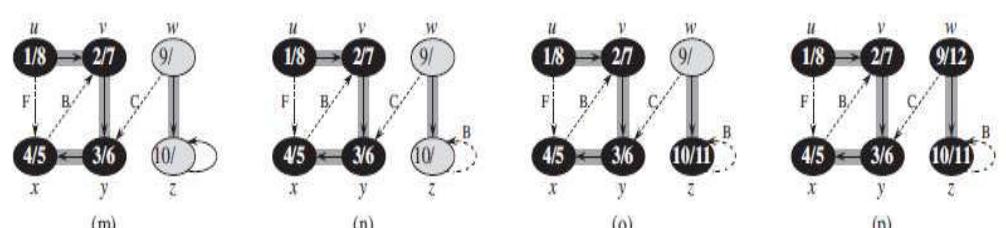
(i)



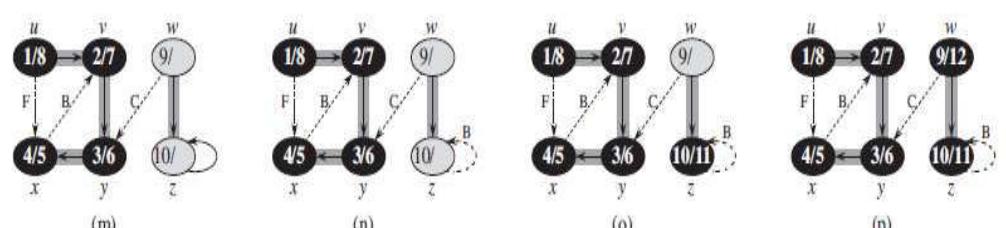
(j)



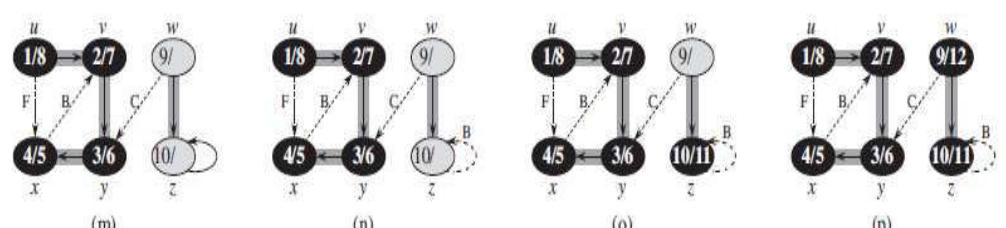
(k)



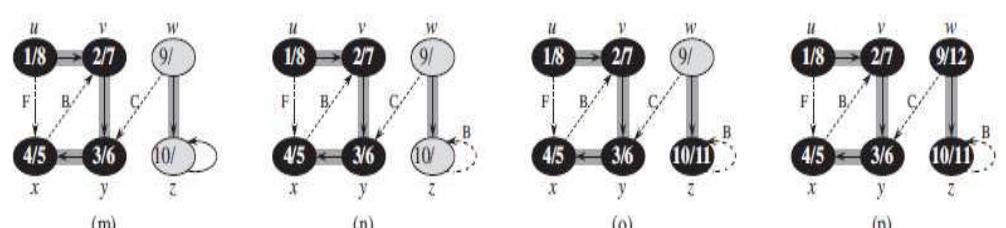
(l)



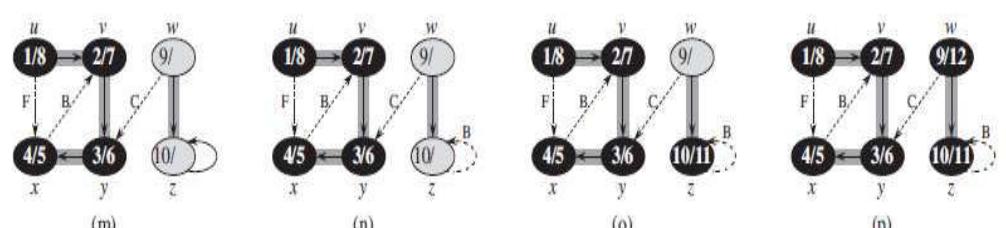
(m)



(n)



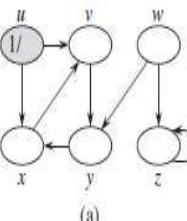
(o)



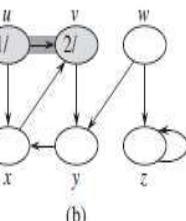
(p)

Page 19

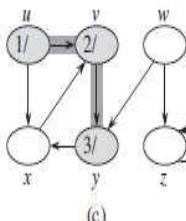
## DFS:R2-Chapter 22



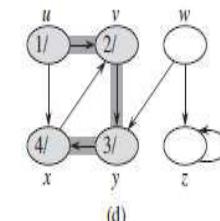
(a)



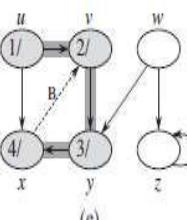
(b)



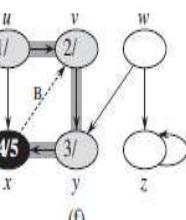
(c)



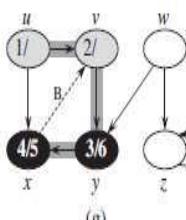
(d)



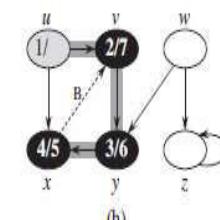
(e)



(f)



(g)



(h)

Page 18

## Connected components

How can DFS be used to find the connected components of a graph!

Can you implement it????  
What will be the time complexity?

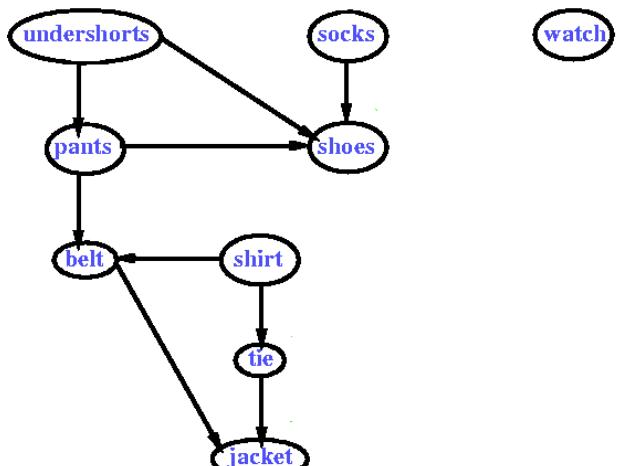
Page 20

## Connected components

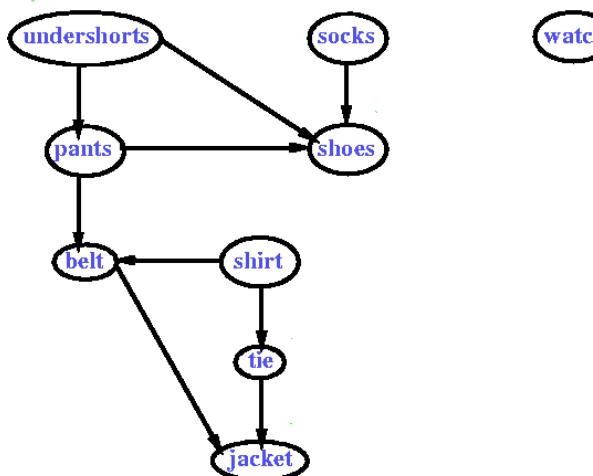
How can DFS be used to check whether a graph is connected or not?

Can you implement it????  
What will be the time complexity?

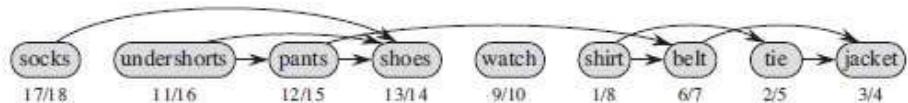
## DFS for Toplogical Sort



## DFS for Toplogical Sort



## DFS for Toplogical Sort-Result

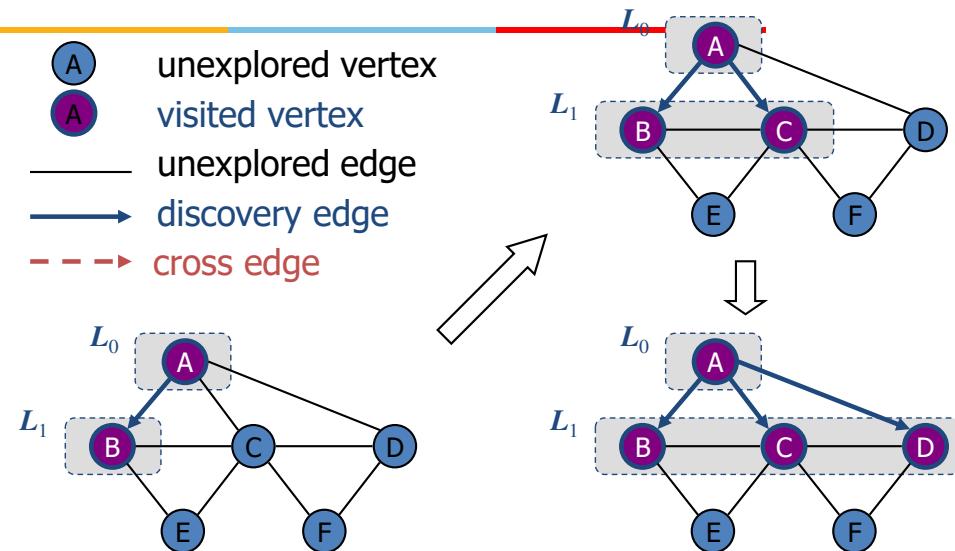


## Breadth-first search

- Algorithm
- Example
- Properties
- Analysis
- Applications

## Breadth-first search

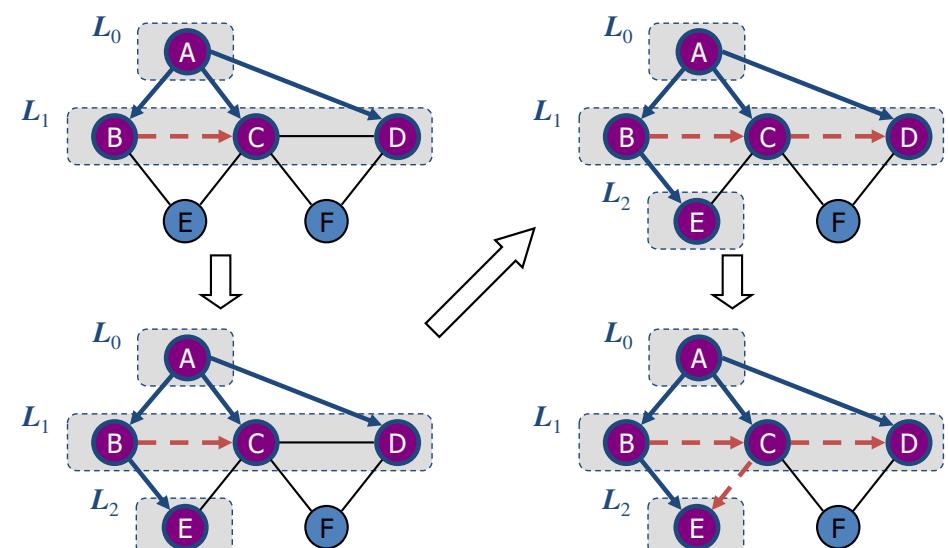
- unexplored vertex
- visited vertex
- unexplored edge
- discovery edge
- cross edge



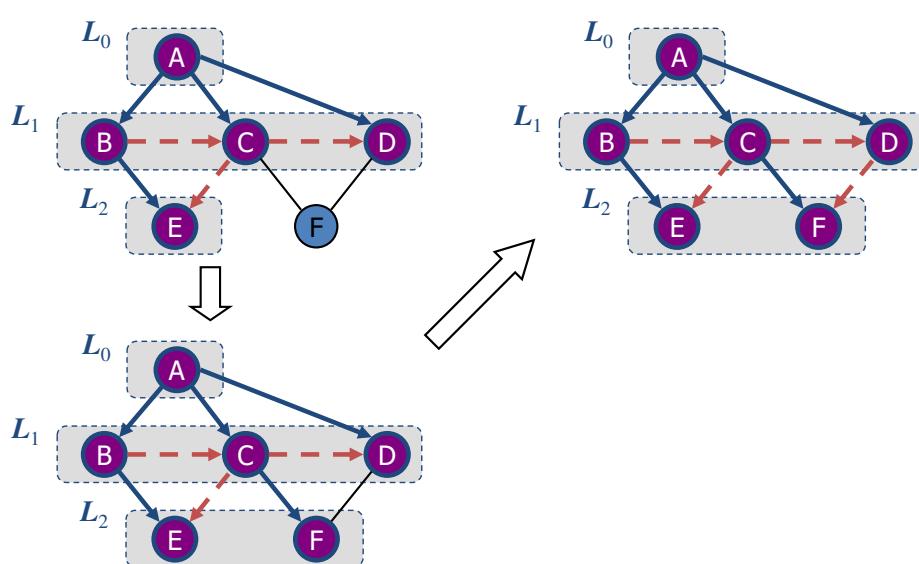
## Breadth-first search

- Breadth-first search (BFS) is a general technique for traversing a graph
- A BFS traversal of a graph G
  - discovers all vertices at distance k from s before discovering any vertices at distance k + 1.
- For any vertex v reachable from vertex s, the simple path in the breadth-first tree from s to v corresponds to a “**shortest path**” from s to v in G, that is, a path containing the smallest number of edges.

## Breadth-first search



## Breadth-first search

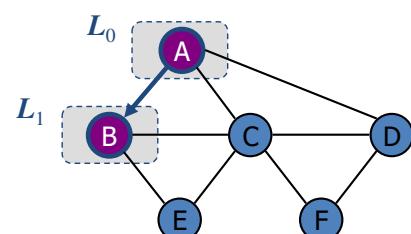


Page 29

## Breadth-first search – Algorithm $BFS(G, s)$

```

 $L_0 \leftarrow$  new empty sequence
 $L_0.insertLast(s)$ 
 $setLabel(s, VISITED)$ 
 $i \leftarrow 0$ 
while  $\neg L_i.isEmpty()$ 
   $L_{i+1} \leftarrow$  new empty sequence
  for all  $v \in L_i.elements()$ 
    for all  $e \in G.incidentEdges(v)$ 
      if  $getLabel(e) = UNEXPLORED$ 
         $w \leftarrow opposite(v, e)$ 
        if  $getLabel(w) = UNEXPLORED$ 
           $setLabel(e, DISCOVERY)$ 
           $setLabel(w, VISITED)$ 
           $L_{i+1}.insertLast(w)$ 
        else
           $setLabel(e, CROSS)$ 
   $i \leftarrow i + 1$ 
  
```



Page 31

## Breadth-first search

- The algorithm uses a mechanism for setting and getting “labels” of vertices and edges

**Algorithm  $BFS(G)$**

**Input** graph  $G$

**Output** labeling of the edges and partition of the vertices of  $G$

for all  $u \in G.vertices()$

$setLabel(u, UNEXPLORED)$

for all  $e \in G.edges()$

$setLabel(e, UNEXPLORED)$

for all  $v \in G.vertices()$

  if  $getLabel(v) = UNEXPLORED$

$BFS(G, v)$

Page 30

## Breadth-first search – Algorithm $BFS(G, s)$

- We use auxiliary space to label edges, mark visited vertices, and store containers associated with levels.
- That is, the containers  $L_0, L_1, L_2$ , and so on, store the nodes that are in level 0, level 1, level 2, and so on.

Page 32

# Properties

## Notation

$G_s$ : connected component of  $s$

### Property 1

$BFS(G, s)$  visits all the vertices and edges of  $G_s$

### Property 2

The discovery edges of a connected component labeled by  $BFS(G, s)$  form a spanning tree  $T_s$  of  $G_s$

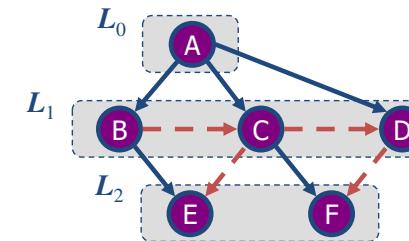
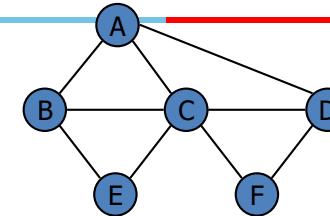
Page 33

# Analysis

- Setting/getting a vertex/edge label takes  $O(1)$  time
- Each vertex is labeled twice
  - once as UNEXPLORED
  - once as VISITED
- Each edge is labeled twice
  - once as UNEXPLORED
  - once as DISCOVERY or CROSS
- Each vertex is inserted once into a sequence  $L_i$
- Method incidentEdges is called once for each vertex
- BFS runs in  $O(n + m)$  time provided the graph is represented by the adjacency list structure
  - Recall that  $\sum_v \deg(v) = 2m$

Page 35

# Properties



Page 34

# Applications

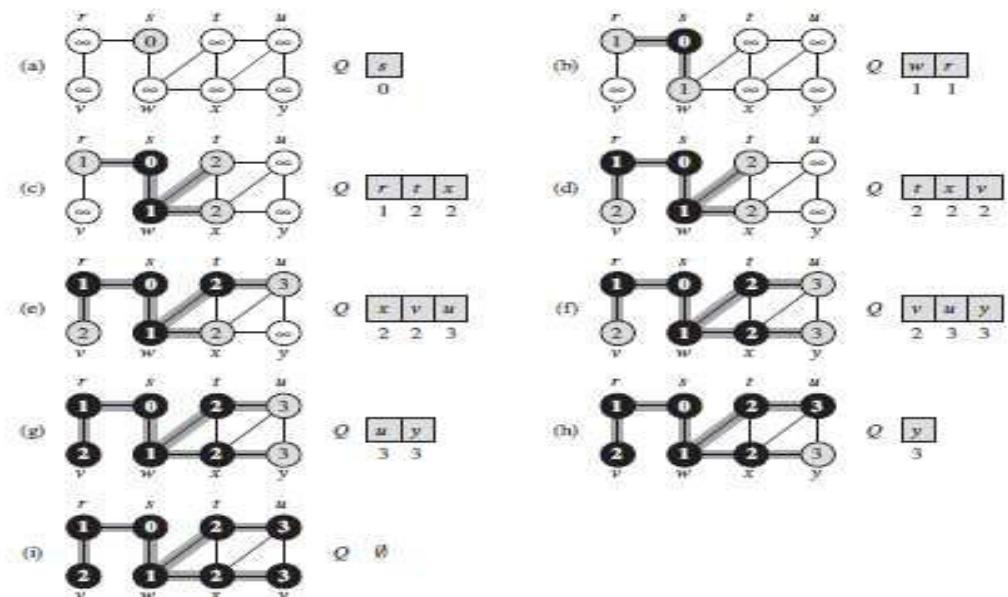
- We can specialize the BFS traversal of a graph  $G$  to solve the following problems in  $O(n + m)$  time
  - Compute the connected components of  $G$
  - Compute a spanning forest of  $G$
  - Find a simple cycle in  $G$ , or report that  $G$  is a forest
  - Given two vertices of  $G$ , find a path in  $G$  between them with the minimum number of edges, or report that no such path exists

Page 36

# Facebook as Graph

- Traversal: go to ‘Friends’ to display all your friends (like G.Neighbors)
- BFS: the tabs are a queue - open all friends profiles in new tabs, then close current tab and go to the next one
- DFS: the history is a stack - open the first hot friend profile in the same window; when hitting a dead end, use back button

## BFS-CLRS



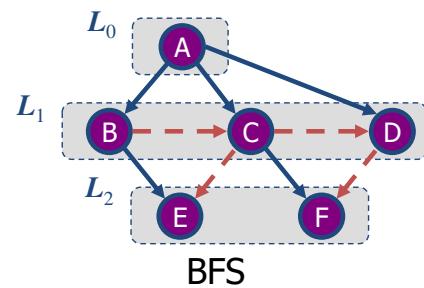
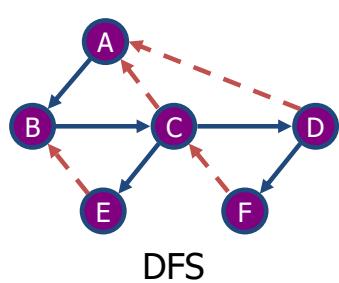
## BFS-CLRS

```
BFS( $G, s$ )
1  for each vertex  $u \in G.V - \{s\}$ 
2     $u.color = \text{WHITE}$ 
3     $u.d = \infty$ 
4     $u.\pi = \text{NIL}$ 
5   $s.color = \text{GRAY}$ 
6   $s.d = 0$ 
7   $s.\pi = \text{NIL}$ 
8   $Q = \emptyset$ 
9  ENQUEUE( $Q, s$ )
10 while  $Q \neq \emptyset$ 
11    $u = \text{DEQUEUE}(Q)$ 
12   for each  $v \in G.Adj[u]$ 
13     if  $v.color == \text{WHITE}$ 
14        $v.color = \text{GRAY}$ 
15        $v.d = u.d + 1$ 
16        $v.\pi = u$ 
17       ENQUEUE( $Q, v$ )
18    $u.color = \text{BLACK}$ 
```

## DFS vs. BFS

| Application                                          | DFS | BFS |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----|-----|
| Spanning forest, connected components, paths, cycles | Y   | Y   |
| Shortest Paths                                       |     | Y   |

## DFS vs. BFS



## DFS vs. BFS

Back edge ( $v, w$ )

- $w$  is an ancestor of  $v$  in the tree of discovery edges

Cross edge ( $v, w$ )

- $w$  is in the same level as  $v$  or in the next level in the tree of discovery edges



THANK YOU!



Data Structures and  
Algorithms Design

# SESSION -PLAN



| Session(#) | List of Topic Title                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Text/Ref Book/external resource |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 10         | <b>M5:Algorithm Design Techniques</b><br>Greedy Method - Design Principles and Strategy, Fractional Knapsack Problem, Task Scheduling Problem<br>Minimum Spanning Tree, Shortest Path Problem - Dijkstra's Algorithm | T1: 5.1, 7.1, 7.3               |

Page 2



## Greedy method-Change making problem



### Greedy Method



- **The greedy method** is a general algorithm design paradigm, built on the following elements:
  - **configurations:** different choices, collections, or values to find
  - **objective function:** a score assigned to configurations, which we want to either maximize or minimize

Page 4

Page 5

## Greedy Method

- It works best when applied to problems with the **greedy-choice** property:
  - ie. a globally optimal solution can be arrived at by making a locally optimal (greedy) choice.
  - When a locally optimal choice can lead to a globally optimal solution, the problem has this property.
- **Optimal Substructure property** : An optimal solution to the problem contains optimal solution to the sub problems.

## Making Change



- **Example 1:** Coins are valued \$.32, \$.08, \$.01
  - Has the greedy-choice property, since no amount over \$.32 can be made with a minimum number of coins by omitting a \$.32 coin.
- **Example 2:** Coins are valued \$.30, \$.20, \$.05, \$.01
  - Does not have greedy-choice property, since \$.40 is best made with two \$.20's, but the greedy solution will pick three coins (which ones?)

## Making Change-Example 2

- **Problem:** A dollar amount to reach and a collection of coin amounts to use to get there.
- **Configuration:** A dollar amount yet to return to a customer plus the coins already returned
- **Objective function:** Minimize number of coins returned.
- **Greedy solution:** Always return the largest coin you can

## Greedy Method

- An algorithm design strategy that always tries to find the best solution for each sub problem with the hope that it will yield a good solution for the problem as a whole.
- It makes the choice that looks best at the moment.
- Don't worry about the effect these choices have in the future.
- At each step the choice should be
  - Feasible
  - Locally optimal
  - Irrevocable

## Greedy Method

- Applied for **optimization problems**
- In order to solve a given optimization problem, we proceed by a sequence of choices.
- The sequence starts from some well-understood starting configuration, and then iteratively makes the decision that seems best from all of those that are currently possible.
- Greedy approach does not always lead to an optimal solution. It works optimally for problems with **greedy-choice** property

## The Fractional Knapsack Problem



- If we are allowed to take fractional amounts, then this is the **fractional knapsack problem**.
- Let  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  be the fractions of objects that are supposed to be added to knapsack.
  - Maximize  $\sum_{i=1}^n p_i x_i$
  - Constraint :  $\sum_{i=1}^n w_i x_i \leq M$

## The Fractional Knapsack Problem

- Given: A knapsack of capacity  $M$  and  $n$  objects of weights  $w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n$  with profits  $p_1, p_2, p_3, \dots, p_n$ .
- **Goal: Choose items with maximum total benefit but with weight at most  $M$ .**

## The Fractional Knapsack Problem



- Greedy choice:
  - **Keep taking item with highest value (profit to weight ratio)**
- Algorithm: Iteratively picks the item with the greatest value( $p_i/w_i$ ).
- If, at the end, the knapsack cannot fit the entire last item with greatest value among the remaining items, we will take a fraction of it to fill the knapsack.

# The Fractional Knapsack Problem



- Let n=3 M=40

| Weight(wi) | Profit(Pi) |
|------------|------------|
| 20         | 30         |
| 25         | 40         |
| 10         | 35         |

Page 14

## The Fractional Knapsack Algorithm

### Algorithm

*fractionalKnapsack(m,n,w,x,p)*

### Input:

m-Capacity of Knapsack ,

n- no:of objects,

w-array of weights of all n  
objects,

p-array of profits of all n objects

### Output:

x -array containing the solution

Arrange the objects in the decreasing  
order of  $\frac{p_i}{w_i}$

for i  $\leftarrow$  1 to n

$x[i]=0$

end for

$rc \leftarrow m$

    for i  $\leftarrow$  1 to n

        if ( $w[i] > rc$ ) break;

$x[i] \leftarrow 1$

$rc \leftarrow rc - w[i]$

        // $p \leftarrow p + p[i]$

    end for

    if( $i \leq n$ )

$\{x[i]=rc/w[i]\}$

        // $p=(p[i]*x[i])+p$

# The Fractional Knapsack Problem



- Let n=3 M=40

| Weight(wi) | Profit(Pi) |
|------------|------------|
| 20         | 30         |
| 25         | 40         |
| 10         | 35         |

Page 15

## The Fractional Knapsack Algorithm

• Time complexity

•  $O(n\log n)$

• Why?

• Specifically, we use a heap-based priority queue to store the items of S, where the key of each item is its value . With this data structure, each greedy choice, which removes the item with greatest value, takes  $O(\log n)$  time. Process is repeated for n items. Hence  $O(n\log n)$

Page 16

Page 17

## Correctness

**Greedy Choice Property:** Let  $i$  be the index of the item with maximum  $p_i/w_i$ . Then there exists an optimal solution in which you take as much of item  $i$  as possible.

Given a set of  $n$  items  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ .

- Assume items sorted by per-pound values:  $p_1 \geq p_2 \geq \dots \geq p_n$ .

Let the greedy solution be  $G = \langle x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k \rangle$

- $x_i$  indicates fraction of item  $i$  taken (all  $x_i = 1$ , except possibly for  $i = k$ ).

Consider any optimal solution  $O = \langle y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n \rangle$

- $y_i$  indicates fraction of item  $i$  taken in  $O$  (for all  $i$ ,  $0 \leq y_i \leq 1$ ).

- Knapsack must be full in both  $G$  and  $O$ :

$$\sum_{i=1}^n x_i w_i = \sum_{i=1}^n y_i w_i = K.$$

Consider the first item  $i$  where the two selections differ.

- By definition, solution  $G$  takes a greater amount of item  $i$  than solution  $O$  (because the greedy solution always takes as much as it can). Let  $x = x_i - y_i$ .

## Correctness

- There must exist some item  $j \neq i$  with  $p_j/w_j < p_i/w_i$  that is in the knapsack.
- We can therefore take a piece of  $j$ , with  $x$  weight, out of the knapsack, and put a piece of  $i$  with  $x$  weight in.
- This increases the knapsack's value by
- $x[p_i/w_i] - x[p_j/w_j] = x[(p_i/w_i) - (p_j/w_j)] > 0$
- Contradiction** to the original solution being optimal.

## Applications



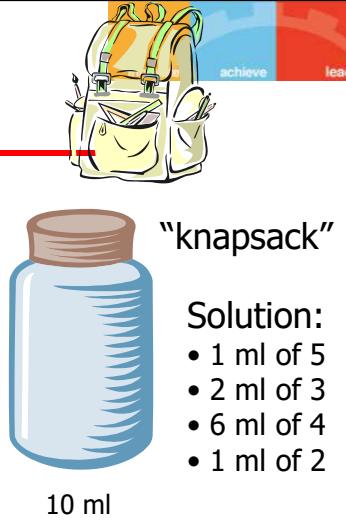
- Portfolio optimization
- Cutting stock problems
- Huffman encoding for text compression : Compute high frequency characters with short code words.
- Web auction Optimization
- K Means procedure in clustering:** It can be viewed as a greedy algorithm for partitioning the  $n$  examples into  $k$  clusters so as to minimize the sum of the squared distances to the cluster centers

## Web Auction Optimization

- Suppose you are designing a new online auction website that is intended to process bids for multi-lot auctions.
- This website should be able to handle a single auction for 100 units of the same digital camera or 500 units of the same smartphone, where bids are of the form, “ $x$  units for \$ $y$ ,” meaning that the bidder wants a quantity of  $x$  of the items being sold and is willing to pay \$ $y$  for all  $x$  of them.
- The challenge for your website is that it must allow for a large number of bidders to place such multi-lot bids and it must decide which bidders to choose as the winners.
- Naturally, one is interested in designing the website so that it always chooses a set of winning bids that maximizes the total amount of money paid for the items being auctioned. **So how do you decide which bidders to choose as the winners?**

## Exercise

|                       |      |      |      |      |      |
|-----------------------|------|------|------|------|------|
| Items:                | 1    | 2    | 3    | 4    | 5    |
| Weight:               | 4 ml | 8 ml | 2 ml | 6 ml | 1 ml |
| Benefit:              | \$12 | \$32 | \$40 | \$30 | \$50 |
| Value:<br>(\$ per ml) | 3    | 4    | 20   | 5    | 50   |



Page 22

## Job sequencing with deadlines

- Given a set of  $n$  jobs and associated with each job  $i$  is an integer deadline  $d_i \geq 0$  and profit  $p_i > 0$ , it is required to find the set of jobs such that all the chosen jobs should be completed within their deadlines and the profit earned should be maximum with the following constraints.
- Only one machine is available for processing jobs
- Only one job must be processed at any point of time
- A job is said to be completed if it is processed on a machine for one unit time.
- Greedy choice property:** Arrange the job in decreasing order of profits and pick the highest profit job first.

Page 24

## Task Scheduling Problem

- Job sequencing With deadlines
- Interval Scheduling

Page 23

## Job sequencing with deadlines

- Example

| i     | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4 | 5 |
|-------|----|----|----|---|---|
| $p_i$ | 20 | 10 | 15 | 1 | 5 |
| $d_i$ | 2  | 1  | 2  | 3 | 3 |

Page 25

## Job sequencing with deadlines

- Example

| i  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4 | 5 |
|----|----|----|----|---|---|
| pi | 20 | 15 | 10 | 5 | 1 |
| di | 2  | 2  | 1  | 3 | 3 |

Page 26

## Job sequencing with deadlines

- Time complexity
- $O(n^2)$
- Why?

Page 28

## Job sequencing with deadlines

**Algorithm JobSeq(job[1..n],p[1..n],d[1..n],list[1..n],n)**

Arrange the objects in decreasing order of profits.

Initialise list with 0s

Profit=0

for i=1 to n do

    k=d[i]

    while (k>0)

        if(list[k]=0)

            list[k]=job[i]

            add p[i] to profit

            break;

        end if

        decrement k by 1

    end while

End for

Print list

Page 27

## Example

- Given a set of 9 jobs where each job has a deadline and profit associated to it .Each job takes 1 unit of time to complete and only one job can be scheduled at a time. We earn the profit if and only if the job is completed by its deadline. The task is to find the maximum profit and the number of jobs done.

| Jobs | Profit | Deadline |
|------|--------|----------|
| J1   | 85     | 5        |
| J2   | 25     | 4        |
| J3   | 16     | 3        |
| J4   | 40     | 3        |
| J5   | 55     | 4        |
| J6   | 19     | 5        |
| J7   | 92     | 2        |
| J8   | 80     | 3        |
| J9   | 15     | 7        |

Page 29

## Task Scheduling Problem [Interval Partitioning]

- Given: a set T of n tasks, each having:
  - A start time,  $s_i$
  - A finish time,  $f_i$  (where  $s_i < f_i$ )
- Goal: Perform all the tasks using a minimum number of “machines.”

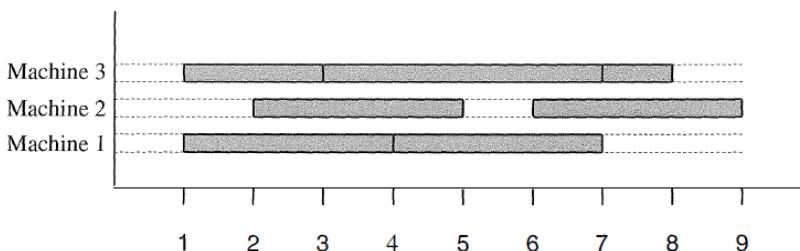
## Task Scheduling Problem [Interval Partitioning]

- The task scheduling problem we consider here is to schedule all the tasks in T on the fewest machines possible in a nonconflicting way.
- Greedy choice.
  - [Earliest start time] Consider tasks in ascending order of  $s_j$ .
  - [Earliest finish time] Consider tasks in ascending order of  $f_j$
  - [Shortest interval] Consider tasks in ascending order of  $f_j - s_j$ .

## Task Scheduling Algorithm [Interval Partitioning]

- Suppose we are given a set T of n tasks, such that each task i has a start time,  $s_i$ , and a finish time,  $f_i$  (where  $s_i < f_i$ ). Task i must start at time  $s_i$  and it is guaranteed to be finished by time  $f_i$ .
- Each task has to be performed on a machine and each machine can execute only one task at a time.
- Two tasks i and j are nonconflicting if  $f_i \leq s_j$  or  $f_j \leq s_i$ .
- Two tasks can be scheduled to be executed on the same machine only if they are nonconflicting

## Task Scheduling Problem [Interval Partitioning]



An illustration of a solution to the task scheduling problem, for tasks whose collection of pairs of start times and finish times is  $\{ (1, 3), (1, 4), (2, 5), (3, 7), (4, 7), (6, 9), (7, 8) \}$ .

# Task Scheduling Problem [Interval Partitioning]-Algorithm

- Consider tasks in increasing order of start time:

**Algorithm TaskSchedule( $T$ ):**

**Input:** A set  $T$  of tasks, such that each task has a start time  $s_i$  and a finish time  $f_i$

**Output:** A nonconflicting schedule of the tasks in  $T$  using a minimum number of machines

```
m ← 0      {optimal number of machines}  
while T ≠ ∅ do  
    remove from T the task i with smallest start time si  
    if there is a machine j with no task conflicting with task i then  
        schedule task i on machine j  
    else  
        m ← m + 1      {add a new machine}  
        schedule task i on machine m
```

Page 34

## Sample problem1-Meeting Room Scheduling

- Schedule the meetings in as few conference rooms as possible.
- Given a list of meeting times, checks if any of them overlaps. The follow-up question is to return the minimum number of rooms required to accommodate all the meetings.*
- Suppose we use interval (start, end) to denote the start and end time of the meeting, we have the following meeting times: (1, 4), (5, 6), (8, 9), (2, 6).

Page 37

# Task Scheduling Problem [Interval Partitioning]-

- Time complexity :  $O(n \log n)$ 
  - Sorting by start times takes  $O(n \log n)$  time.
  - Store machines in a priority queue (key = finish time of its last job).
  - To allocate a new machine, INSERT machine onto priority queue.
  - To schedule Task j in machine k, INCREASE-KEY of classroom k to  $f_j$ .
  - To determine whether Task j is compatible with any machine, compare  $s_j$  to FIND-MIN
  - Total # of priority queue operations is  $O(n)$ ; each takes  $O(\log n)$  time.
  - This implementation chooses a machine k whose finish time of its last job is the earliest

Page 35

## Sample problem1

- In the above example, apparently we should return true for the first question since (1, 4) and (2, 6) have overlaps.
- For the follow-up question, we need at least 2 meeting rooms so that (1, 4), (5, 6) will be put in one room and (2, 6), (8, 9) will be in the other.

Page 38

## Sample problem2

- A teacher assigns homework at the beginning of the first day of class. Each problem carries 1 mark + bonus if submitted within specified number of days. The deadline for submitting and bonus marks are different for each problem. Each problem takes exactly one day to complete. Maximum bonus one can obtain is 15. Your task is to find a schedule to complete all homework problems so as to maximize bonus marks..

| Problem number     | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
|--------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Deadline for bonus | 1 | 1 | 3 | 3 | 2 | 2 | 6 |
| Bonus              | 6 | 7 | 2 | 1 | 4 | 5 | 1 |

## Sample problem3

- A large ship is to be loaded with cargo. The cargo is containerized, and all containers are the same size. Different containers may have different weights. Let  $w_i$  be the weight of the  $i$ th container,  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . The cargo capacity of the ship is  $c$ . We wish to load the ship with the maximum number of containers.

## Sample problem3

Formulation of the problem :

- Variables :  $x_i$  ( $1 \leq i \leq n$ ) is set to 0 if the container  $i$  is not to be loaded and 1 in the other case.
- Constraints :  $\sum_{i=1}^n w_i x_i \leq c$ .
- Optimization function :  $\sum_{i=1}^n x_i$

## Sample problem3

- Using the greedy algorithm the ship may be loaded in stages; one container per stage.
- At each stage, the greedy criterion used to decide which container to load is the following :
  - From the remaining containers, select the one with least weight.
- This order of selection will keep the total weight of the selected containers minimum and hence leave maximum capacity for loading more containers.

## Sample problem4

- Lecture j starts at  $s_j$  and finishes at  $f_j$ .
- Goal: find minimum number of classrooms to schedule all lectures so that no two occur at the same time in the same room.

## Sample problem3

- Suppose that:
  - $n = 8$ ,
  - $[w_1, \dots, w_8] = [100, 200, 50, 90, 150, 50, 20, 80]$ ,
  - and  $c = 400$ .
- When the greedy algorithm is used, the containers are considered for loading in the order 7,3,6,8,4,1,5,2.
- Containers 7,3,6,8,4 and 1 together weight 390 units and are loaded.
- The available capacity is now 10 units, which is inadequate for any of the remaining containers.
- In the greedy solution we have:

$$[x_1, \dots, x_8] = [1, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 1, 1] \text{ and } \sum x_i = 6.$$

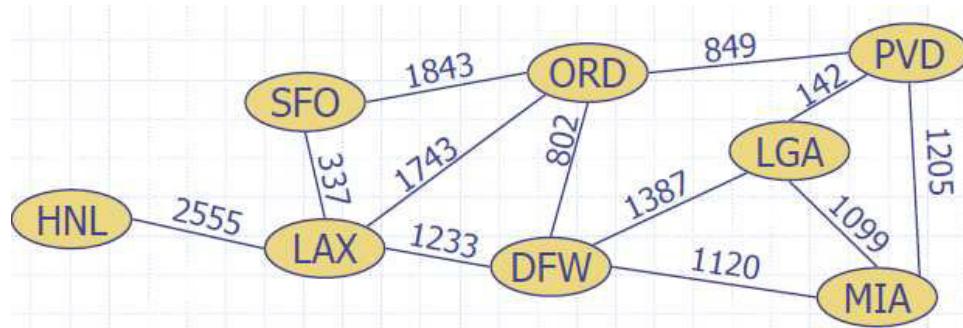


**BITS Pilani**  
Hyderabad Campus

**Data Structures and  
Algorithms Design**

| Sessions(#) | List of Topic Title                                                                                                       | Text/Ref Book/external resource |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 10          | M5:Algorithm Design Techniques<br><br>Greedy Method - Minimum Spanning Tree, Shortest Path Problem - Dijkstra's Algorithm | T1: 5.1, 7.1, 7.3               |

## Weighted Graphs



## Weighted Graphs

- In a weighted graph, each edge has an associated numerical value, called the weight of the edge
- Edge weights may represent, distances, costs, etc.
- Example: A flight route graph, the weight of an edge represents the distance in miles between the endpoint airports.

## Dijkstra's Algorithm-Single source shortest path algorithm

- The *distance* of a vertex  $v$  from a vertex  $s$  is the length of a shortest path between  $s$  and  $v$
- Dijkstra's algorithm computes the distances of all the vertices from a given start vertex  $s$
- Assumptions:
  - The graph is connected
  - The edge weights are nonnegative

## Dijkstra's Algorithm

- We grow a “**cloud**” of vertices, beginning with  $s$  and eventually covering all the vertices
- We store with each vertex  $v$  a label  $d(v)$  representing the distance of  $v$  from  $s$  in the subgraph consisting of the cloud and its adjacent vertices

Page 6

## Dijkstra's Algorithm

### Edge Relaxation

**RELAX( $u, v, w$ )**

- 1    if  $v.d > u.d + w(u, v)$
- 2         $v.d = u.d + w(u, v)$
- 3         $v.\pi = u$

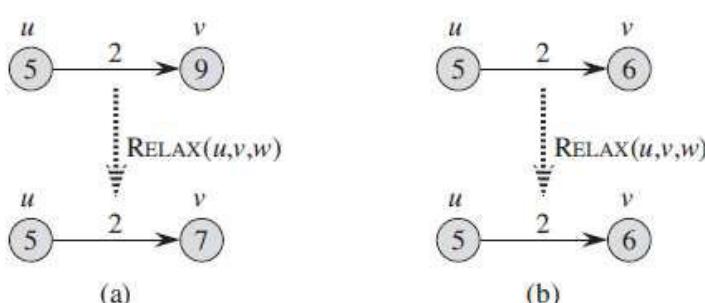
Page 8

## Dijkstra's Algorithm

- At each step
  - We add to the cloud the vertex  $u$  outside the cloud with the smallest distance label,  $d(u)$   
[Greedy choice]
  - We update the labels of the vertices adjacent to  $u$

Page 7

## Dijkstra's Algorithm



- Relaxing an edge  $(u, v)$  with weight =2. The shortest-path estimate of each vertex appears within the vertex.
  - Because  $v.d > u.d + w(u, v)$  prior to relaxation, the value of  $v.d$  decreases.
  - Here,  $v.d < u.d + w(u, v)$  before relaxing the edge, and so the relaxation step leaves  $v.d$  unchanged.

Page 9

## Dijkstra's Algorithm-{Cormen}

**INITIALIZE-SINGLE-SOURCE( $G, s$ )**

```

1 for each vertex  $v \in G.V$ 
2    $v.d = \infty$ 
3    $v.\pi = \text{NIL}$ 
4    $s.d = 0$ 
```

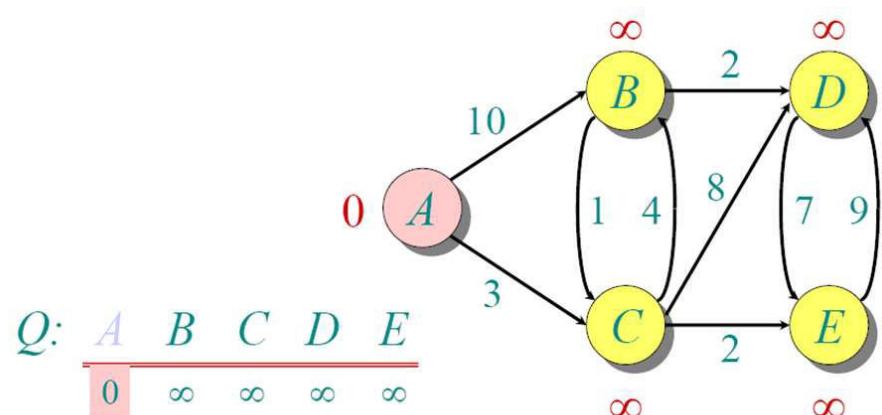
**RELAX( $u, v, w$ )**

```

1 if  $v.d > u.d + w(u, v)$ 
2    $v.d = u.d + w(u, v)$ 
3    $v.\pi = u$ 
```

Page 10

## Example



## Dijkstra's Algorithm-{Cormen}

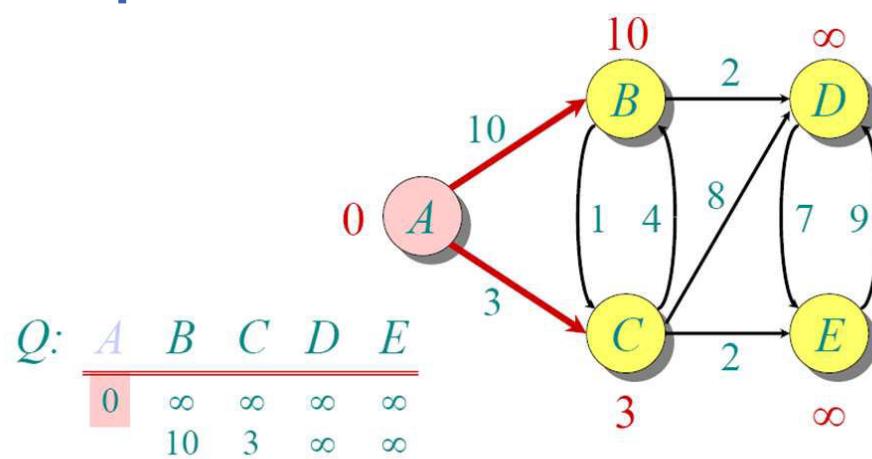
**DIJKSTRA( $G, w, s$ )**

```

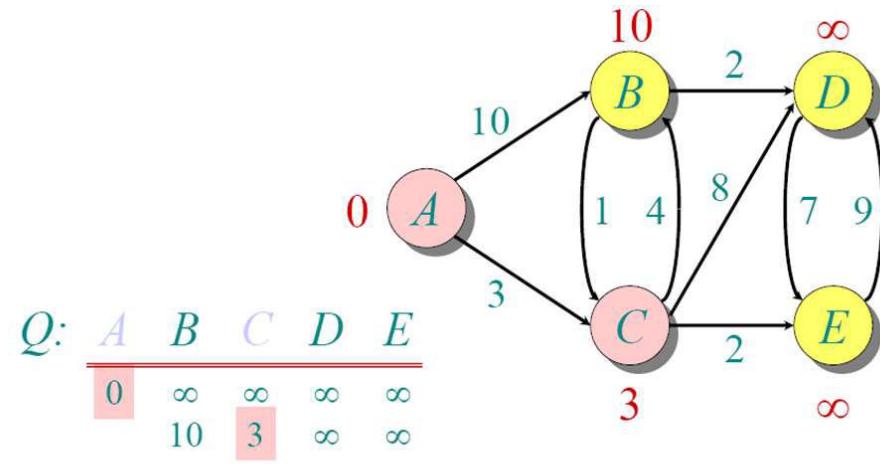
1 INITIALIZE-SINGLE-SOURCE( $G, s$ )
2  $S = \emptyset$ 
3  $Q = G.V$ 
4 while  $Q \neq \emptyset$ 
5    $u = \text{EXTRACT-MIN}(Q)$ 
6    $S = S \cup \{u\}$ 
7   for each vertex  $v \in G.Adj[u]$ 
8     RELAX( $u, v, w$ )
```

Page 11

## Example

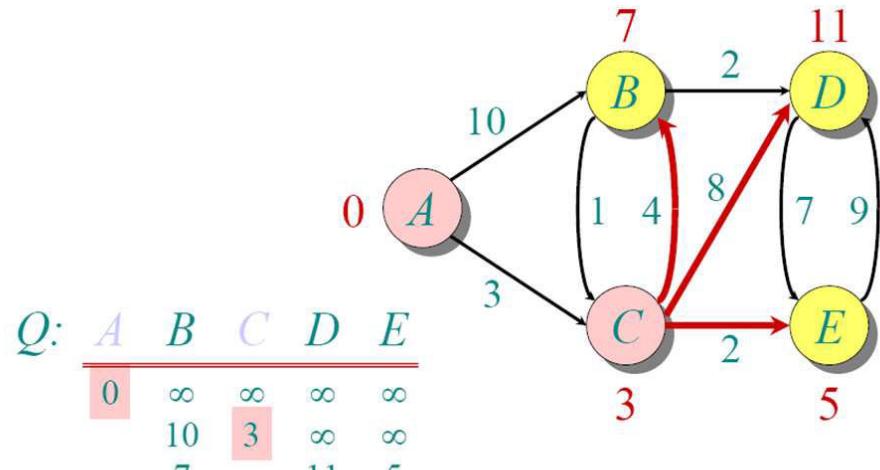


## Example



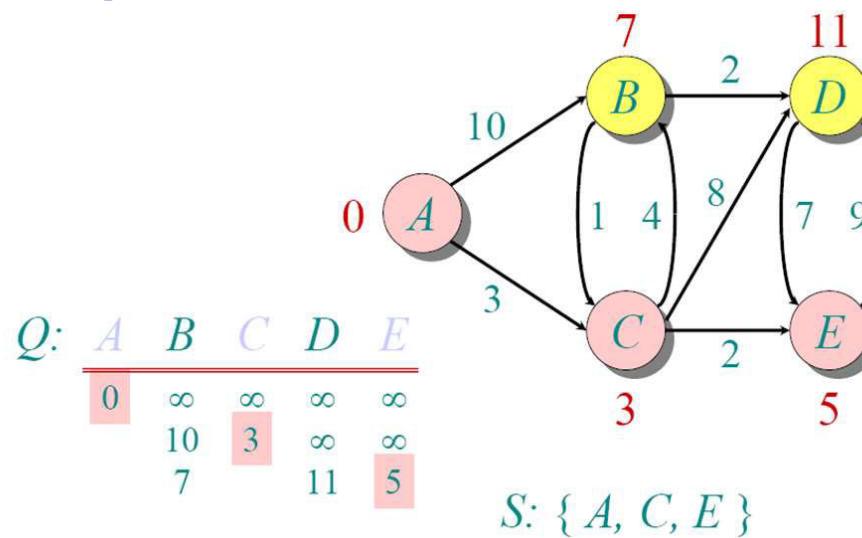
$S: \{A, C\}$

## Example



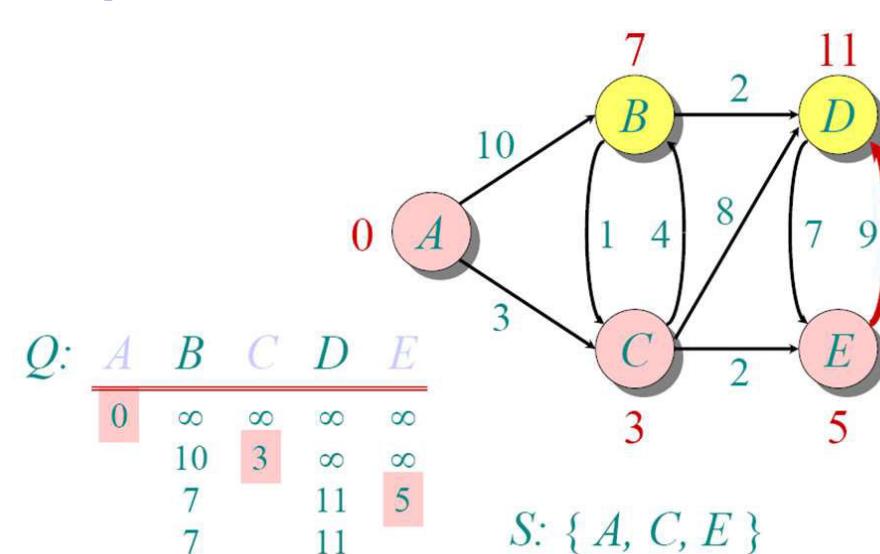
$S: \{A, C\}$

## Example



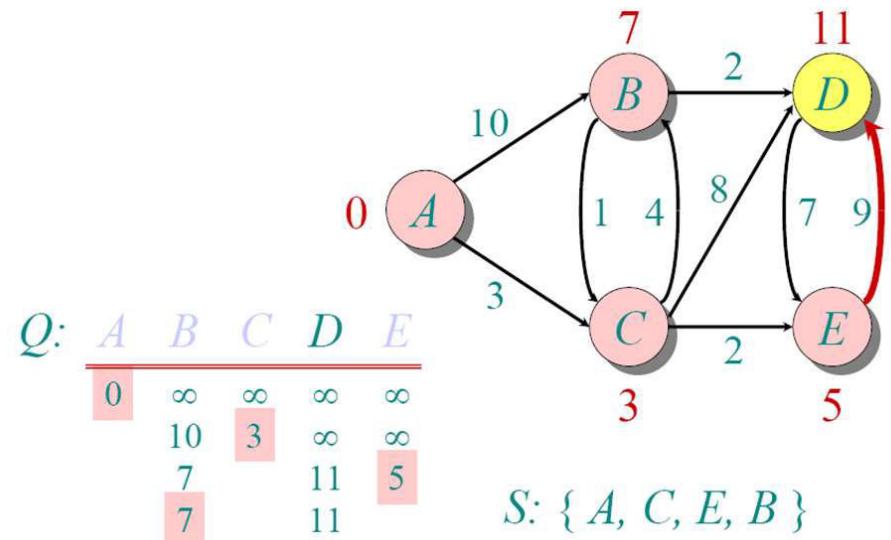
$S: \{A, C, E\}$

## Example

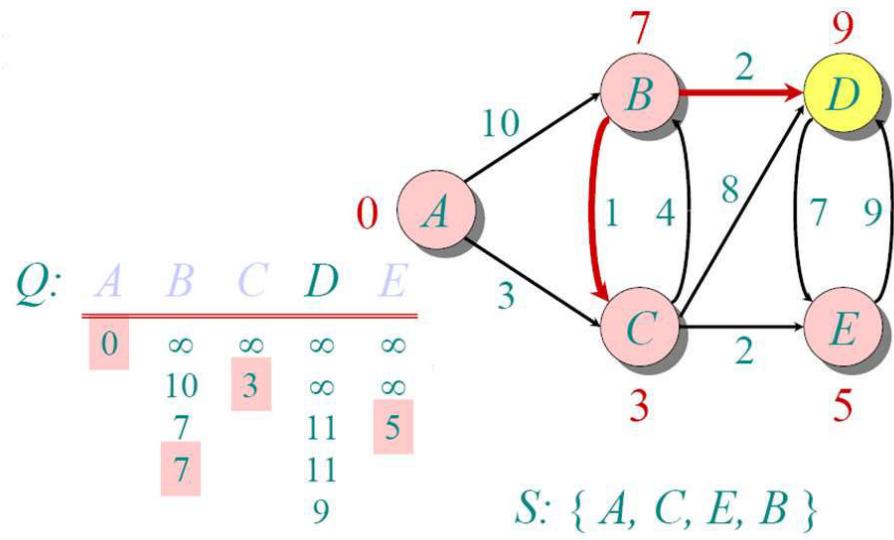


$S: \{A, C, E\}$

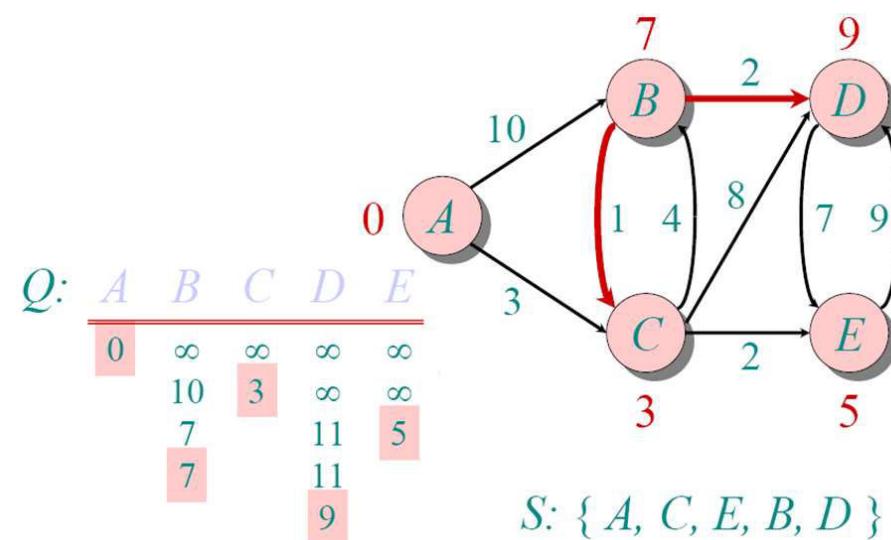
## Example



## Example



## Example



## Dijkstra's Algorithm-{Cormen}



DIJKSTRA( $G, w, s$ )

```

1 INITIALIZE-SINGLE-SOURCE( $G, s$ )
2  $S = \emptyset$ 
3  $Q = G.V$ 
4 while  $Q \neq \emptyset$ 
5    $u = \text{EXTRACT-MIN}(Q)$ 
6    $S = S \cup \{u\}$ 
7   for each vertex  $v \in G.\text{Adj}[u]$ 
8     RELAX( $u, v, w$ )

```

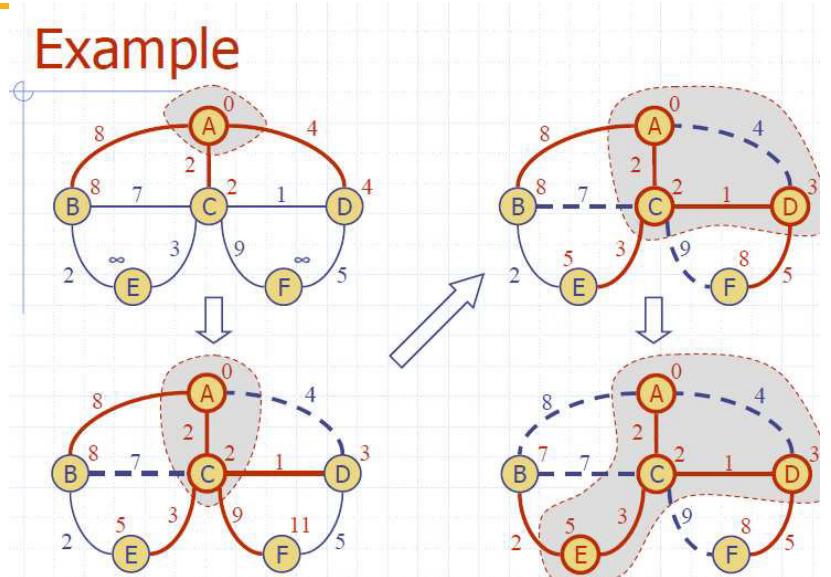
# Dijkstra's Algorithm-Analysis

- The simplest implementation of the Dijkstra's algorithm stores vertices in an ordinary linked list or array
- Good for dense graphs (many edges)
  - $|V|$  vertices and  $|E|$  edges
  - Initialization  $O(|V|)$
  - While loop  $O(|V|)$
  - Find and remove min distance vertices  $O(|V|)$
  - Potentially  $|E|$  updates
  - Update costs  $O(1)$
  - Total time  $O(|V|^2 + |E|) = O(|V|^2)$

Page 22

## Dijkstra's Algorithm

### Example



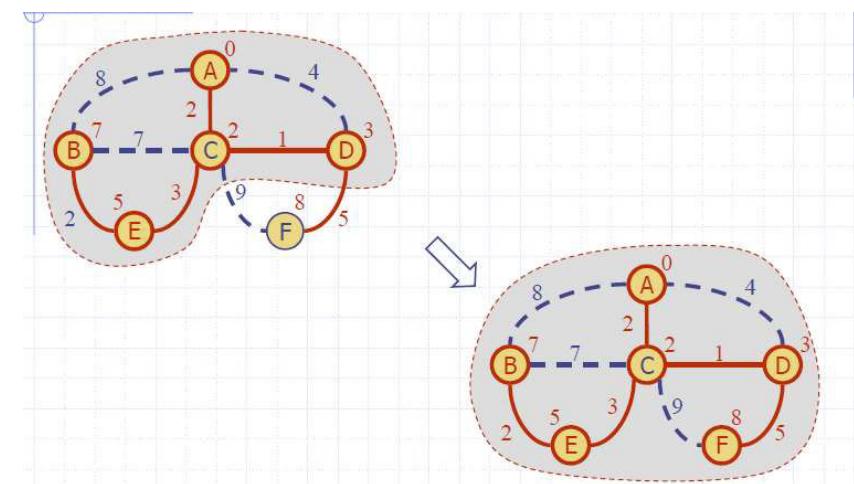
Page 24

# Dijkstra's Algorithm-Analysis

- For sparse graphs, (i.e. graphs with much less than  $|V|^2$  edges) Dijkstra's implemented more efficiently by priority queue
  - Initialization  $O(|V|)$  using  $O(|V|)$  buildHeap
  - While loop  $O(|V|)$
  - Find and remove min distance vertices =  $O(\log |V|)$  using  $O(\log |V|)$  deleteMin
  - Taken together that part of the loop and the calls to ExtractMin take  $O(V\log V)$  time
  - Potentially  $|E|$  updates: The for loop is executed once for each edge in the graph ( $E$  times), and within the for loop ,the update costs  $O(\log |V|)$  using decreaseKey
  - Total time  $O(|V|\log|V| + |E|\log|V|) = O ((V+E)\log V)$
  - Recall  $\sum_v \deg(v) = 2m$  ie.  $|V| = O(|E|)$  assuming a connected graph
  - Hence **the total time=** $O(|E| \log |V|)$

Page 23

## Dijkstra's Algorithm



Page 25

## Dijkstra's Algorithm-Why It Doesn't Work for Negative-Weight Edges



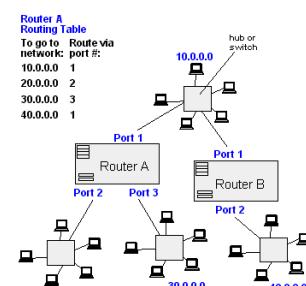
- Dijkstra relies on one "simple" fact: if all weights are non-negative, adding an edge can never make a path shorter. That's why picking the shortest candidate edge (local optimality) always ends up being correct (global optimality).

Page 26

## Dijkstra's Applications



- Network routing protocols - [Open Shortest Path First](#)
- It is used in geographical Maps.
- A\* Algorithm in graph traversals.(AI)
- Applied example
- <https://prezi.com/po0cka9lrrqd/applied-example-of-dijkstras-algorithm/>

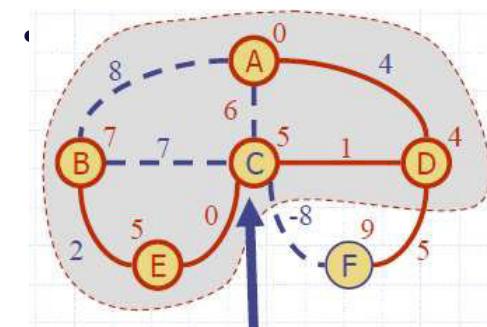


Page 28

## Dijkstra's Algorithm-Why It Doesn't Work for Negative-Weight Edges



- If a node with a negative incident edge were to be added late to the cloud, it could mess up distances for vertices already in the cloud.



»C's true distance is 1, but it is already in the cloud with  $d(C)=5$ !

Page 27

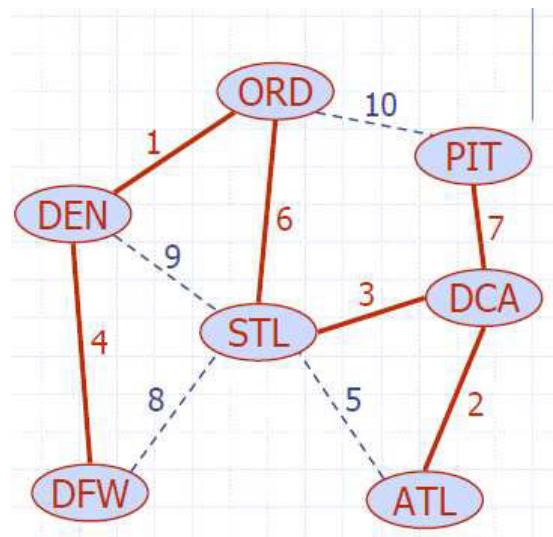
## Minimum Spanning Tree



- Spanning subgraph
  - Subgraph of a graph G containing all the vertices of G
- Spanning tree
  - Spanning subgraph that is itself a tree
- Minimum spanning tree (MST)
  - Spanning tree of a weighted graph with minimum total edge weight
- Applications
  - Communications networks
  - Transportation networks

Page 29

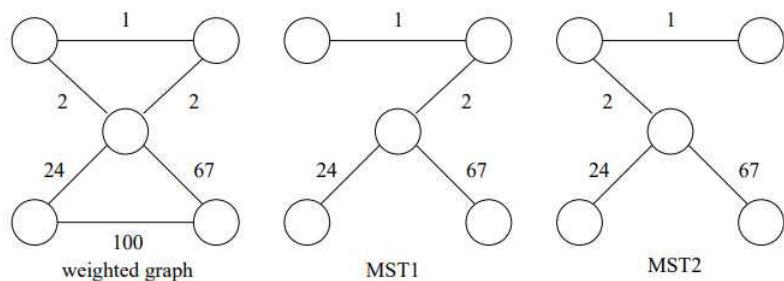
## Minimum Spanning Tree



Page 30

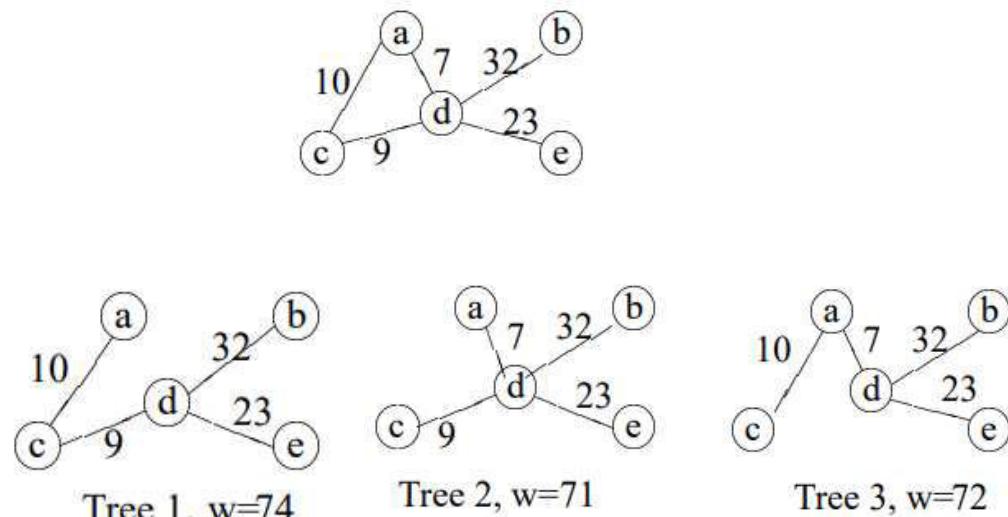
## Minimum Spanning Tree Prim's Algorithm

- The minimum spanning tree may not be unique. However, if the weights of all the edges are pairwise distinct, it is indeed unique



Page 36

## Minimum Spanning Tree Prim's Algorithm

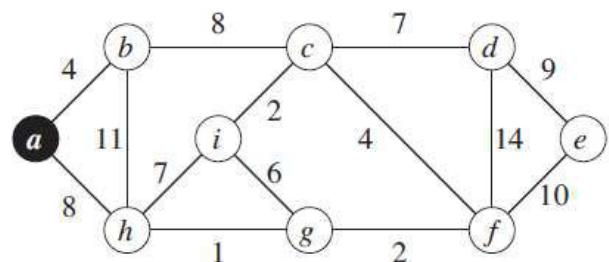


Page 35

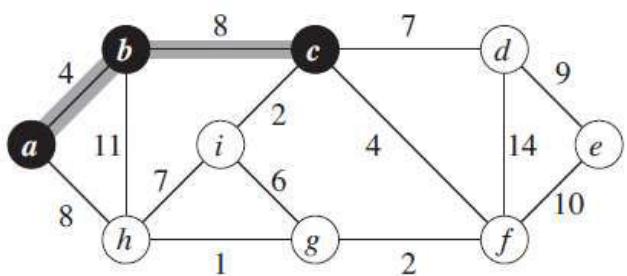
## Minimum Spanning Tree Prim's Algorithm

- Prim's algorithm is a greedy algorithm that finds a minimum spanning tree for a weighted undirected graph.
- This means it finds a subset of the edges that forms a tree that includes every vertex, where the total weight of all the edges in the tree is minimized.
- At each step:
  - We add to the cloud the vertex  $u$  outside the cloud with the smallest distance label
  - We update the labels of the vertices adjacent to  $u$

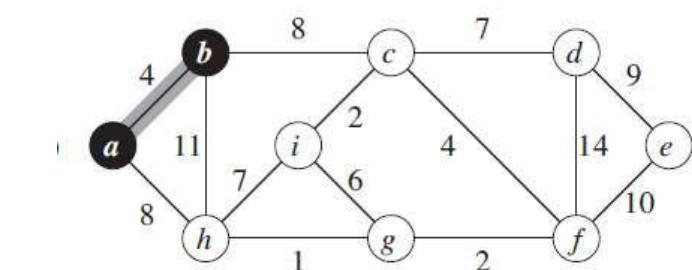
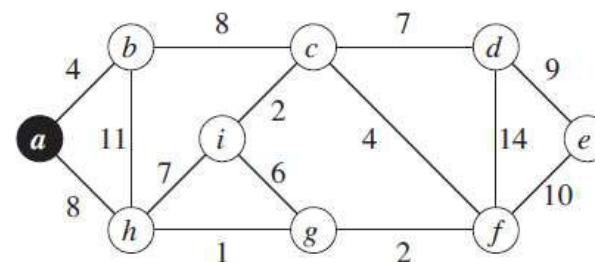
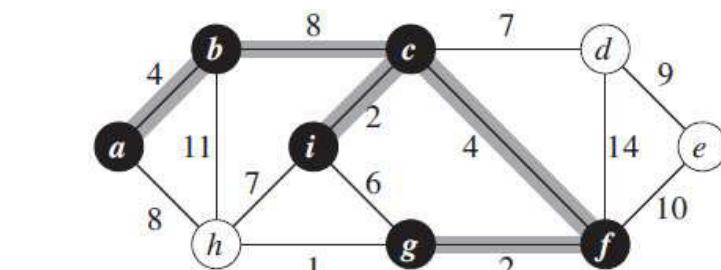
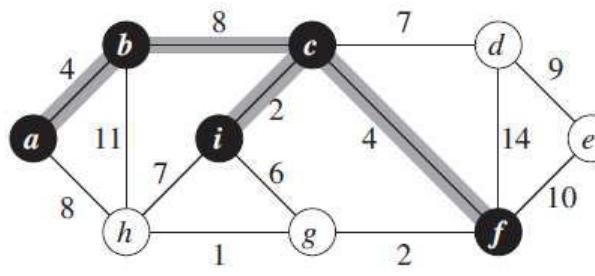
Page 37

**Example**

Page 38

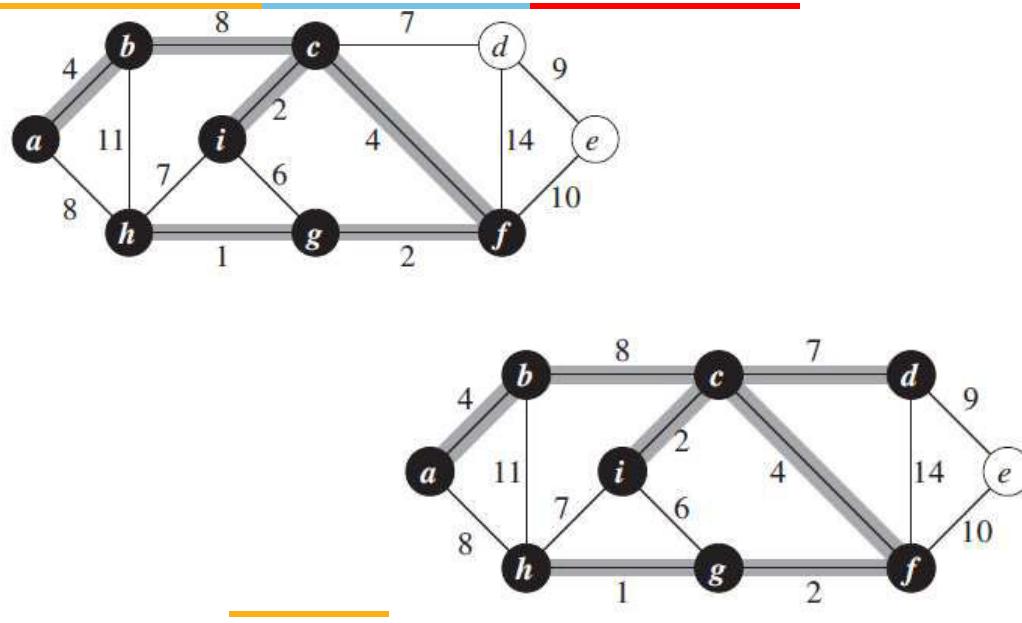
**Example**

Page 40

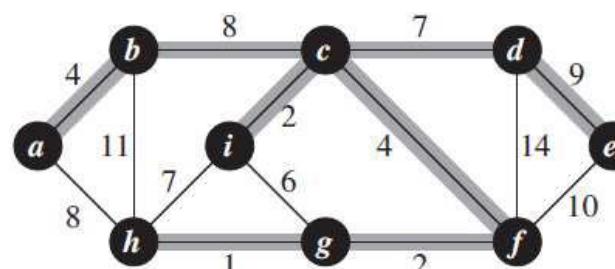
**Example****Example**

Page 41

## Example



## Example



## Minimum Spanning Tree Prim's Algorithm

MST-PRIM( $G, w, r$ )

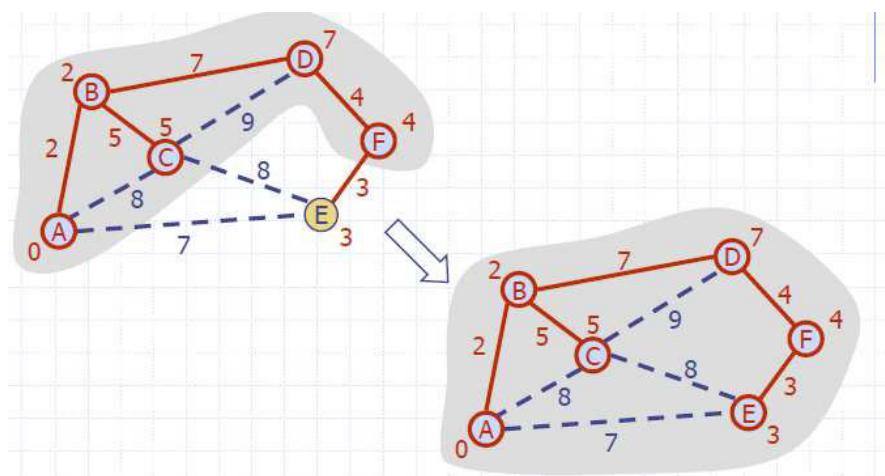
```
1  for each  $u \in G.V$ 
2       $u.key = \infty$ 
3       $u.\pi = \text{NIL}$ 
4   $r.key = 0$ 
5   $Q = G.V$ 
6  while  $Q \neq \emptyset$ 
7       $u = \text{EXTRACT-MIN}(Q)$ 
8      for each  $v \in G.Adj[u]$ 
9          if  $v \in Q$  and  $w(u, v) < v.key$ 
10              $v.\pi = u$ 
11              $v.key = w(u, v)$ 
```

## Prims's Algorithm-Analysis

- Similar to Dijkstra's, Prim's algorithm can be implemented more efficiently by priority queue
  - Initialization  $O(|V|)$  using  $O(|V|)$  buildHeap
  - While loop  $O(|V|)$
  - Find and remove min distance vertices =  $O(\log |V|)$  using  $O(\log |V|)$  deleteMin
  - Taken together that part of the loop and the calls to ExtractMin take  $O(V \log V)$  time
  - Potentially  $|E|$  updates: The for loop is executed once for each edge in the graph ( $E$  times), and within the for loop, the update costs  $O(\log |V|)$  using decreaseKey
  - Total time  $O(|V| \log |V| + |E| \log |V|) = O((V+E) \log V)$
  - Since graph is connected, number of edges should be atleast  $n-1$  is  $m \geq n-1$  ie.  $|V| = O(|E|)$  assuming a connected graph
  - Hence **the total time=** $O(|E| \log |V|)$

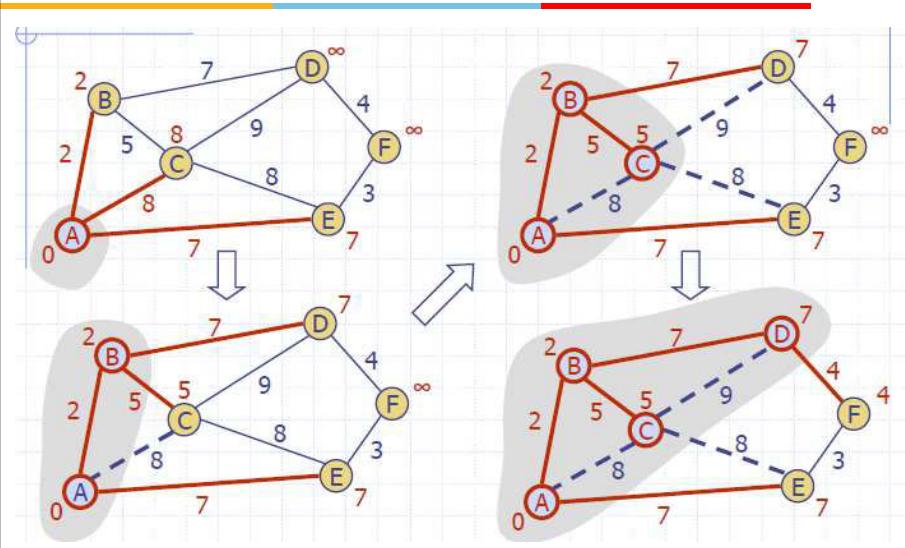
Page 46

## Minimum Spanning Tree Prim's Algorithm



Page 48

## Minimum Spanning Tree Prim's Algorithm-Example



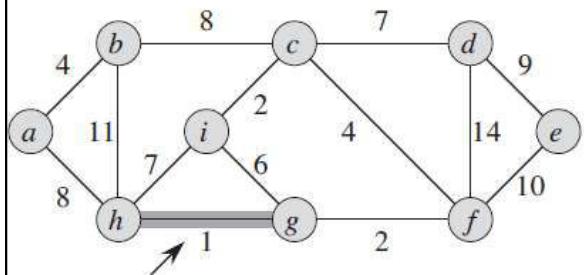
Page 47

## Minimum Spanning Tree Kruskal's Algorithm

- It builds the MST in forest.
- Initially, each vertex is in its own tree in forest.
- Then, algorithm consider each edge in turn, order by increasing weight.
- If an edge  $(u, v)$  connects two different trees, then  $(u, v)$  is added to the set of edges of the MST, and two trees connected by an edge  $(u, v)$  are merged into a single tree
- If an edge  $(u, v)$  connects two vertices in the same tree, then edge  $(u, v)$  is discarded.

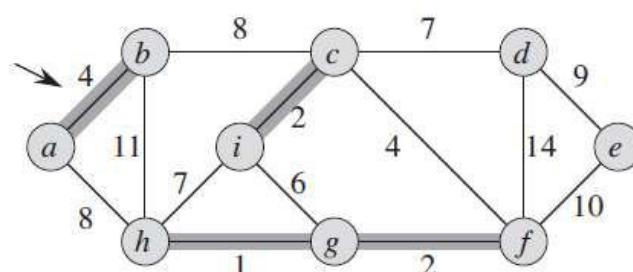
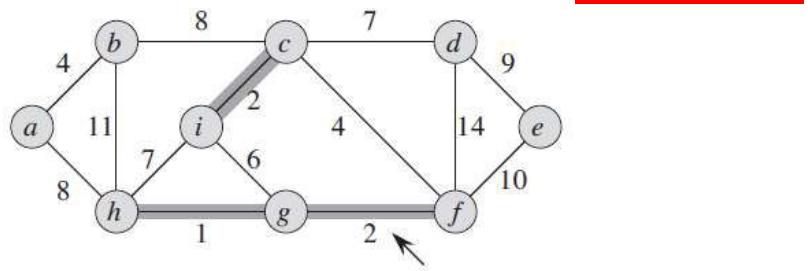
Page 49

## Minimum Spanning Tree Kruskal's Algorithm-Example



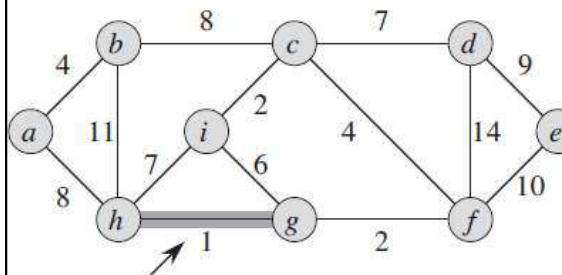
Page 50

## Minimum Spanning Tree Kruskal's Algorithm-Example

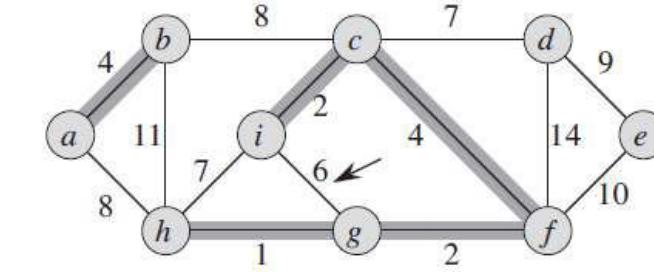
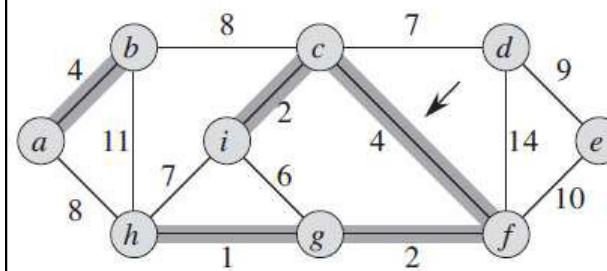


Page 52

## Minimum Spanning Tree Kruskal's Algorithm-Example

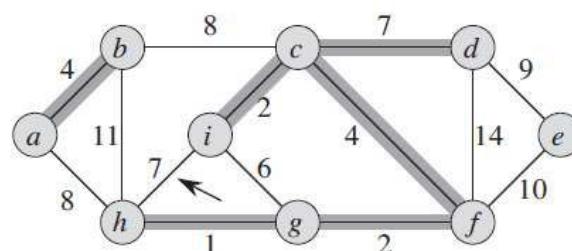
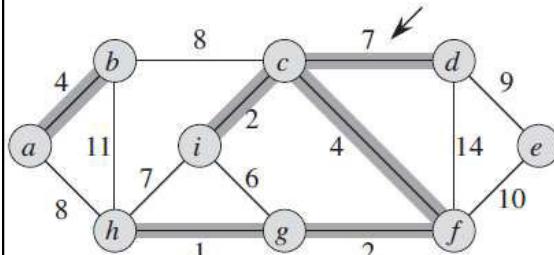


## Minimum Spanning Tree Kruskal's Algorithm-Example



Page 53

# Minimum Spanning Tree Kruskal's Algorithm-Example



# Minimum Spanning Tree Kruskal's Algorithm

- A priority queue stores the edges-
  - Key: weight
  - Element: edge
- We can implement the priority queue Q using a heap.
- Thus, we can initialize Q in **O(E)** time using bottom-up heap construction
- In addition, at each iteration of the **while** loop, we can remove a minimum-weight edge in **O(log E)** time.
- Taken together that part of the loop and the calls to removeMin take **O(E log E)** time
- Contd...

# Minimum Spanning Tree Kruskal's Algorithm

## Algorithm *KruskalMST(G)*

```
for each vertex V in G do
    define a Cloud(v) of  $\leftarrow \{v\}$ 
let Q be a priority queue.
Insert all edges into Q using their
weights as the key
T  $\leftarrow \emptyset$ 
while T has fewer than  $n-1$  edges do
    edge e = T.removeMin()
    Let u, v be the endpoints of e
    if Cloud(v)  $\neq$  Cloud(u) then
        Add edge e to T
        Merge Cloud(v) and Cloud(u)
return T
```

Page 55

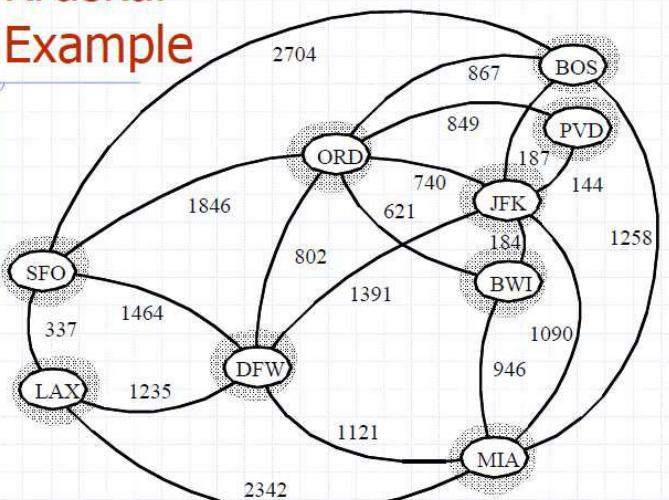
# Minimum Spanning Tree Kruskal's Algorithm-Analysis

- Here final tree will have  $n-1$  edges
  - So  $n$  union operations need to be performed- $O(n \log n)$  [Cost of find included]
  - Since graph is connected, number of edges should be atleast  $n-1$  is  $m \geq n-1$
  - So cost of union operations= $O(m \log m) = O(E \log E)$
- Thus, the total time spent performing priority queue operations is no more than  $O(E \log E)$ .
  - The number of edges in a simple graph  $m = n(n - 1)/2$ .
  - ie **m** is atmost  $n^2$  ie  $\log m = 2\log n$  ie  $\lg |E| = O(\lg |V|)$
- Thus, the total time spent performing priority queue operations is  $O(E \log V)$ . [Same as Prim's]

Page 56

# Minimum Spanning Tree

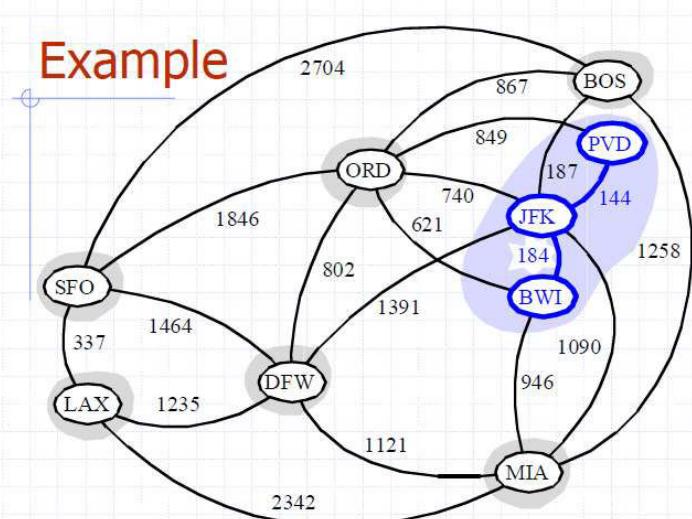
## Kruskal Example



Page 58

# Minimum Spanning Tree

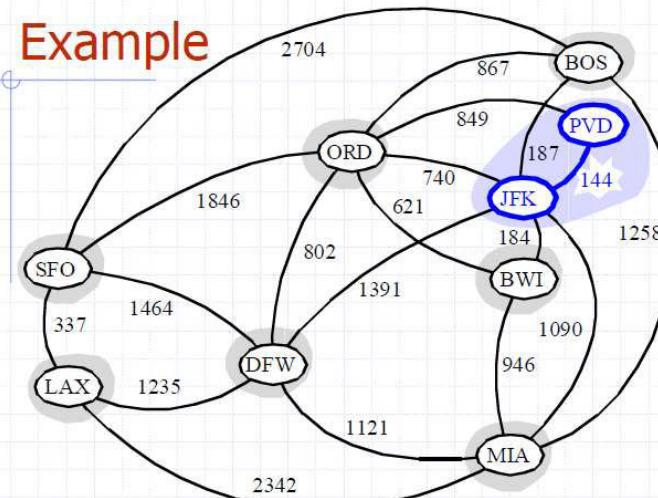
## Example



Page 60

# Minimum Spanning Tree

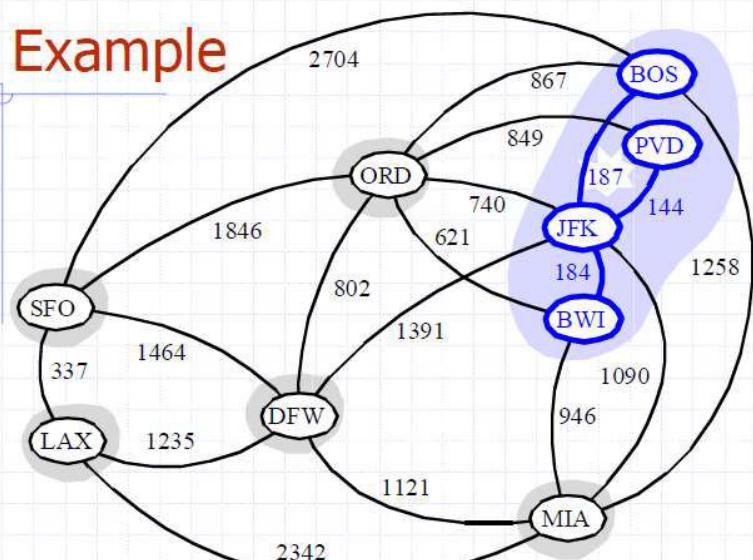
## Example



Page 59

# Minimum Spanning Tree

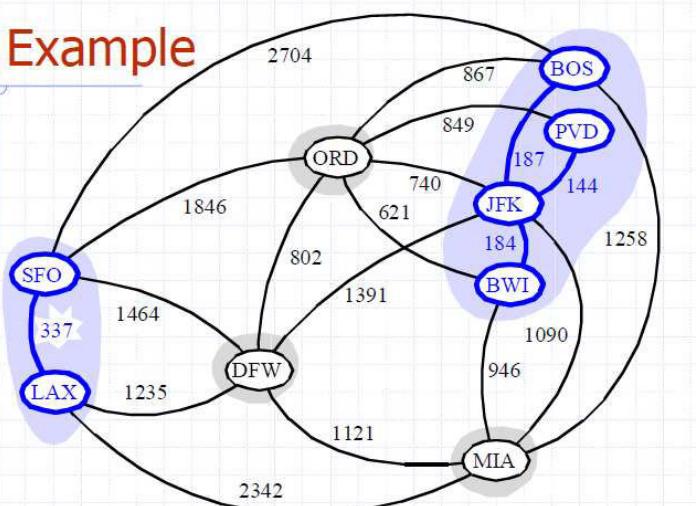
## Example



Page 61

# Minimum Spanning Tree

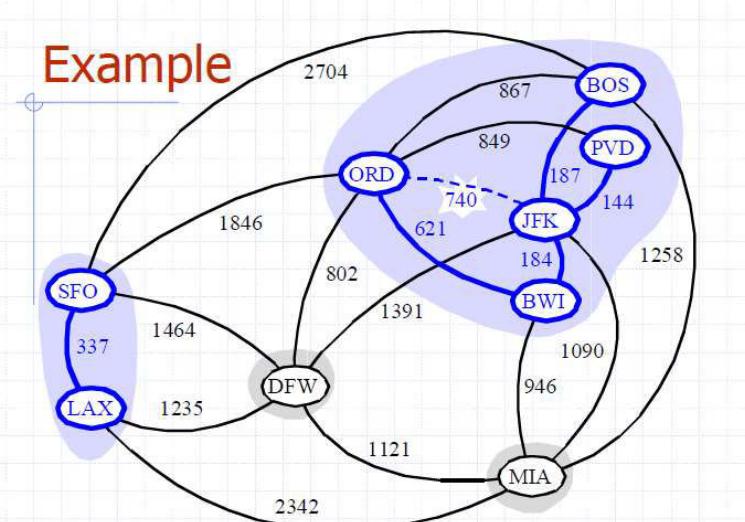
## Example



Page 62

# Minimum Spanning Tree

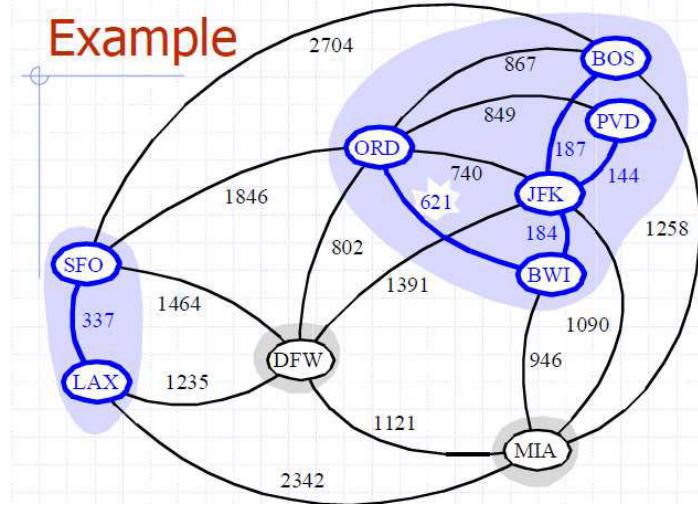
## Example



Page 64

# Minimum Spanning Tree

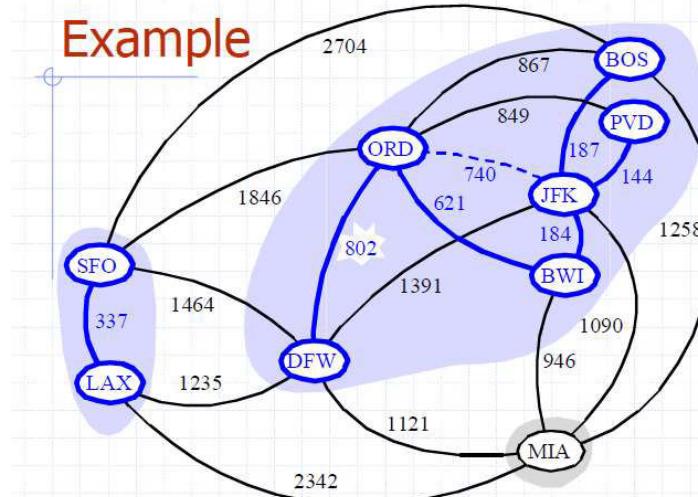
## Example



Page 63

# Minimum Spanning Tree

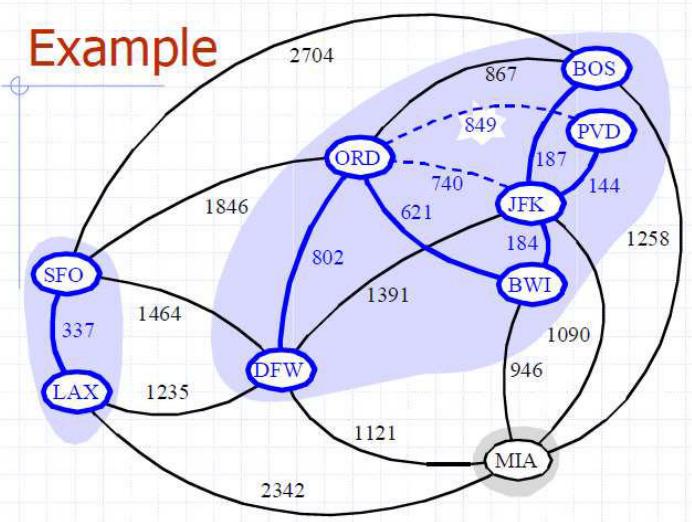
## Example



Page 65

# Minimum Spanning Tree

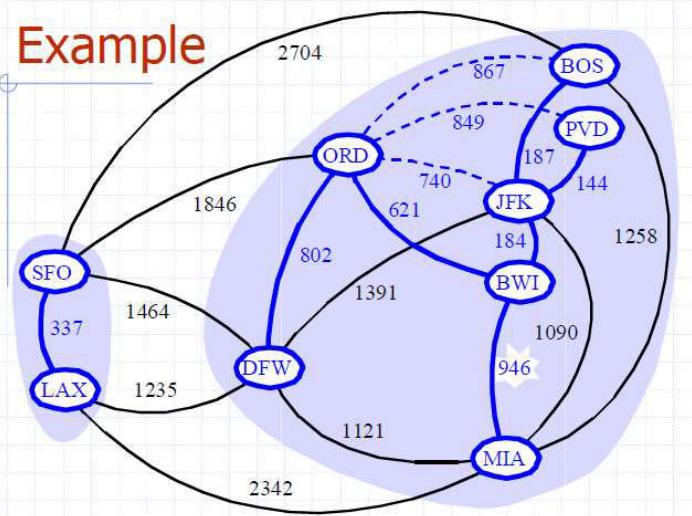
## Example



Page 66

# Minimum Spanning Tree

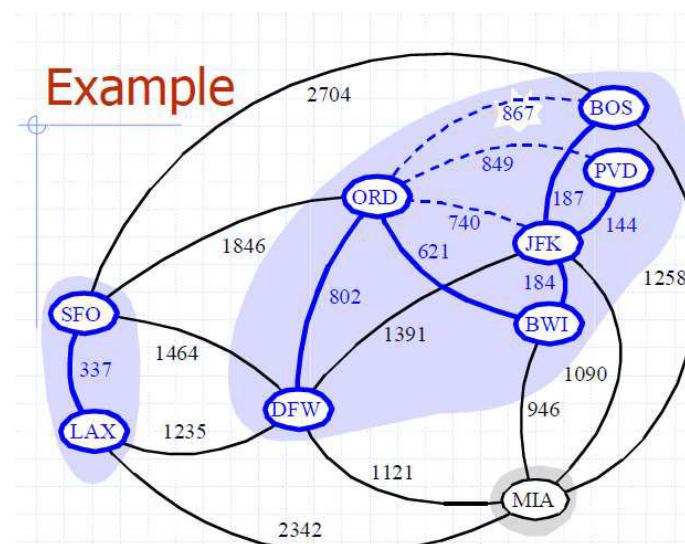
## Example



Page 68

# Minimum Spanning Tree

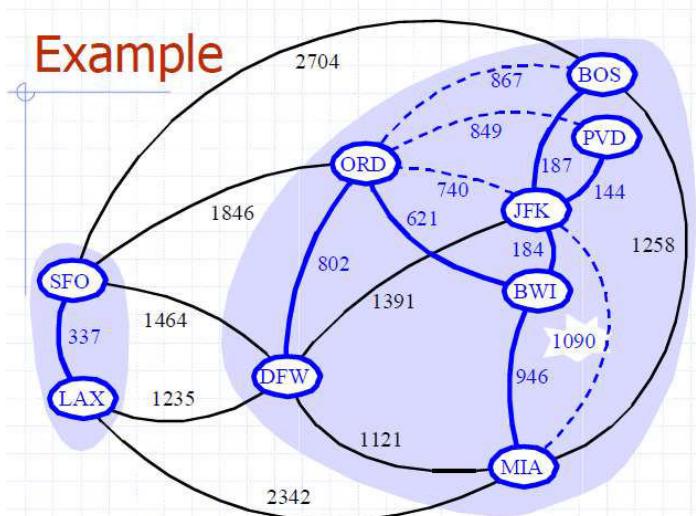
## Example



Page 67

# Minimum Spanning Tree

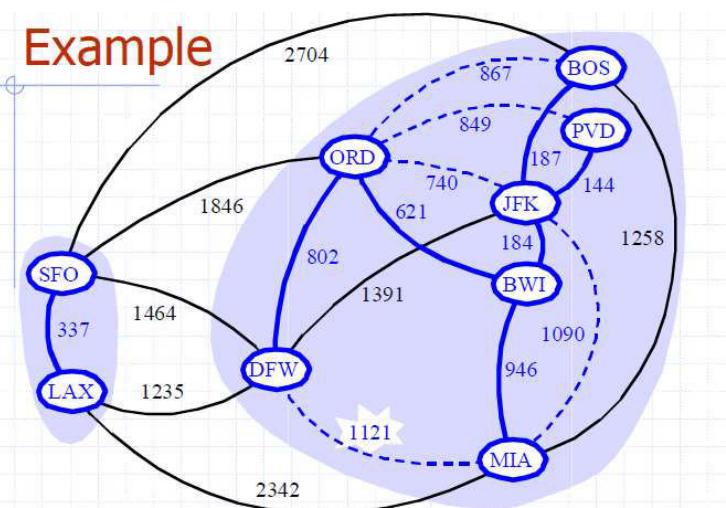
## Example



Page 69

# Minimum Spanning Tree

## Example



Page 70

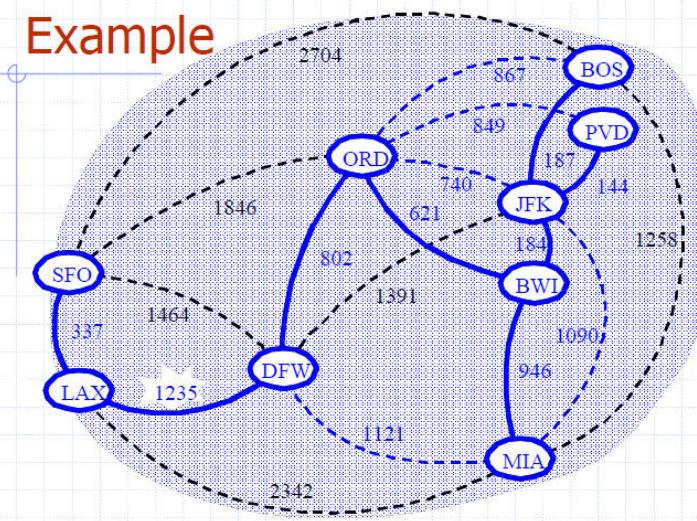
## PRIMS'S Vs KRUSKAL'S ALGORITHM

- **KRUSKAL's**
- Select the shortest edge in a network
- Select the next shortest edge which does not create a cycle
- Repeat step 2 until all vertices have been connected
- Kruskal's begins with forest and merge into tree.
- **PRIM's**
- Select any vertex
- Select the shortest edge connected to that vertex
- Select the shortest edge connected to any vertex already connected
- Prim's always stays as a tree.

Page 72

# Minimum Spanning Tree

## Example



Page 71

## PRIMS'S Vs KRUSKAL'S ALGORITHM

- **KRUSKAL's**
- Can be used when graph is sparse(less edges)
- **PRIM's**
- Can be used if the graph has more edges.

Page 73

- **Network design.**

- *telephone, electrical, hydraulic, TV cable, computer, road*
- The standard application is to a problem like phone network design. You have a business with several offices; you want to lease phone lines to connect them up with each other; and the phone company charges different amounts of money to connect different pairs of cities. You want a set of lines that connects all your offices with a minimum total cost. It should be a spanning tree, since if a network isn't a tree you can always remove some edges and save money.

- **Taxonomy:**

- Taxonomy is the practice and science of classification

- **Feature extraction**

- In machine learning, pattern recognition and in image processing, feature extraction starts from an initial set of measured data and builds derived values (features) intended to be informative and non-redundant, facilitating the subsequent learning and generalization steps, and in some cases leading to better human interpretations
- When the input data to an algorithm is too large to be processed and it is suspected to be redundant (e.g. the same measurement in both feet and meters, or the repetitiveness of images presented as pixels), then it can be transformed into a reduced set of features (also named a feature vector). Determining a subset of the initial features is called feature selection.

- **Cluster analysis**

k clustering problem can be viewed as finding an MST and deleting the k-1 most expensive edges.

- **Image registration and segmentation**

- **Image segmentation** is the process of portioning image to components and its purpose is to decompose an image to significant and convenient regions and also extract a specific object from image: [Image segmentation strives to partition a digital image into regions of pixels with similar properties, e.g. homogeneity.](#)
- **Image registration** is the process of transforming different sets of data into one coordinate system. Data may be multiple photographs, data from different sensors, times, depths, or viewpoints. Registration is necessary in order to be able to compare or integrate the data obtained from these different measurements.

- Regionalization of socio-geographic areas, the grouping of areas into homogeneous, contiguous regions.

- Comparing ecotoxicology data.:

- Ecotoxicology is the study of the effects of toxic chemicals on biological organisms, especially at the population, community, ecosystem, and biosphere levels.

- Topological observability in power systems.

- Measuring homogeneity of two-dimensional materials.



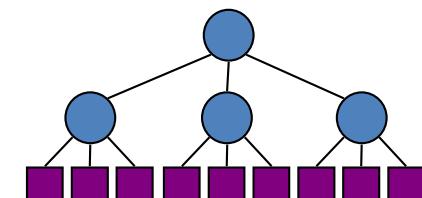
## PLAN

| Sessions(#) | List of Topic Title                                                                                                                                                                  | Text/Ref Book/external resource |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 11          | <b>Divide and Conquer</b> - Design Principles and Strategy, Analysing Divide and Conquer Algorithms, Integer Multiplication Problem<br><b>Sorting Problem</b> - Merge Sort Algorithm | T1: 5.2, 4.1, 4.3               |

The slide features the BITS Pilani Hyderabad Campus logo at the top left, which includes a circular emblem with a gear, a book, and a torch, surrounded by text in English and Marathi. To the right of the logo, the text "Data Structures and Algorithms Design" is displayed in large white letters. Below this, there is a photograph of the university's iconic clock tower against a clear blue sky.

## Divide-and-Conquer

- **Divide-and conquer** is a general algorithm design paradigm:
  - Divide: divide the input data  $S$  in two or more disjoint subsets  $S_1, S_2, \dots$
  - Recur: solve the sub problems recursively
  - Conquer: combine the solutions for  $S_1, S_2, \dots$ , into a solution for  $S$
- The base case for the recursion are sub problems of constant size
- Analysis can be done using **recurrence equations**



# Merge Sort

- Merge-sort on an input sequence  $S$  with  $n$  elements consists of three steps:
  - Divide:** partition  $S$  into two sequences  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  of about  $n/2$  elements each
  - Recur:** recursively sort  $S_1$  and  $S_2$
  - Conquer:** merge  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  into a unique sorted sequence

Page 5

# Merge Sort

*MergeSort(arr[], l, r)*

*If r > l*

*1. Find the middle point to divide the array into two halves:*

*middle m = (l+r)/2*

*2. Call MergeSort for first half:*

*Call mergeSort(arr, l, m)*

*3. Call MergeSort for second half:*

*Call mergeSort(arr, m+1, r)*

*4. Merge the two halves sorted in step 2 and 3*

*Call merge(arr, l, m, r)*

Page 7

# Merge Sort

|    |    |    |   |   |    |    |
|----|----|----|---|---|----|----|
| 38 | 27 | 43 | 3 | 9 | 82 | 10 |
|----|----|----|---|---|----|----|

Page 6

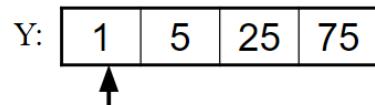
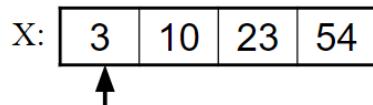
# Merge Sort

- The conquer step of merge-sort consists of merging two sorted sequences  $A$  and  $B$  into a sorted sequence  $S$  containing the union of the elements of  $A$  and  $B$
- Merging two sorted sequences, each with  $n/2$  elements and implemented by means of a doubly linked list, takes  $O(n)$  time

Page 8

# Merge Sort

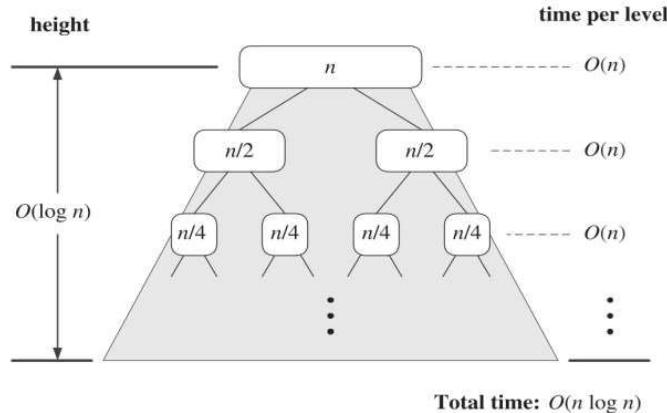
## Merging two sorted lists, merge(A,B)



Result: 

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|

## Analysis of Merge-Sort



# Merge Sort

## Algorithm *merge(A, B)*

**Input** sequences *A* and *B* with  $n/2$  elements each

**Output** sorted sequence of  $A \cup B$

*S*  $\leftarrow$  empty sequence

**while**  $\neg A.isEmpty() \wedge \neg B.isEmpty()$

**if** *A.first().element()* < *B.first().element()*

*S.insertLast(A.remove(A.first()))*

**else**

*S.insertLast(B.remove(B.first()))*

**while**  $\neg A.isEmpty()$

*S.insertLast(A.remove(A.first()))*

**while**  $\neg B.isEmpty()$

*S.insertLast(B.remove(B.first()))*

**return** *S*

## Analysis of Merge-Sort

- An execution of merge-sort is depicted by a binary tree
- The height  $h$  of the merge-sort tree is  $O(\log n)$ 
  - at each recursive call we divide in half the sequence,
- The overall amount or work done at the nodes of depth  $i$  is  $O(n)$ 
  - we partition and merge  $2^i$  sequences of size  $n/2^i$
  - we make  $2^{i+1}$  recursive calls
- Thus, the total running time of merge-sort is  $O(n \log n)$

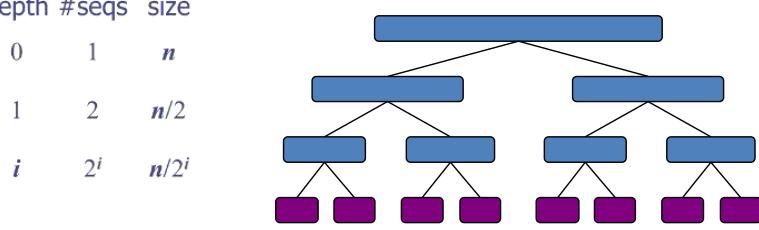
depth #seqs size

0 1  $n$

1 2  $n/2$

$i$   $2^i$   $n/2^i$

... ... ...



## Master Method

- Many divide-and-conquer recurrence equations have the form:

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} c & \text{if } n < d \\ aT(n/b) + f(n) & \text{if } n \geq d \end{cases}$$

- The Master Theorem:

- if  $f(n)$  is  $O(n^{\log_b a - \varepsilon})$ , then  $T(n)$  is  $\Theta(n^{\log_b a})$
- if  $f(n)$  is  $\Theta(n^{\log_b a} \log^k n)$ , then  $T(n)$  is  $\Theta(n^{\log_b a} \log^{k+1} n)$
- if  $f(n)$  is  $\Omega(n^{\log_b a + \varepsilon})$ , then  $T(n)$  is  $\Theta(f(n))$ ,  
provided  $af(n/b) \leq \delta f(n)$  for some  $\delta < 1$ .

## Merge-Sort Properties

- Not Adaptive** : Running time doesn't change with data pattern
  - algorithm will re-order every single item in the list even if it is already sorted.
- Stable/ Unstable** : Both implementations are possible .
- Not Incremental** : Does not sort one by one element in each pass.
- Not online** : Need all data to be in memory at the time of sorting.
- Not in place** : It need  $O(n)$  extra space to sort two sub list of size( $n/2$ ).

## Master Method

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} b & \text{if } n < 2 \\ 2T(n/2) + bn & \text{if } n \geq 2 \end{cases}$$

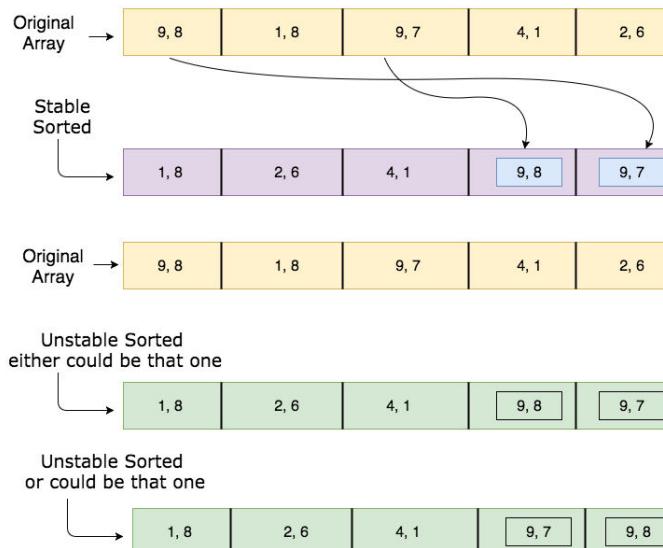
Using Master method to solve

- Case 2 applies
- $T(n) = \Theta(n \log n)$

## Merge-Sort Properties

- Merge sort is a stable sort**
- A sorting algorithm is said to be **stable** if two objects with equal keys appear in the same order in sorted output as they appear in the input array to be sorted

## Merge-Sort Properties



## Merge-Sort Applications

- Merge sort is often the best choice for sorting a linked list.**
  - Linked list nodes may not be adjacent in memory. In linked list, we can insert items in the end in  $O(1)$  extra space and  $O(1)$  time.
  - In linked list to access  $i$ 'th index, we have to travel each and every node from the head to  $i$ 'th node as we don't have continuous block of memory. Merge sort accesses data sequentially and the need of random access is low.

## Merge-Sort Applications

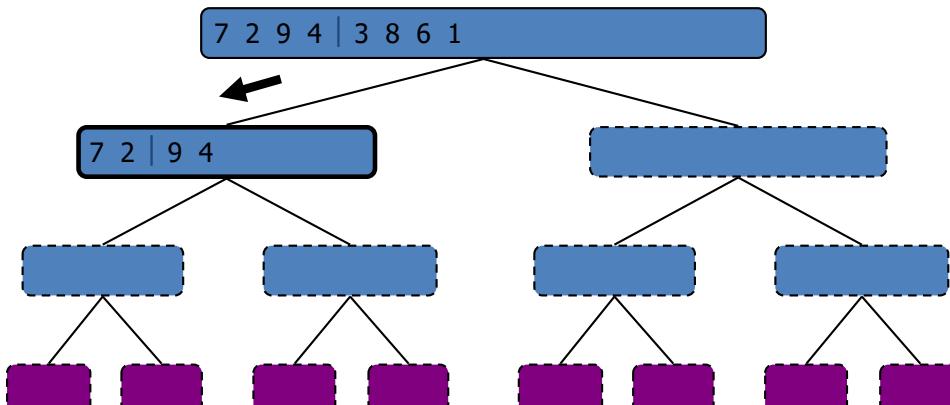
- External Sorting:**
  - External sorting is a class of sorting algorithms that can handle massive amounts of data. External sorting is required when the data being sorted do not fit into the main memory of a computing device (usually RAM) and instead they must reside in the slower external memory, usually a hard disk drive.
  - External merge sort uses a hybrid sort-merge strategy. In the sorting phase, chunks of data small enough to fit in main memory are read, sorted, and written out to a temporary file. In the merge phase, the sorted subfiles are combined into a single larger file.

## Merge-Sort Applications

- In Java, the `Arrays.sort()` methods use merge sort
- The Linux kernel uses merge sort for its linked lists
- Python uses Timsort, another tuned hybrid of merge sort and insertion sort, that has become the standard sort algorithm in Java SE 7

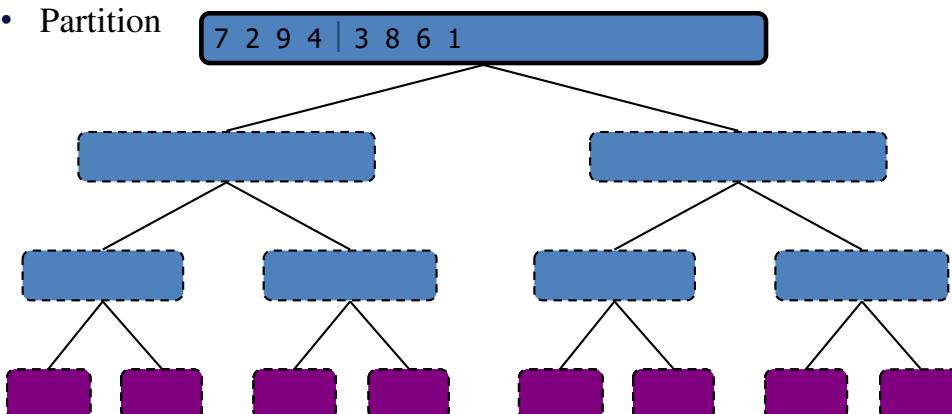
## Execution Example (cont.)

- Recursive call, partition



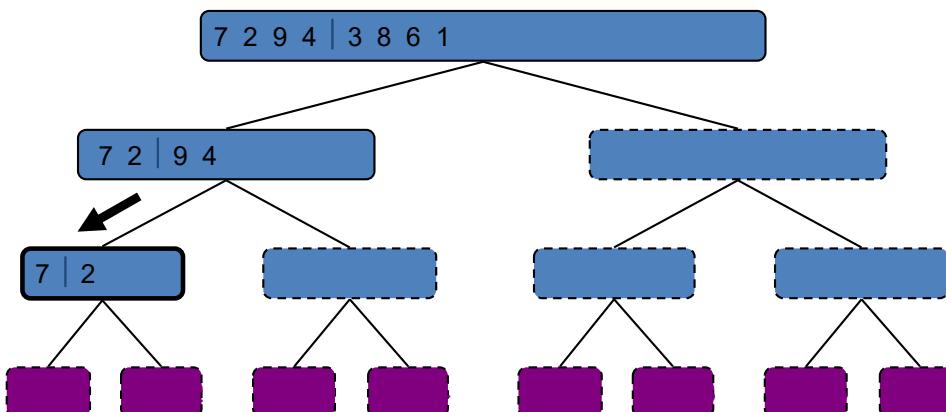
## Execution Example-1

- Partition



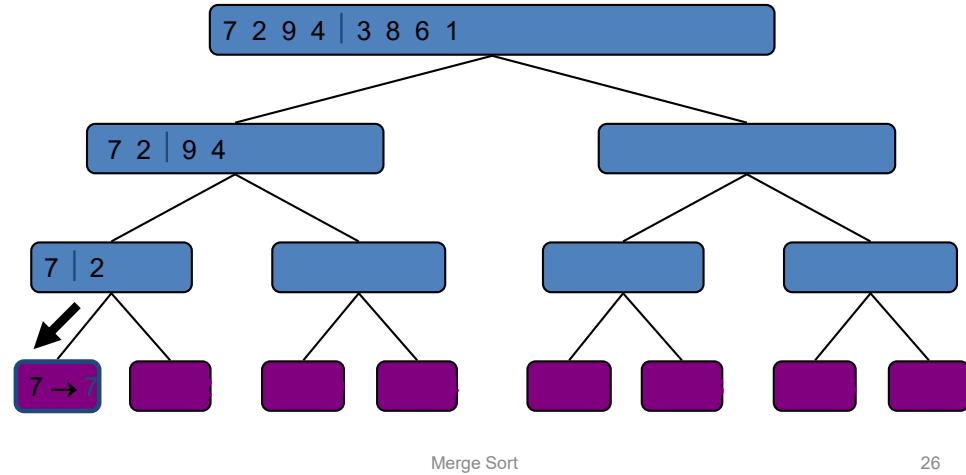
## Execution Example (cont.)

- Recursive call, partition



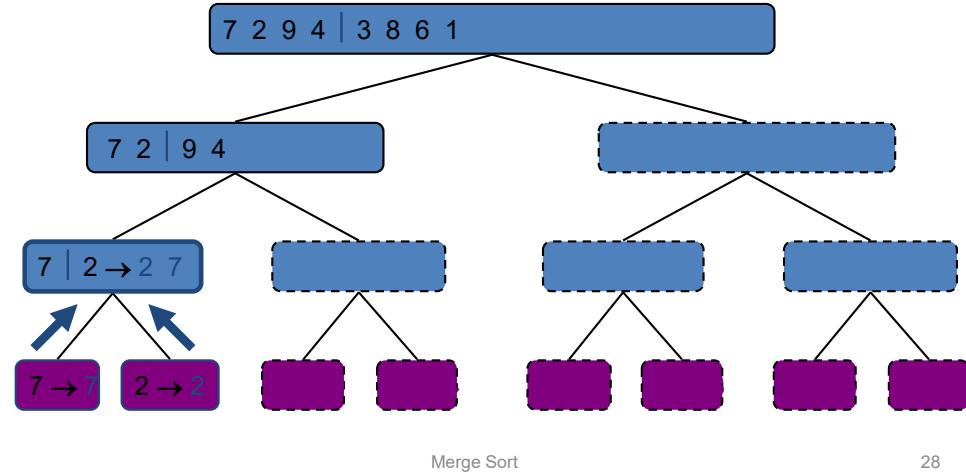
## Execution Example (cont.)

- Recursive call, base case



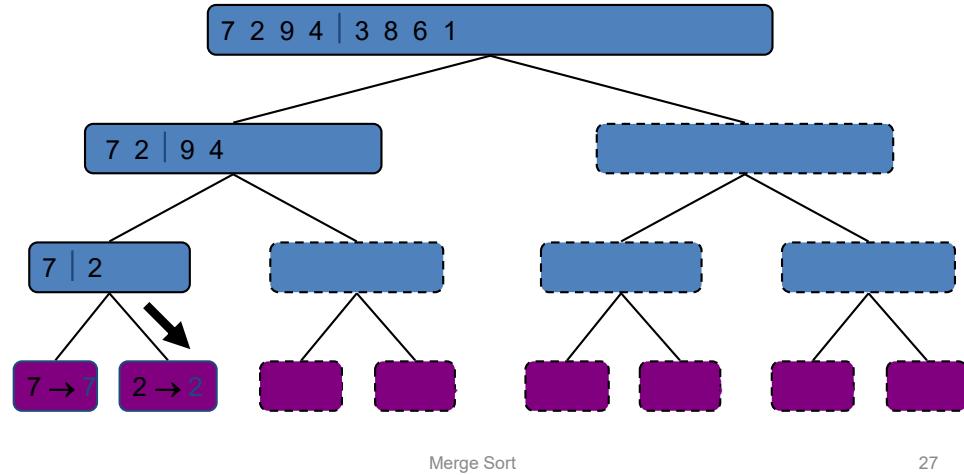
## Execution Example (cont.)

- Merge



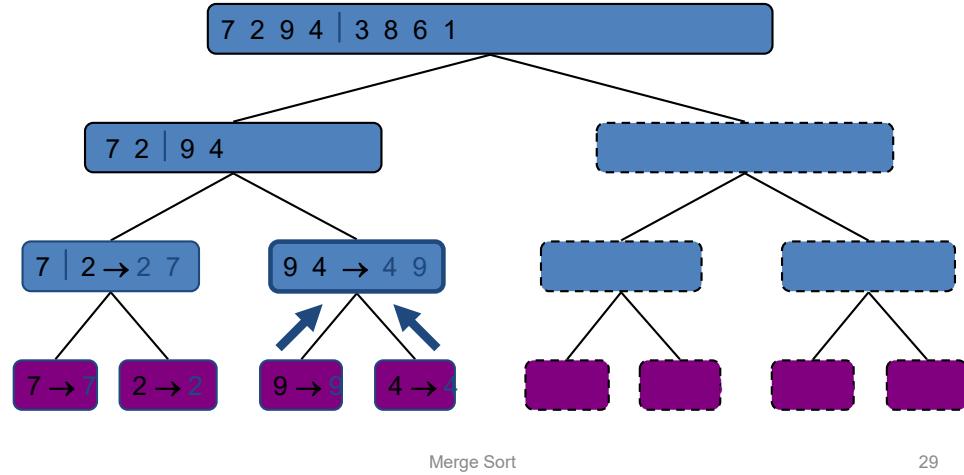
## Execution Example (cont.)

- Recursive call, base case



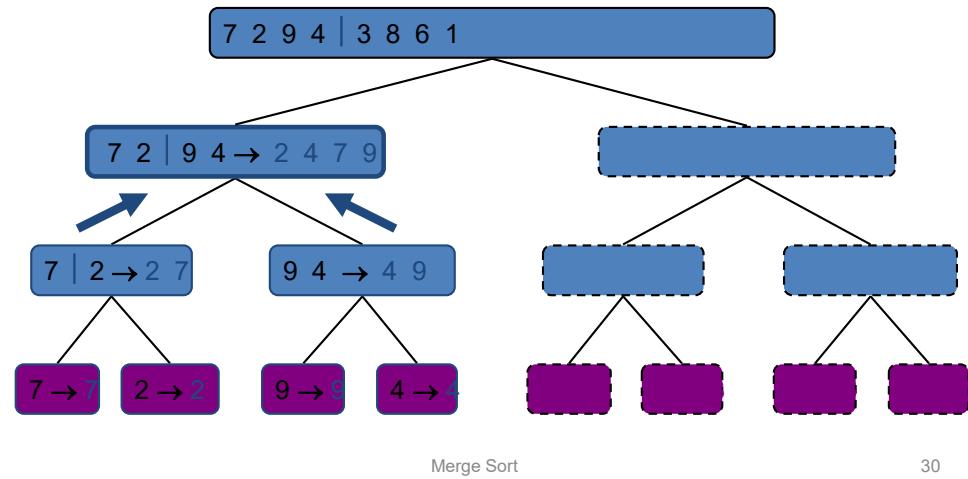
## Execution Example (cont.)

- Recursive call, ..., base case, merge



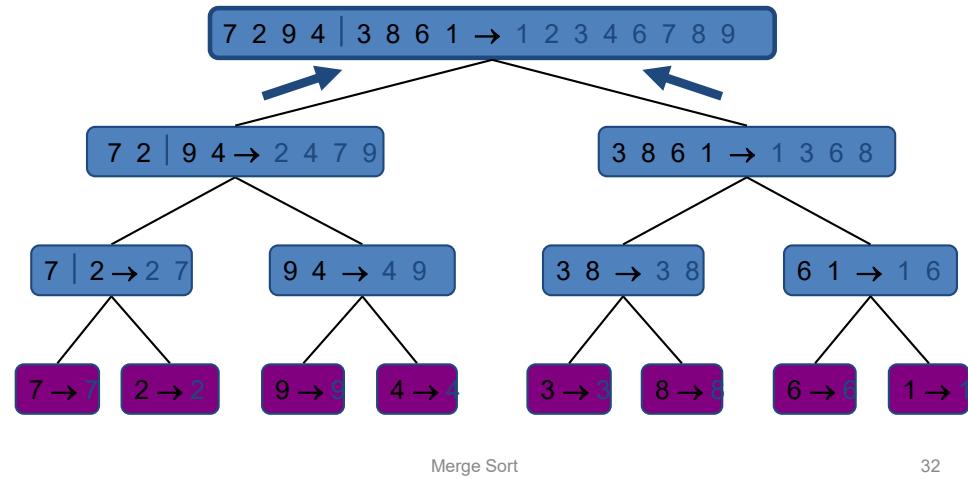
## Execution Example (cont.)

- Merge



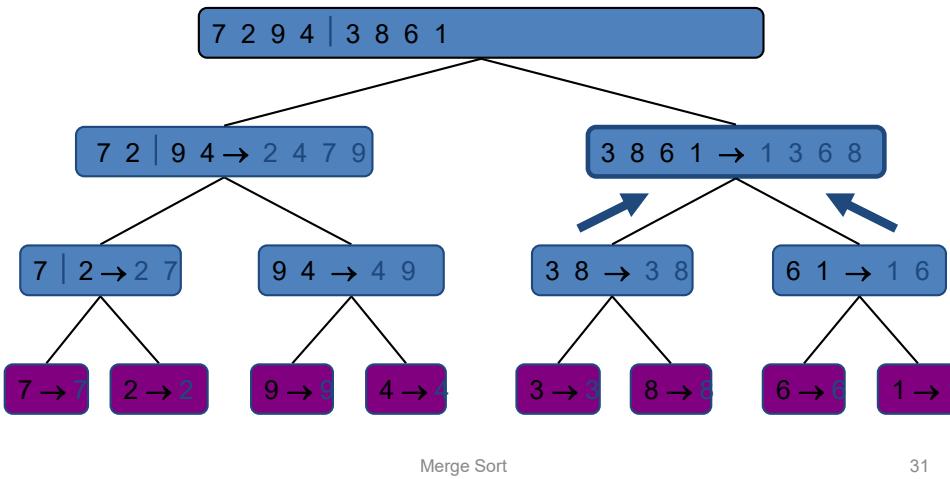
## Execution Example (cont.)

- Merge

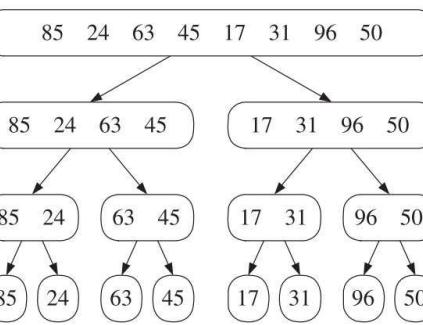


## Execution Example (cont.)

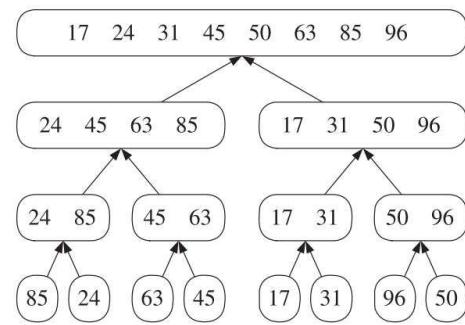
- Recursive call, ..., merge, merge



## Merge sort - Example -2



Input sequence processed at each node - Divide



Output sequence generated at each node - Conquer



## Integer Multiplication

- The problem of multiplying big integers, that is, integers represented by a large number of bits that cannot be handled directly by the arithmetic unit of a single processor.



## Integer Multiplication

- Given two big integers I and J represented with n bits each, we can easily compute  $I + J$  and  $I - J$  in  $O(n)$  time.

## Integer Multiplication



- Efficiently computing the product  $I \cdot J$  using the common grade-school algorithm requires, however,  $O(n^2)$  time.

Page 38

## Integer Multiplication-Divide and Conquer



- Divide and Conquer to Multiply - Attempt- #1

$$I = I_h 2^{n/2} + I_l$$

$$J = J_h 2^{n/2} + J_l$$

Page 40

## Integer Multiplication-Divide and Conquer



- Divide and Conquer to Multiply - Attempt- #1
  - Let us represent I and J as below.
    - Attempt to rewrite the multiplication of I and J in terms of their components.
    - That is, this gives raise to recursion

Page 39

## Integer Multiplication-Divide and Conquer



- We can then define  $I * J$  by multiplying the parts and adding:

$$I = I_h 2^{n/2} + I_l$$

$$J = J_h 2^{n/2} + J_l$$

$$\begin{aligned} I * J &= (I_h 2^{n/2} + I_l) * (J_h 2^{n/2} + J_l) \\ &= I_h J_h 2^n + I_h J_l 2^{n/2} + I_l J_h 2^{n/2} + I_l J_l \end{aligned}$$

Page 41

# Integer Multiplication-Divide and Conquer

$$\begin{aligned} I * J &= (I_h 2^{n/2} + I_l) * (J_h 2^{n/2} + J_l) \\ &= I_h J_h 2^n + I_h J_l 2^{n/2} + I_l J_h 2^{n/2} + I_l J_l \end{aligned}$$

Multiplication of 2 n bit numbers is now broken down into

- 4 Multiplications of n/2 bit numbers
- Plus 3 Additions

*Multiplying any binary numbers by any arbitrary power of 2 is just a shift operation of bits*

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= 4T(n/2) + n, \\ \text{implies } T(n) &\text{ is } O(n^2) \end{aligned}$$

Page 42

# Integer Multiplication-Divide and Conquer

- Let us try to rewrite the following with 3 multiplications

$$I \cdot J = I_h J_h 2^n + I_h J_l 2^{n/2} + I_l J_h 2^{n/2} + I_l J_l$$

- Let  $P1 = (I_h + I_l) * (J_h + J_l)$

$$= I_h J_h + I_h J_l + I_l J_h + I_l J_l$$

$$P2 = I_h J_h$$

$$P3 = I_l J_l$$

$$P1 - P2 - P3 = I_h J_l + I_l J_h$$

Now

$$I * J = P2 * 2^n + [P1 - P2 - P3] * 2^{n/2} + P3$$

Page 44

# Integer Multiplication-Divide and Conquer

- $O(n^2)$  is not an improvement indeed.
  - But we are able to multiply large integers in terms of smaller ones, now !
- We need to compute the following with lesser # of multiplication

$$I \cdot J = I_h J_h 2^n + I_h J_l 2^{n/2} + I_l J_h 2^{n/2} + I_l J_l$$

Page 43

# Integer Multiplication-Divide and Conquer

- Let us try to rewrite the following with 3 multiplications

$$I \cdot J = I_h J_h 2^n + I_h J_l 2^{n/2} + I_l J_h 2^{n/2} + I_l J_l$$

- Let  $P1 = (I_h + I_l) * (J_h + J_l)$

$$= I_h J_h + I_h J_l + I_l J_h + I_l J_l$$

$$P2 = I_h J_h$$

$$P3 = I_l J_l$$

$$P1 - P2 - P3 = I_h J_l + I_l J_h$$

$T(n) = 3T(n/2) + n$ ,  
By Master Theorem.  
**T(n) is  $O(n^{\log_2 3})$** ,  
Thus,  $T(n)$  is  $O(n^{1.585})$ .

Now

$$I * J = P2 * 2^n + [P1 - P2 - P3] * 2^{n/2} + P3$$

Page 45

## Algorithm

---

Input: Positive integers  $x$  and  $y$ , in binary  
Output: Their product

```
n = max(size of x, size of y)
if n = 1: return xy
```

```
x_L, x_R = leftmost ⌈n/2⌉, rightmost ⌈n/2⌉ bits of x
y_L, y_R = leftmost ⌈n/2⌉, rightmost ⌈n/2⌉ bits of y
```

```
P1 = multiply(x_L, y_L)
P2 = multiply(x_R, y_R)
P3 = multiply(x_L + x_R, y_L + y_R)
return P1 × 2n + (P3 - P1 - P2) × 2n/2 + P2
```

---

Page 46

## Example-Decimal

---

Page 48

## An Improved Integer Multiplication Algorithm

---

- Algorithm: Multiply two n-bit integers I and J.
- **O(n log n)**, by using a more complex divide-and-conquer algorithm called the Fast Fourier transform

---

Page 47

Page 49

# Application

- Multiplying big integers has applications to data security, where big integers are used in encryption schemes.
  - More specifically, some important cryptographic algorithms such as RSA critically depend on the fact that prime factorization of large numbers takes a long time. Basically you have a "public key" consisting of a product of two large primes used to encrypt a message, and a "secret key" consisting of those two primes used to decrypt the message. You can make the public key public, and everyone can use it to encrypt messages to you, but only you know the prime factors and can decrypt the messages. Everyone else would have to factor the number, which takes too long to be practical, given the current state of the art of number theory.

Page 50



## Data Structures and Algorithms Design

**BITS Pilani**  
Hyderabad Campus



**THANK YOU!**

**BITS Pilani**  
Hyderabad Campus

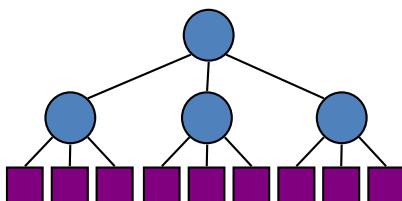


## PLAN

| Sessions(#) | List of Topic Title                                                                                                                                                                  | Text/Ref Book/external resource |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 11          | <b>Divide and Conquer</b> - Design Principles and Strategy, Analysing Divide and Conquer Algorithms, Integer Multiplication Problem<br><b>Sorting Problem</b> - Merge Sort Algorithm | T1: <b>5.2, 4.1, 4.3</b>        |

## Divide-and-Conquer

- **Divide-and conquer** is a general algorithm design paradigm:
  - Divide: divide the input data  $S$  in two or more disjoint subsets  $S_1, S_2, \dots$
  - Recur: solve the sub problems recursively
  - Conquer: combine the solutions for  $S_1, S_2, \dots$ , into a solution for  $S$
- The base case for the recursion are sub problems of constant size
- Analysis can be done using **recurrence equations**



Page 3

## Merge Sort

|    |    |    |   |   |    |    |
|----|----|----|---|---|----|----|
| 38 | 27 | 43 | 3 | 9 | 82 | 10 |
|----|----|----|---|---|----|----|

Page 6

## Merge Sort

- Merge-sort on an input sequence  $S$  with  $n$  elements consists of three steps:
  - **Divide**: partition  $S$  into two sequences  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  of about  $n/2$  elements each
  - **Recur**: recursively sort  $S_1$  and  $S_2$
  - **Conquer**: merge  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  into a unique sorted sequence

Page 5

## Merge Sort

*MergeSort(arr[], l, r)*

*If r > l*

1. *Find the middle point to divide the array into two halves:*  
*middle m = (l+r)/2*
2. *Call MergeSort for first half:*  
*Call mergeSort(arr, l, m)*
3. *Call MergeSort for second half:*  
*Call mergeSort(arr, m+1, r)*
4. *Merge the two halves sorted in step 2 and 3*  
*Call merge(arr, l, m, r)*

Page 7

# Merge Sort

- The conquer step of merge-sort consists of merging two sorted sequences  $A$  and  $B$  into a sorted sequence  $S$  containing the union of the elements of  $A$  and  $B$
- Merging two sorted sequences, each with  $n/2$  elements and implemented by means of a doubly linked list, takes  $O(n)$  time

Page 8

# Merge Sort

## Algorithm $\text{merge}(A, B)$

**Input** sequences  $A$  and  $B$  with  $n/2$  elements each

**Output** sorted sequence of  $A \cup B$

```

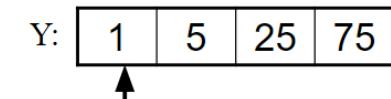
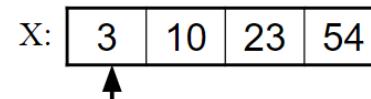
 $S \leftarrow$  empty sequence
while  $\neg A.\text{isEmpty}() \wedge \neg B.\text{isEmpty}()$ 
  if  $A.\text{first}().\text{element}() < B.\text{first}().\text{element}()$ 
     $S.\text{insertLast}(A.\text{remove}(A.\text{first}()))$ 
  else
     $S.\text{insertLast}(B.\text{remove}(B.\text{first}()))$ 
while  $\neg A.\text{isEmpty}()$            $S.\text{insertLast}(A.\text{remove}(A.\text{first}()))$ 
while  $\neg B.\text{isEmpty}()$            $S.\text{insertLast}(B.\text{remove}(B.\text{first}()))$ 
return  $S$ 

```

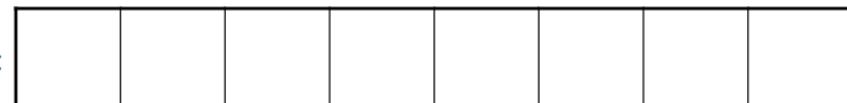
Page 10

# Merge Sort

## Merging two sorted lists, $\text{merge}(A, B)$

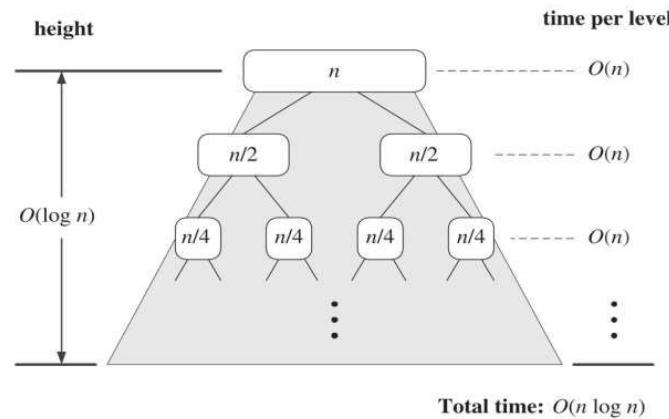


Result:



Page 9

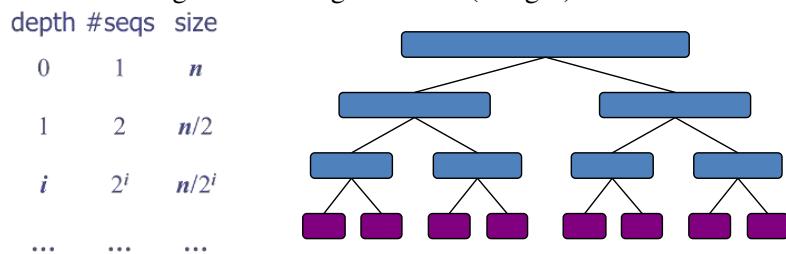
# Analysis of Merge-Sort



Page 11

## Analysis of Merge-Sort

- An execution of merge-sort is depicted by a binary tree
- The height  $h$  of the merge-sort tree is  $O(\log n)$ 
  - at each recursive call we divide in half the sequence,
- The overall amount or work done at the nodes of depth  $i$  is  $O(n)$ 
  - we partition and merge  $2^i$  sequences of size  $n/2^i$
  - we make  $2^{i+1}$  recursive calls
- Thus, the total running time of merge-sort is  $O(n \log n)$



Page 12

## Master Method

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} b & \text{if } n < 2 \\ 2T(n/2) + bn & \text{if } n \geq 2 \end{cases}$$

Using Master method to solve

- Case 2 applies
- $T(n)=\Theta(n \log n)$

Page 14

## Master Method

- Many divide-and-conquer recurrence equations have the form:

$$T(n) = \begin{cases} c & \text{if } n < d \\ aT(n/b) + f(n) & \text{if } n \geq d \end{cases}$$

- The Master Theorem:

- if  $f(n)$  is  $O(n^{\log_b a - \varepsilon})$ , then  $T(n)$  is  $\Theta(n^{\log_b a})$
- if  $f(n)$  is  $\Theta(n^{\log_b a} \log^k n)$ , then  $T(n)$  is  $\Theta(n^{\log_b a} \log^{k+1} n)$
- if  $f(n)$  is  $\Omega(n^{\log_b a + \varepsilon})$ , then  $T(n)$  is  $\Theta(f(n))$ , provided  $af(n/b) \leq \delta f(n)$  for some  $\delta < 1$ .

Page 13

## Merge-Sort Properties

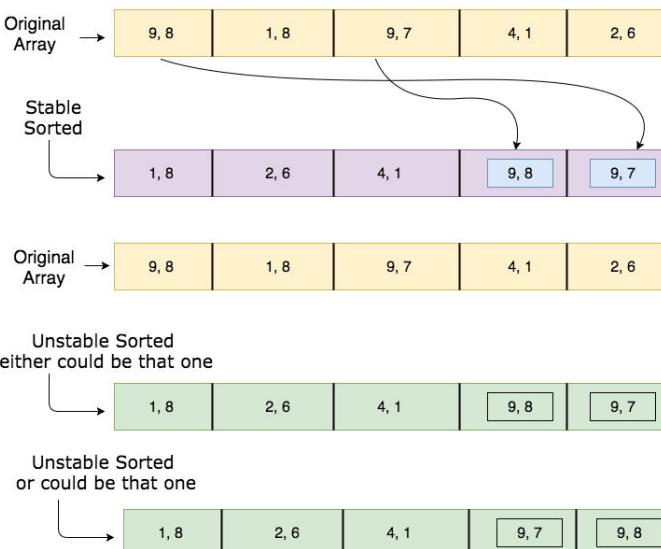
- Not Adaptive** : Running time doesn't change with data pattern
  - algorithm will re-order every single item in the list even if it is already sorted.
- Stable/ Unstable** : Both implementations are possible .
- Not Incremental** : Does not sort one by one element in each pass.
- Not online** : Need all data to be in memory at the time of sorting.
- Not in place** : It need  $O(n)$  extra space to sort two sub list of size( $n/2$ ).

Page 15

## Merge-Sort Properties

- **Merge sort is a stable sort**
- A sorting algorithm is said to be **stable** if two objects with equal keys appear in the same order in sorted output as they appear in the input array to be sorted

## Merge-Sort Properties



## Merge-Sort Applications

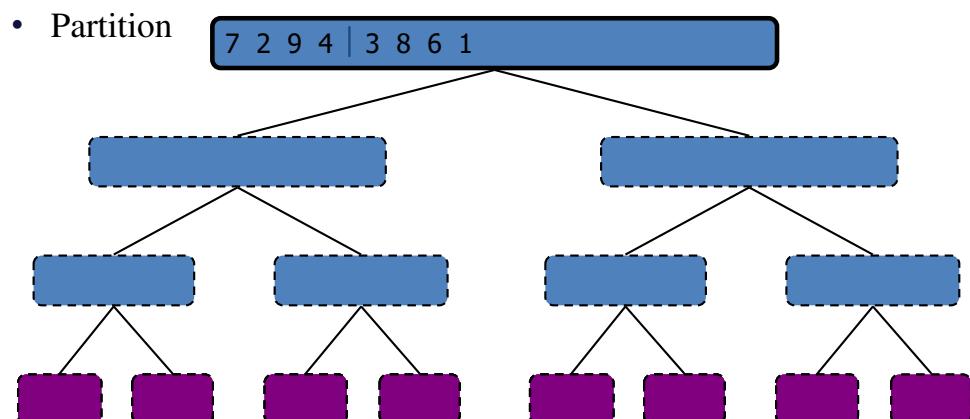
- **Merge sort is often the best choice for sorting a linked list.**
  - Linked list nodes may not be adjacent in memory. In linked list, we can insert items in the end in  $O(1)$  extra space and  $O(1)$  time.
  - In linked list to access  $i$ 'th index, we have to travel each and every node from the head to  $i$ 'th node as we don't have continuous block of memory. Merge sort accesses data sequentially and the need of random access is low.

- **External Sorting:**

- External sorting is a class of sorting algorithms that can handle massive amounts of data. External sorting is required when the data being sorted do not fit into the main memory of a computing device (usually RAM) and instead they must reside in the slower external memory, usually a hard disk drive.
- External merge sort uses a hybrid sort-merge strategy. In the sorting phase, chunks of data small enough to fit in main memory are read, sorted, and written out to a temporary file. In the merge phase, the sorted subfiles are combined into a single larger file.

## Execution Example-1

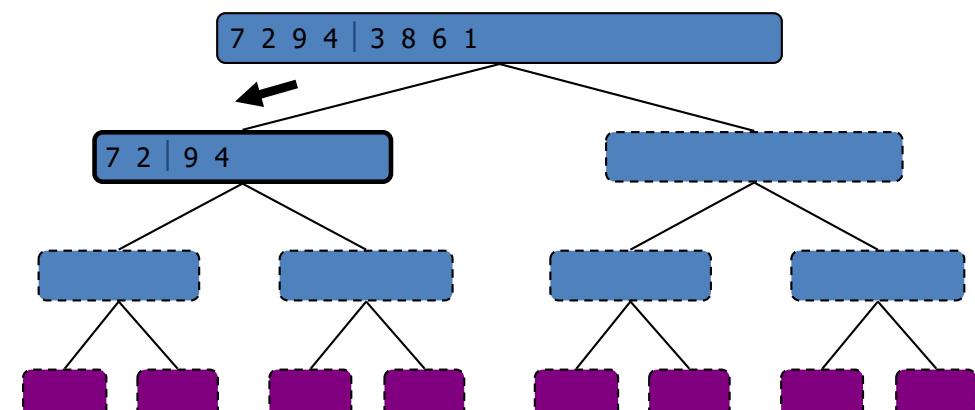
- Partition



- In Java, the Arrays.sort() methods use merge sort
- The Linux kernel uses merge sort for its linked lists
- Python uses Timsort, another tuned hybrid of merge sort and insertion sort, that has become the standard sort algorithm in Java SE 7

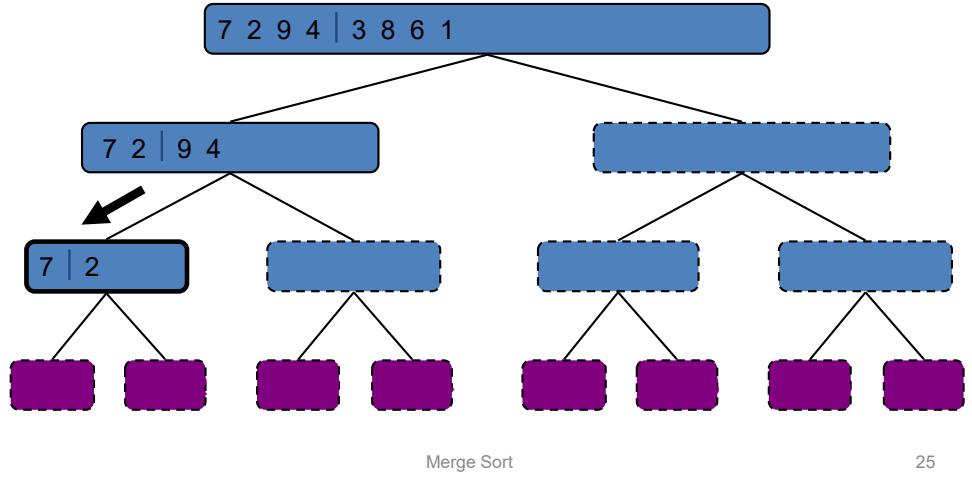
## Execution Example (cont.)

- Recursive call, partition



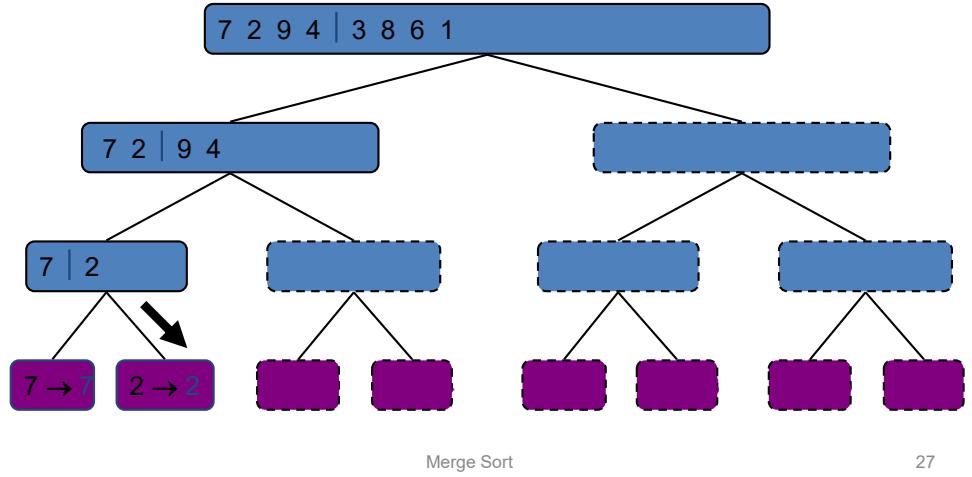
## Execution Example (cont.)

- Recursive call, partition



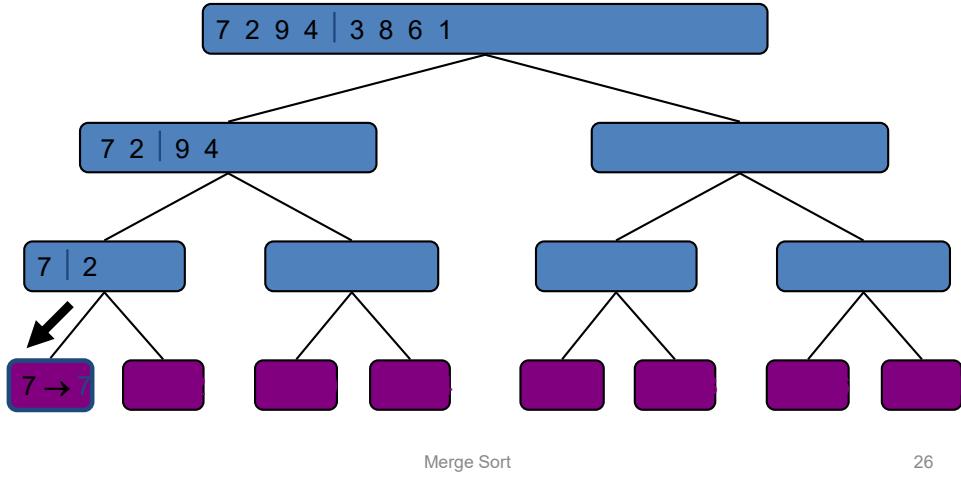
## Execution Example (cont.)

- Recursive call, base case



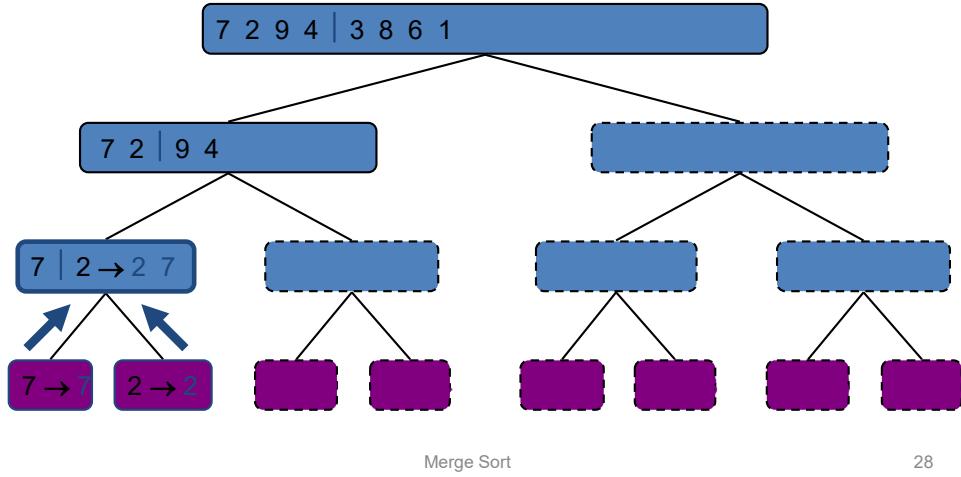
## Execution Example (cont.)

- Recursive call, base case



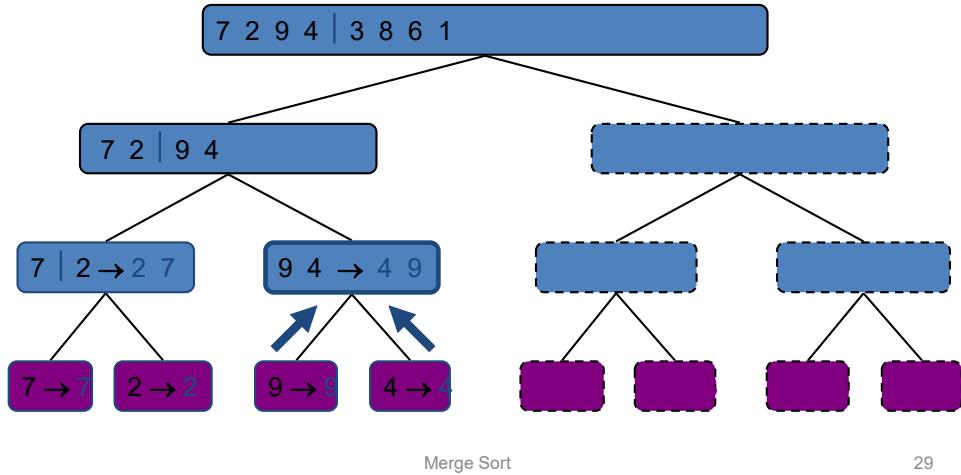
## Execution Example (cont.)

- Merge



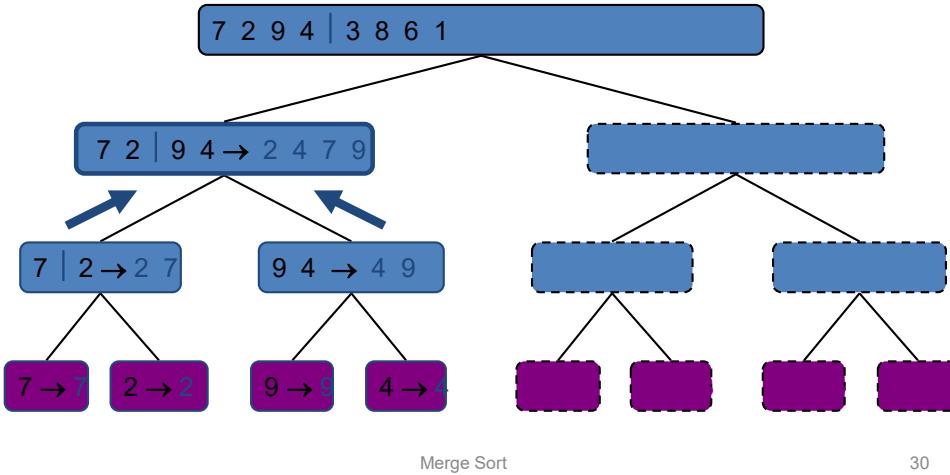
## Execution Example (cont.)

- Recursive call, ..., base case, merge



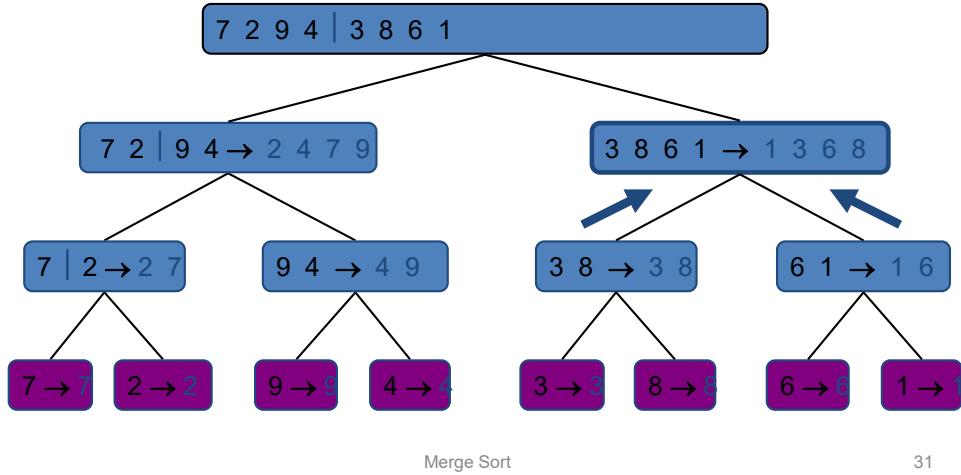
## Execution Example (cont.)

- Merge



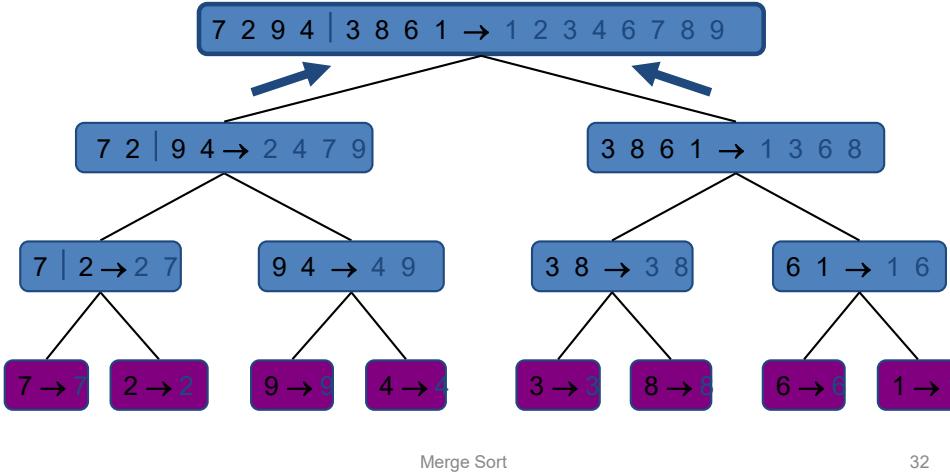
## Execution Example (cont.)

- Recursive call, ..., merge, merge

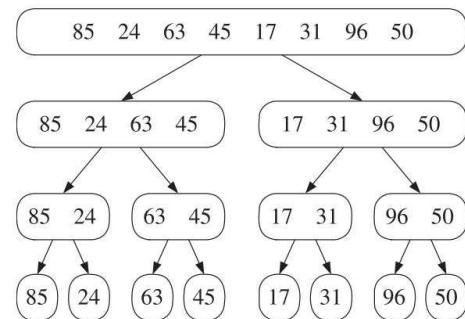


## Execution Example (cont.)

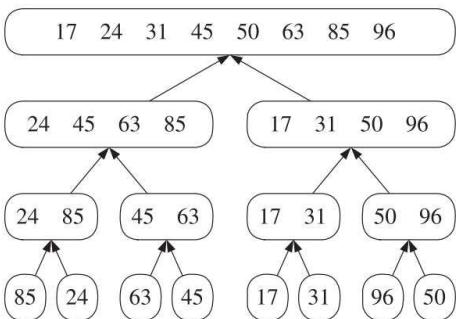
- Merge



## Merge sort - Example -2



Input sequence processed at each node - Divide



Output sequence generated at each node - Conquer

## Integer Multiplication



- The problem of multiplying big integers, that is, integers represented by a large number of bits that cannot be handled directly by the arithmetic unit of a single processor.

## Integer Multiplication



- Given two big integers I and J represented with n bits each, we can easily compute  $I + J$  and  $I - J$  in  $O(n)$  time.

Page 37



Page 39

## Integer Multiplication



- Efficiently computing the product  $I \cdot J$  using the common grade-school algorithm requires, however,  $O(n^2)$  time.

Page 38

## Integer Multiplication-Divide and Conquer



- Divide and Conquer to Multiply - Attempt- #1
  - Let us represent I and J as below.
    - Attempt to rewrite the multiplication of I and J in terms of their components.
      - That is, this gives raise to recursion

Page 40

# Integer Multiplication-Divide and Conquer

- Divide and Conquer to Multiply - Attempt- #1

$$I = I_h 2^{n/2} + I_l$$
$$J = J_h 2^{n/2} + J_l$$

Page 41

# Integer Multiplication-Divide and Conquer

$$I * J = (I_h 2^{n/2} + I_l) * (J_h 2^{n/2} + J_l)$$
$$= I_h J_h 2^n + I_h J_l 2^{n/2} + I_l J_h 2^{n/2} + I_l J_l$$

Multiplication of 2 n bit numbers is now broken down into

- 4 Multiplications of n/2 bit numbers
- Plus 3 Additions

*Multiplying any binary numbers by any arbitrary power of 2 is just a shift operation of bits*

$$T(n) = 4T(n/2) + n,$$

implies  $T(n)$  is  $O(n^2)$

Page 43

# Integer Multiplication-Divide and Conquer

- We can then define  $I * J$  by multiplying the parts and adding:

$$I = I_h 2^{n/2} + I_l$$

$$J = J_h 2^{n/2} + J_l$$

$$\begin{aligned}I * J &= (I_h 2^{n/2} + I_l) * (J_h 2^{n/2} + J_l) \\&= I_h J_h 2^n + I_h J_l 2^{n/2} + I_l J_h 2^{n/2} + I_l J_l\end{aligned}$$

Page 42

# Integer Multiplication-Divide and Conquer

- $O(n^2)$  is not an improvement indeed.
  - But we are able to multiply large integers in terms of smaller ones, now !
- We need to compute the following with lesser # of multiplication

$$I \cdot J = I_h J_h 2^n + I_h J_l 2^{n/2} + I_l J_h 2^{n/2} + I_l J_l$$

Page 44

# Integer Multiplication-Divide and Conquer

- Let us try to rewrite the following with 3 multiplications

$$I \cdot J = I_h J_h 2^n + I_l J_h 2^{n/2} + I_h J_l 2^{n/2} + I_l J_l$$

- Let  $P1 = (I_h + I_l) * (J_h + J_l)$   
 $= I_h J_h + I_h J_l + I_l J_h + I_l J_l$   
 $P2 = I_h J_h$   
 $P3 = I_l J_l$   
 $P1 - P2 - P3 = I_h J_l + I_l J_h$

Now

$$I \cdot J = P2 * 2^n + [P1 - P2 - P3] * 2^{n/2} + P3$$

## Algorithm

Input: Positive integers  $x$  and  $y$ , in binary  
Output: Their product

```
n = max(size of x, size of y)
if n = 1: return xy
```

```
x_L, x_R = leftmost [n/2], rightmost [n/2] bits of x
y_L, y_R = leftmost [n/2], rightmost [n/2] bits of y
```

```
P1 = multiply(x_L, y_L)
P2 = multiply(x_R, y_R)
P3 = multiply(x_L + x_R, y_L + y_R)
return P1 * 2^n + (P3 - P1 - P2) * 2^{n/2} + P2
```

# Integer Multiplication-Divide and Conquer

- Let us try to rewrite the following with 3 multiplications

$$I \cdot J = I_h J_h 2^n + I_l J_h 2^{n/2} + I_h J_l 2^{n/2} + I_l J_l$$

- Let  $P1 = (I_h + I_l) * (J_h + J_l)$   
 $= I_h J_h + I_h J_l + I_l J_h + I_l J_l$   
 $P2 = I_h J_h$   
 $P3 = I_l J_l$   
 $P1 - P2 - P3 = I_h J_l + I_l J_h$

$T(n) = 3T(n/2) + n$ ,  
By Master Theorem.  
**T(n) is  $O(n^{\log_2 3})$** ,  
Thus,  $T(n)$  is  $O(n^{1.585})$ .

Now

$$I \cdot J = P2 * 2^n + [P1 - P2 - P3] * 2^{n/2} + P3$$

## An Improved Integer Multiplication Algorithm

- Algorithm: Multiply two  $n$ -bit integers  $I$  and  $J$ .
- $O(n \log n)$** , by using a more complex divide-and-conquer algorithm called the Fast Fourier transform

## Example-Decimal

## Application

- Multiplying big integers has applications to data security, where big integers are used in encryption schemes.
  - More specifically, some important cryptographic algorithms such as RSA critically depend on the fact that prime factorization of large numbers takes a long time. Basically you have a "public key" consisting of a product of two large primes used to encrypt a message, and a "secret key" consisting of those two primes used to decrypt the message. You can make the public key public, and everyone can use it to encrypt messages to you, but only you know the prime factors and can decrypt the messages. Everyone else would have to factor the number, which takes too long to be practical, given the current state of the art of number theory.



**BITS Pilani**  
Hyderabad Campus

**THANK YOU!**



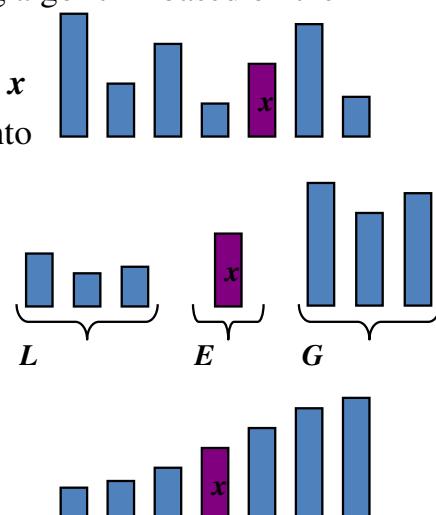
# Data Structures and Algorithms Design

**BITS** Pilani  
Hyderabad Campus



## Quick-Sort

- Quick-sort is a randomized sorting algorithm based on the divide-and-conquer paradigm:
  - Divide: pick a random element  $x$  (called pivot) and partition  $S$  into
  - $L$  elements less than  $x$
  - $E$  elements equal  $x$
  - $G$  elements greater than  $x$
- Recur: sort  $L$  and  $G$
- Conquer: join  $L$ ,  $E$  and  $G$



## ONLINE SESSION 11 -PLAN

| Sessions(#) | List of Topic Title   | Text/Ref Book/external resource |
|-------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| 12          | Quick Sort Algorithm. | T1: 5.2, 4.1, 4.3               |

## Quicksort

44 75 23 43 55 12 64 77 33



## Partition

- We partition an input sequence as follows:
  - We remove, in turn, each element  $y$  from  $S$  and
  - We insert  $y$  into  $L$ ,  $E$  or  $G$ , depending on the result of the comparison with the pivot  $x$
- Each insertion and removal is at the beginning or at the end of a sequence, and hence takes  $O(1)$  time
- Thus, the partition step of quick-sort takes  $O(n)$  time

## Partition

**Algorithm**  $\text{partition}(S, p)$

**Input** sequence  $S$ , position  $p$  of pivot

**Output** subsequences  $L$ ,  $E$ ,  $G$  of the elements of  $S$  less than, equal to, or greater than the pivot, resp.

$L, E, G \leftarrow$  empty sequences

$x \leftarrow S.\text{remove}(p)$

**while**  $\neg S.\text{isEmpty}()$

$y \leftarrow S.\text{remove}(S.\text{first}())$

**if**  $y < x$

$L.\text{insertLast}(y)$

**else if**  $y = x$

$E.\text{insertLast}(y)$

**else** {  $y > x$  }

$G.\text{insertLast}(y)$

**return**  $L, E, G$

## Algorithm inPlaceQuickSort( $S, a, b$ ):

**Input:** Sequence  $S$  of distinct elements; integers  $a$  and  $b$   
**Output:** Sequence  $S$  with elements originally from ranks from  $a$  to  $b$ , inclusive,  
sorted in nondecreasing order from ranks  $a$  to  $b$

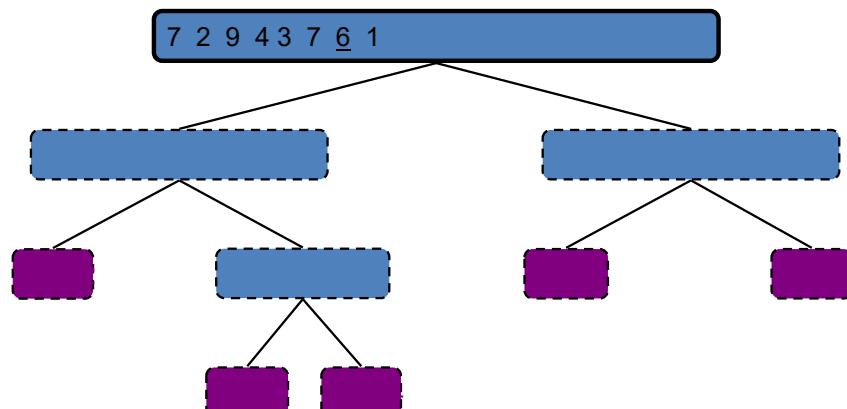
```

if  $a \geq b$  then return {empty subrange}
 $p \leftarrow S.\text{elemAtRank}(b)$  {pivot}
 $l \leftarrow a$  {will scan rightward}
 $r \leftarrow b - 1$  {will scan leftward}
while  $l \leq r$  do
    {find an element larger than the pivot}
    while  $l \leq r$  and  $S.\text{elemAtRank}(l) \leq p$  do
         $l \leftarrow l + 1$ 
    {find an element smaller than the pivot}
    while  $r \geq l$  and  $S.\text{elemAtRank}(r) \geq p$  do
         $r \leftarrow r - 1$ 
    if  $l < r$  then
         $S.\text{swapElements}(S.\text{atRank}(l), S.\text{atRank}(r))$ 
    {put the pivot into its final place}
     $S.\text{swapElements}(S.\text{atRank}(l), S.\text{atRank}(b))$ 
    {recursive calls}
    inPlaceQuickSort( $S, a, l - 1$ )
    inPlaceQuickSort( $S, l + 1, b$ )

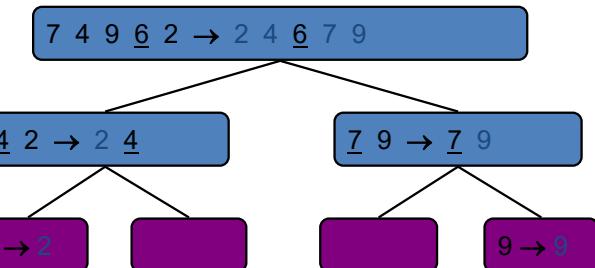
```

## Execution Example

- Pivot selection

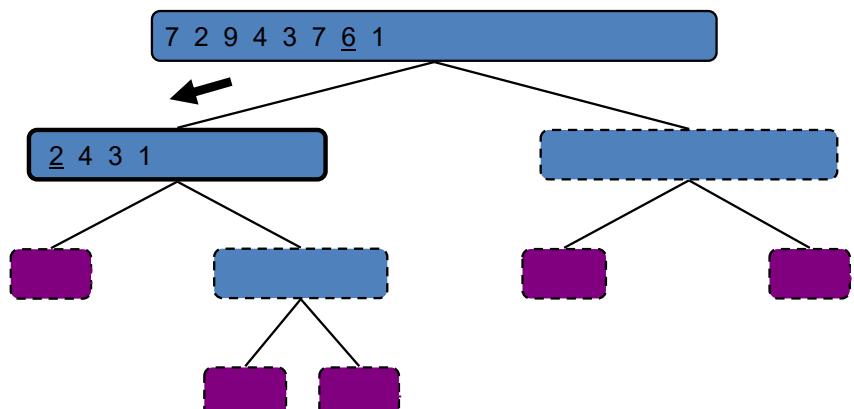


- An execution of quick-sort is depicted by a binary tree
  - Each node represents a recursive call of quick-sort and stores
    - Unsorted sequence before the execution and its pivot
    - Sorted sequence at the end of the execution
  - The root is the initial call
  - The leaves are calls on subsequences of size 0 or 1



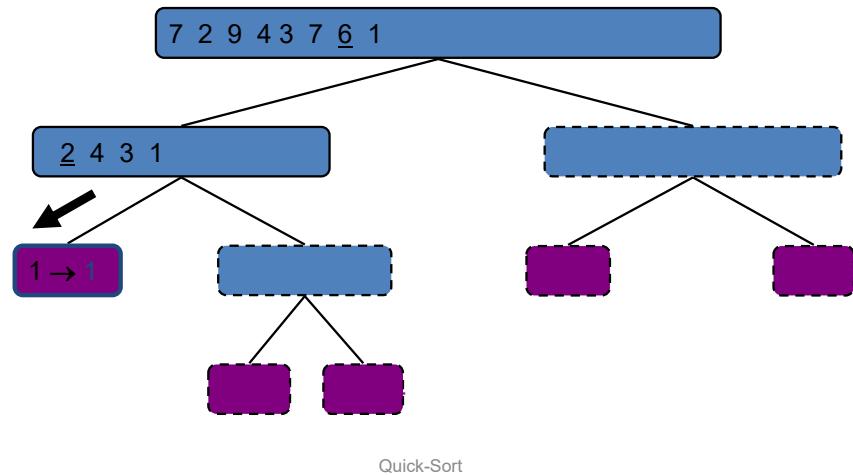
## Execution Example (cont.)

- Partition, recursive call, pivot selection



## Execution Example (cont.)

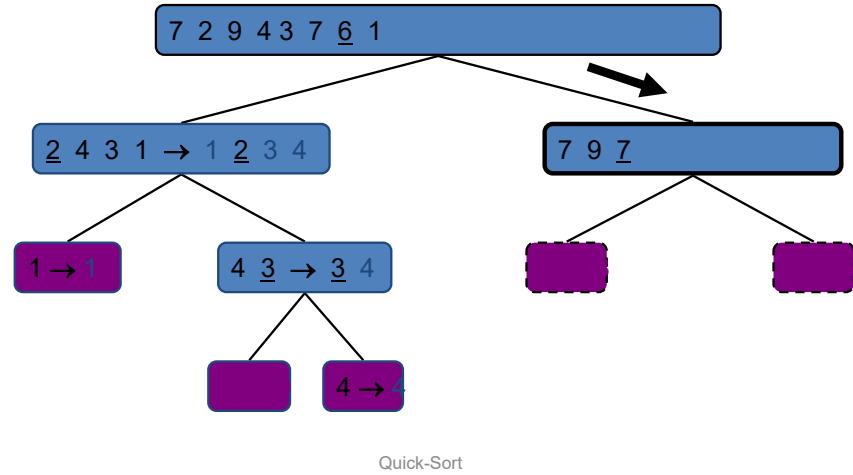
- Partition, recursive call, base case



13

## Execution Example (cont.)

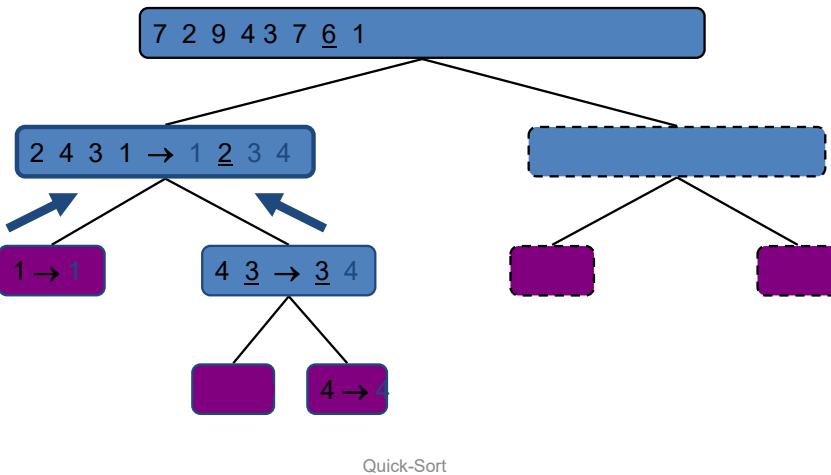
- Recursive call, pivot selection



15

## Execution Example (cont.)

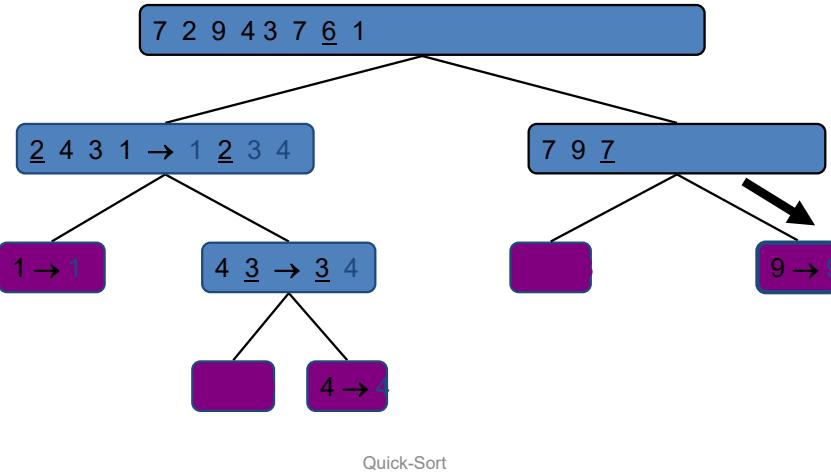
- Recursive call, ..., base case, join



14

## Execution Example (cont.)

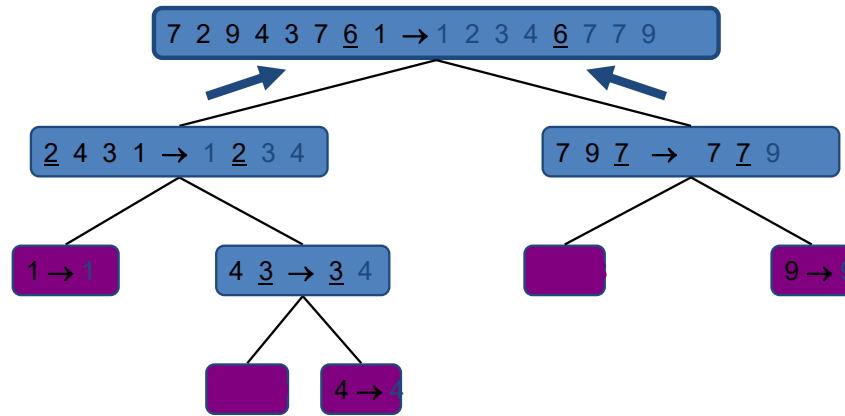
- Partition, ..., recursive call, base case



16

# Execution Example (cont.)

- Join, join



17

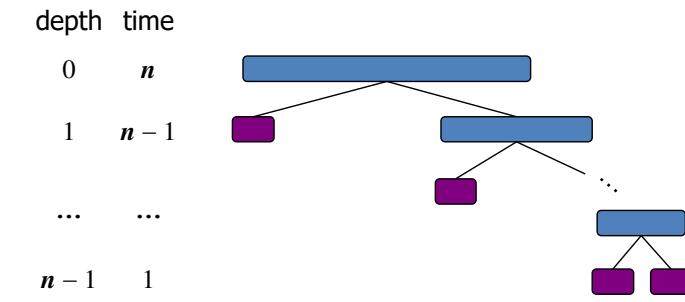
## Best Case Analysis

- Best case occurs when the partitions are as evenly balanced as possible
- If the subarray has an odd number of elements and the pivot is right in the middle after partitioning, then each partition has  $(n-1)/2$  elements.
- If the subarray has an even number  $n$  of elements and one partition has  $n/2$  and other having  $n/2-1$ .
- In either of these cases, each partition has at most  $n/2$  elements

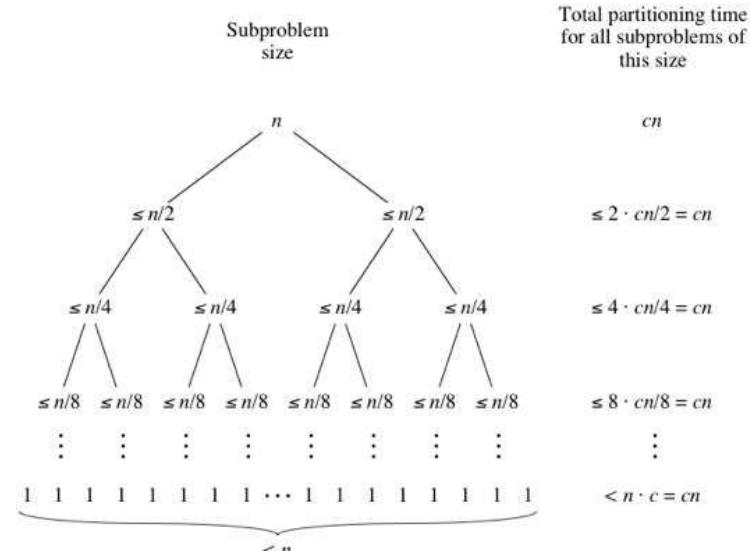
## Worst-case Running Time

- The worst case for quick-sort occurs when the pivot is the unique minimum or maximum element
- One of  $L$  and  $G$  has size  $n - 1$  and the other has size 0
- The running time is proportional to the sum  

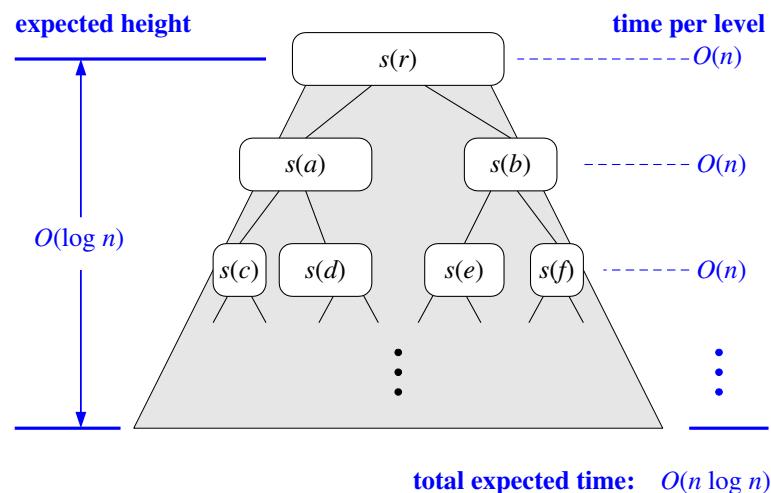
$$n + (n - 1) + \dots + 2 + 1$$
- Thus, the worst-case running time of quick-sort is  $O(n^2)$



## Best Case Analysis



# A visual time analysis of the quick-sort tree T

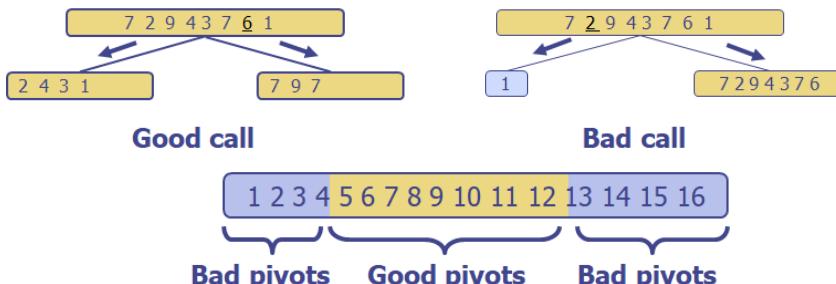


## Expected Running Time

- Consider a recursive call of quick-sort on a sequence of size  $s$

**Good call:** the sizes of  $L$  and  $G$  are each less than  $3s/4$

**Bad call:** one of  $L$  and  $G$  has size greater than  $3s/4$



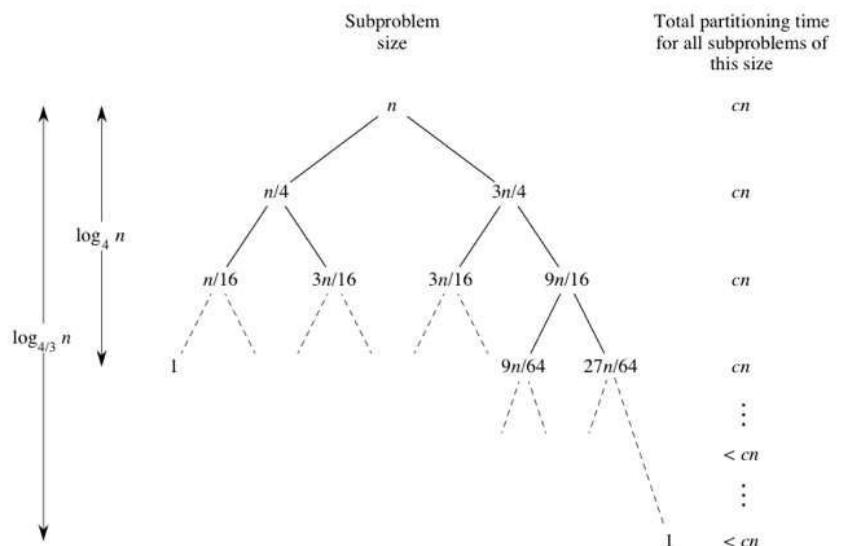
- A call is **good** with probability 1/2

- 1/2 of the possible pivots cause good calls:

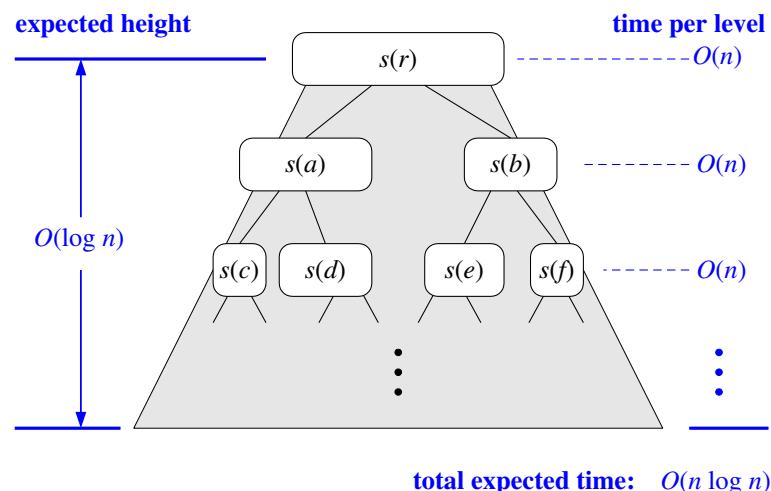
## Best Case Running Time

- The amount of work done at the nodes of the same depth is  $O(n)$
- The expected height of the quick-sort tree is  $O(\log n)$
- Thus, the expected running time of quick-sort is  $O(n \log n)$

## Expected Running Time



# A visual time analysis of the quick-sort tree T



## Expected Running Time



- The amount or work done at the nodes of the same depth is  $O(n)$
- The expected height of the quick-sort tree is  $O(\log n)$
- Thus, the expected running time of quick-sort is  $O(n \log n)$

## Expected Running Time

Intuitively,

- (In best case) For the tree to have height  $\log_2 n$ , with each step, the size of the sequence must shrink to at most  $(n/2)$ .
  - That is,  $\log_2 n$  invocations
- For each call to be good,
  - the input size should shrink to atmost  $(\frac{3}{4})n$
  - If all calls are good calls, the expected height of tree is  $\log_{(4/3)} n$
  - In other words,  $\log_{(4/3)} n$  good calls are needed to get  $O(\log n)$  height
  - If pivots are randomly chosen, we expect that, out of  $2 * \log_{(4/3)} n$  calls,  $\log_{(4/3)} n$  calls are good !
  - $\log_{(4/3)} n$  and  $\log n$  differs by only a factor of  $\log_2(4/3)$  which is a constant.
  - This implies that the height of tree is  $O(\log n)$
- Expected complexity of quick sort is  $O(n \log n)$

## In-Place Quick-Sort



- A sorting algorithm is in-place if it uses only a constant amount of memory in addition to that needed for the objects being sorted themselves

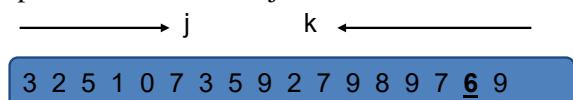
## In-Place Partitioning

- Perform the partition using two indices to split S into L and E U G (a similar method can split E U G into E and G).



- Repeat until j and k cross:

- Scan j to the right until finding an element  $\geq$  x.
- Scan k to the left until finding an element  $<$  x.
- Swap elements at indices j and k



## In-Place Quick-Sort

**Algorithm** inPlaceQuickSort( $S, a, b$ ):

**Input:** Sequence  $S$  of distinct elements; integers  $a$  and  $b$

**Output:** Sequence  $S$  with elements originally from ranks from  $a$  to  $b$ , inclusive,  
sorted in nondecreasing order from ranks  $a$  to  $b$

```

if  $a \geq b$  then return {empty subrange}
 $p \leftarrow S.\text{elemAtRank}(b)$  {pivot}
 $l \leftarrow a$  {will scan rightward}
 $r \leftarrow b - 1$  {will scan leftward}
while  $l \leq r$  do
    {find an element larger than the pivot}
    while  $l \leq r$  and  $S.\text{elemAtRank}(l) \leq p$  do
         $l \leftarrow l + 1$ 
    {find an element smaller than the pivot}
    while  $r \geq l$  and  $S.\text{elemAtRank}(r) \geq p$  do
         $r \leftarrow r - 1$ 
    if  $l < r$  then
         $S.\text{swapElements}(S.\text{atRank}(l), S.\text{atRank}(r))$ 
    {put the pivot into its final place}
     $S.\text{swapElements}(S.\text{atRank}(l), S.\text{atRank}(b))$ 
    {recursive calls}
    inPlaceQuickSort( $S, a, l - 1$ )
    inPlaceQuickSort( $S, l + 1, b$ )

```

## In-Place Quick-Sort

- Quick-sort can be implemented to run in-place
- In the partition step, we use replace operations to rearrange the elements of the input sequence such that
  - the elements less than the pivot have rank less than  $h$
  - the elements equal to the pivot have rank between  $h$  and  $k$
  - the elements greater than the pivot have rank greater than  $k$
- The recursive calls consider
  - elements with rank less than  $h$
  - elements with rank greater than  $k$

## In-Place Quick-Sort



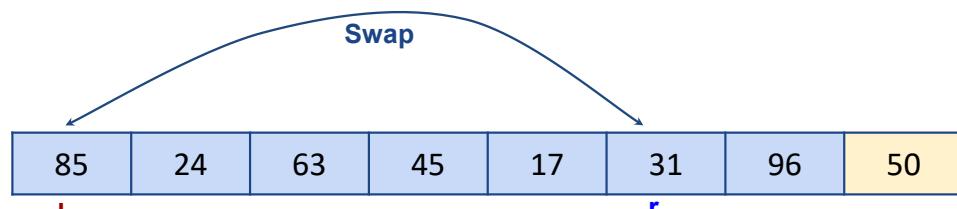
## In-Place Quick-Sort

|    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 85 | 24 | 63 | 45 | 17 | 31 | 96 | 50 |
| I  |    |    |    | r  |    |    |    |

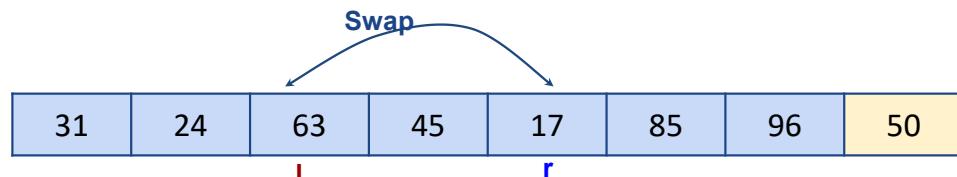
## In-Place Quick-Sort

|    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 31 | 24 | 63 | 45 | 17 | 85 | 96 | 50 |
| I  |    |    |    | r  |    |    |    |

## In-Place Quick-Sort



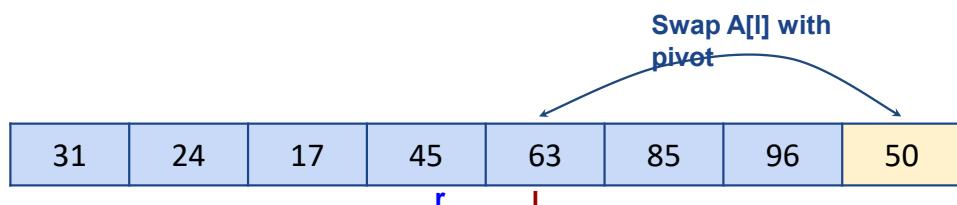
## In-Place Quick-Sort



## In-Place Quick-Sort



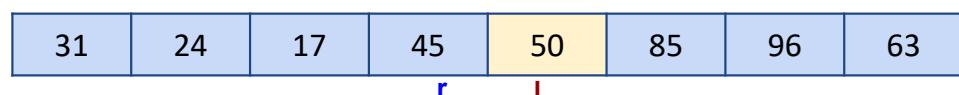
## In-Place Quick-Sort



## In-Place Quick-Sort



## In-Place Quick-Sort



Next Recursive Calls:

`inPlaceQuickSort(A, a, l - 1)`  
`inPlaceQuickSort(A, l + 1, b)`

## Quick-Sort Properties

- **Not Adaptive**
- **Not Stable**-Can be made stable.
- **Not Incremental** : Incremental versions possible
- **Not online**
- **In Place**

## QuickSort and Mergesort

- Quick Sort: traditionally built-in for many runtimes, hence used by programs that call the default. *Can't be used where worst-case behavior could be exploited or cause significant ramifications*, such as services that might receive denial-of-service attacks, or real-time systems.
- Java's systems programmers have chosen to use quicksort (with 3-way partitioning) to implement the primitive-type methods, and merge sort for reference-type methods. The primary practical implications of these choices are to trade speed and memory usage (for primitive types) for stability and guaranteed performance (for reference types).
- Merge Sort: used in *database scenarios*, because stable and external (results don't all fit in memory).

## QuickSort

- **Advantages of Quicksort**
  - Its average-case time complexity to sort an array of n elements is  $O(n\log n)$ .
  - It requires no additional memory.
- **Disadvantages of Quicksort**
  - Its worst-case running time,  $O(n^2)$  to sort an array of n elements, happens when pivot is an extreme
  - It is not stable.

## QuickSort and MergeSort

- In most practical situations, quicksort is the method of choice.
- If stability is important and space is available, merge sort might be best.
- In some performance-critical applications, the focus may be on just sorting numbers, so it is reasonable to avoid the costs of using references and sort primitive types instead.



# THANK YOU!

**BITS** Pilani  
Hyderabad Campus



## Range query

- A **range query**  $q(A, i, j)$  on an array  $A = [a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots, a_n]$  of  $n$  elements of some set  $S$ , denoted  $A[1, n]$ , takes two indices  $1 \leq i \leq j \leq n$ , a function  $f$  defined over arrays of elements of  $S$  and outputs  $f(A[i, j]) = f(a_i, \dots, a_j)$



## Data Structures and Algorithms Design

**BITS** Pilani  
Hyderabad Campus



Febin.A.Vahab

## Range query

- Data: Points  $P = \{p_1, p_2, \dots, p_n\}$  in 1-D space (set of real numbers)
- Query: Which points are in 1-D query rectangle (in interval  $[x, x']$ )



## Range query

- Range:  $[x, x']$
- **Data Structure 1:Sorted Array**

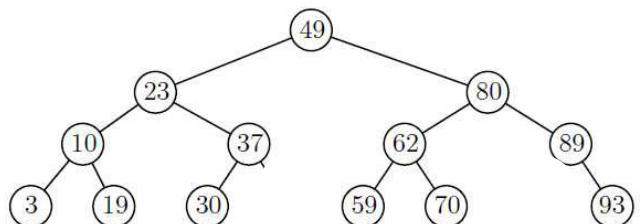
$A = [3, 9, 27, 28, 29, 98, 141, 187, 200, 201, 202, 999]$

- Search for  $x$  and  $x'$  in  $A$  by Binary search takes
- $O(\log n)$  time
- Output all points between them ,takes
- $O(k)$  time
- Total :  $O(k+\log n)$

Page 4

## Range query

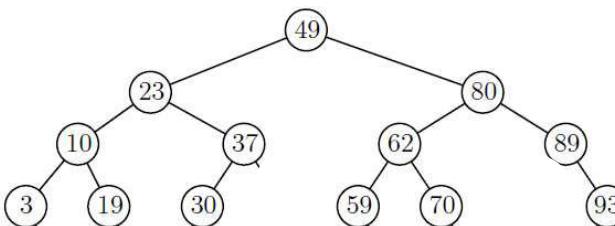
- Data Structure 2:BST
  - Search using binary search property.
  - Some subtrees are eliminated during search.



Page 6

## Range query

- Data Structure 2:BST
  - Search using binary search property.
  - Some subtrees are eliminated during search.



Page 5

## Range query

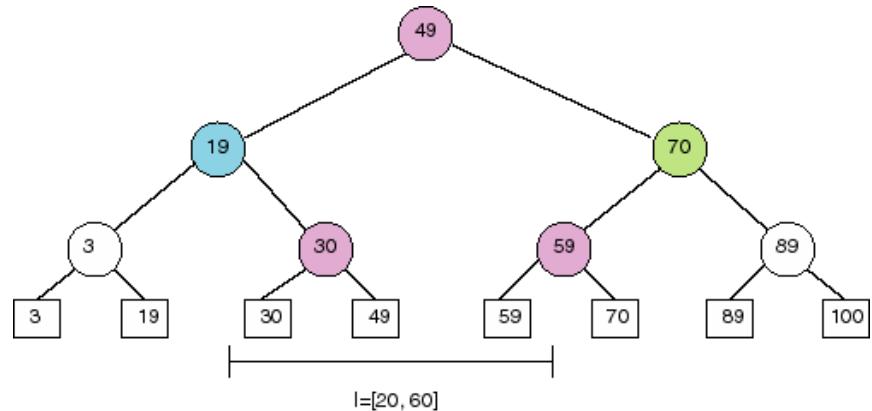
```

FindPoints([x, x'], T)
  if T is a leaf node, then
    if x <= val(T) <= x' then
      return { val(T) }
    else
      return {}
    end if
  end if
  <else T is an interior node of tree>
  if x' <= val(T) then
    return FindPoints([x, x'], left(T))
  else if x > val(T) then
    return FindPoints([x, x'], right(T))
  else <interval spans splitting value>
    return FindPoints([x, x'], left(T)) union FindPoints([x, x'], right(T))
  end if

```

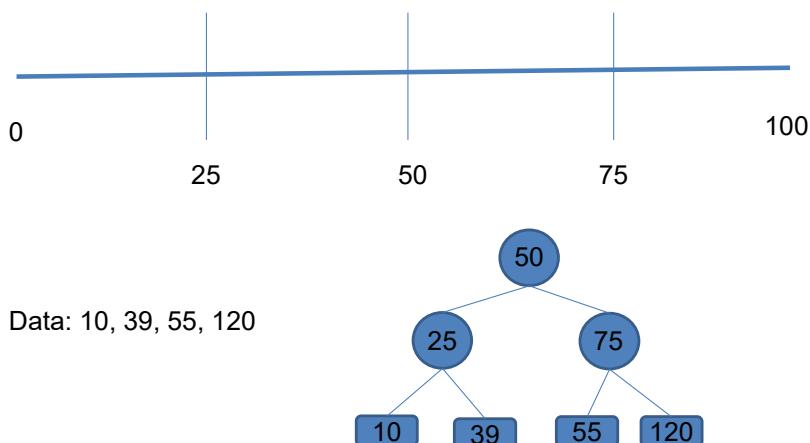
Page 7

## Range query



Page 8

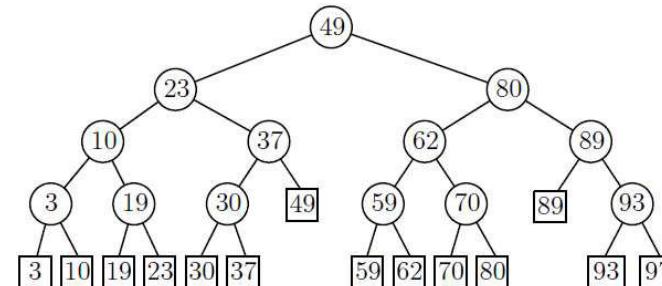
## BST with data stored in leaves



Page 10

## Range query

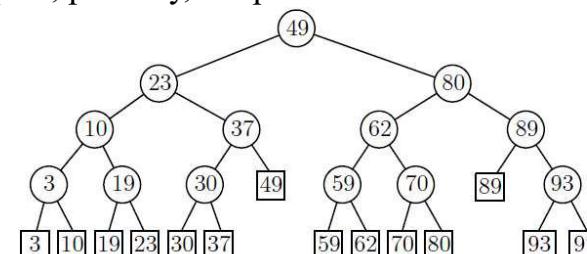
- Data Structure 3: BST with data stored in leaves
  - Internal nodes store splitting values (i.e., not necessarily same as data).
  - Data points are stored in the leaf nodes.



Page 9

## BST with data stored in leaves

- Retrieving data in  $[x, x']$ 
  - Perform binary search twice, once using  $x$  and the other using  $x'$
  - Suppose binary search ends at leaves  $l$  and  $l'$
  - The points in  $[x, x']$  are the ones stored between  $l$  and  $l'$  plus, possibly, the points stored in  $l$  and  $l'$



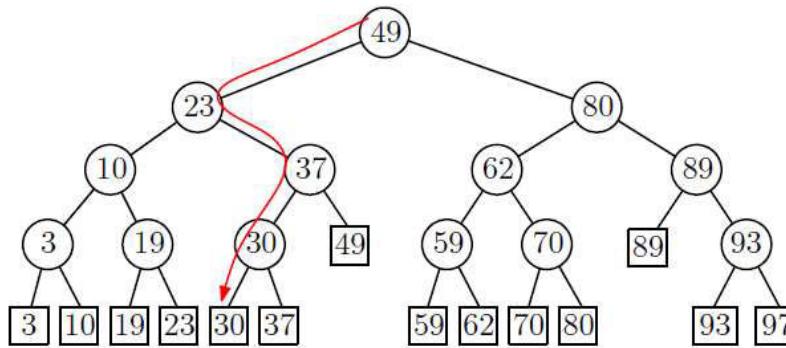
Page 11

## BST with data stored in leaves



- Example: retrieve all points in [25, 90]

– The search path for 25 is:

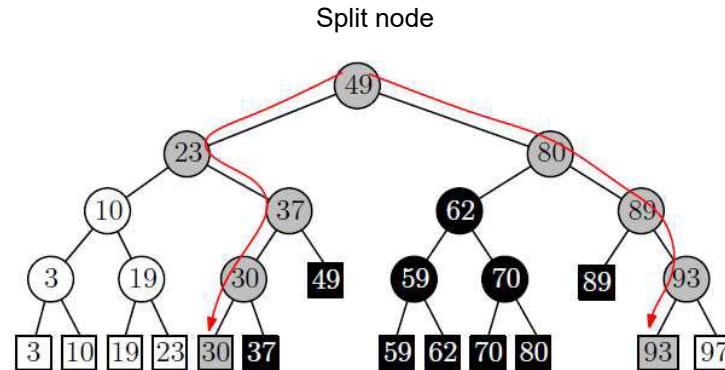


Page 12

## BST with data stored in leaves



- Examine the leaves in the sub-trees between the two traversing paths from the root.



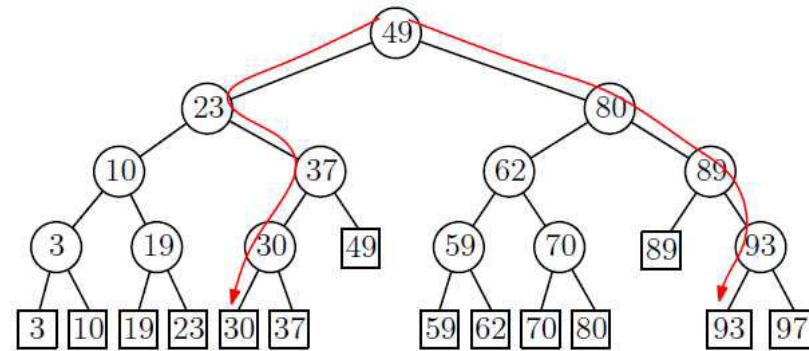
Retrieve all points in [25, 90]

Page 14

## BST with data stored in leaves



- Example: The search for 90 is:

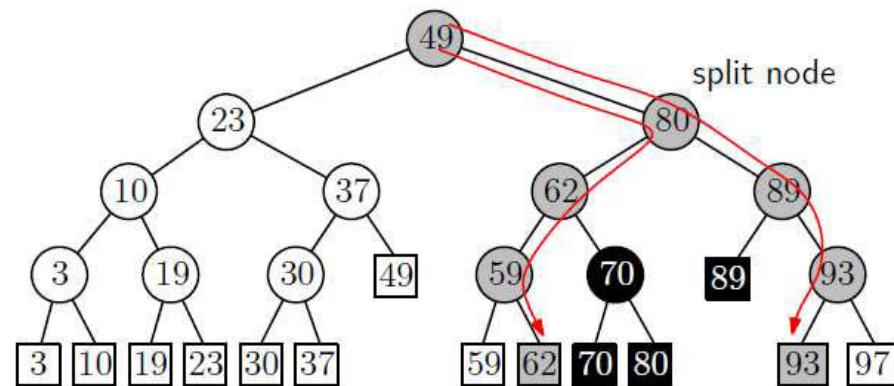


Page 13

## Range Search – Another Example



A 1-dimensional range query with [61, 90]

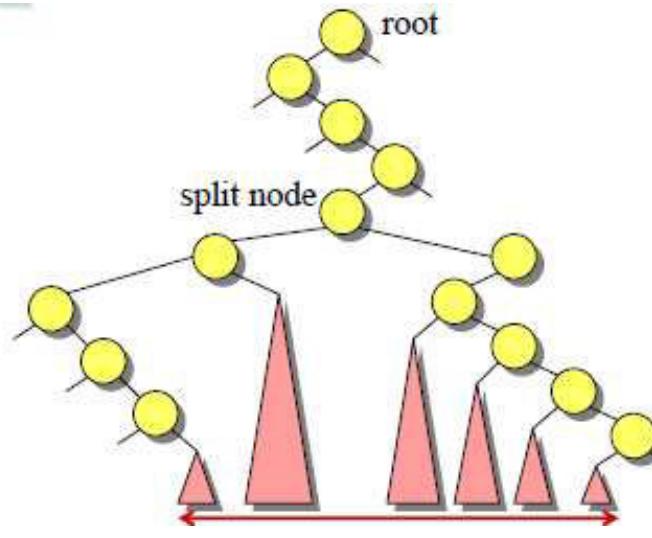


Page 15

## Range Search

- How do we find the leaves of interest?
- Find **split node** (i.e., node where the paths to  $x$  and  $x'$  split).
- **Left turn**: report leaves in right subtrees
- **Right turn**: report leaves in left subtrees

## Range Search

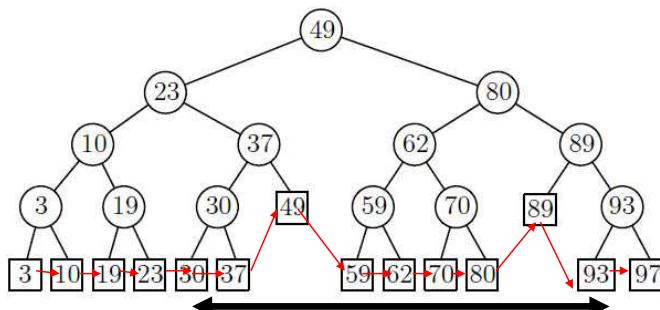


## Range Search

- $O(\log n + k)$  time where  $k$  is the number of items reported.

## Range Search

- Speed-up search by keeping the leaves in sorted order using a linked-list



- Applications

## One-dimensional range searching [Goodrich]



- Given an ordered dictionary D, we want to perform the following query operation:
- findAllInRange( $k_1$  ,  $k_2$  ) : Return all the elements in dictionary D with key k such that  $k_1 \leq k \leq k_2$

Page 20

## One-dimensional range searching



- If node v is external, we are done.
- If node v is internal, we have three cases, depending on the value of key ( v ) , the key of the item stored at node v:
  - key(v) <  $k_1$**  : Recurse on the right child of v.
  - $k_1 \leq \text{key}(v) \leq k_2$**  : Report element(v) and recurse on both children of v.
  - $\text{key}(v) > k_2$**  : Recurse on the left child of v.

Page 22

## One-dimensional range searching



- How we can use a binary search tree T representing dictionary D to perform query
- findAllInRange( $k_1$  ,  $k_2$  )
- Use a recursive method IDTreeRangeSearch that takes as arguments the range parameters  $k_1$  and  $k_2$  and a node v in T

Page 21

### Algorithm IDTreeRangeSearch ( $k_1$ , $k_2$ , v) :

#### Algorithm 1D TreeRangeSearch( $k_1$ , $k_2$ , v):

*Input:* Search keys  $k_1$  and  $k_2$ , and a node v of a binary search tree T  
*Output:* The elements stored in the subtree of T rooted at v, whose keys are greater than or equal to  $k_1$  and less than or equal to  $k_2$

```
if T.isExternal(v) then
    return ∅
if  $k_1 \leq \text{key}(v) \leq k_2$  then
    L  $\leftarrow$  1DTreeRangeSearch( $k_1$  ,  $k_2$  , T.leftChild(v))
    R  $\leftarrow$  1DTreeRangeSearch( $k_1$  ,  $k_2$  , T.rightChild(v))
    return  $L \cup \{\text{element}(v)\} \cup R$ 
else if  $\text{key}(v) < k_1$  then
    return 1DTreeRangeSearch( $k_1$  ,  $k_2$  , T.rightChild(v))
else if  $k_2 < \text{key}(v)$  then
    return 1DTreeRangeSearch( $k_1$  ,  $k_2$  , T.leftChild(v))
```

Page 23

## IDTreeRangeSearch (k1 , k2 , v)

- We perform operation `findAllInRange(k1 , k2)` by calling  
**IDTreeRangeSearch (k1 , k2 , T. root( ))**  
Example(Figure next slide)
- One-dimensional range search using a binary search tree for  
 $k1 = 30$  and  $k2 = 80$ .
- Paths P1 and P2 of boundary nodes are drawn with thick lines.
- The boundary nodes storing items with key outside the interval  $[k1 , k2]$  are drawn with dashed lines.

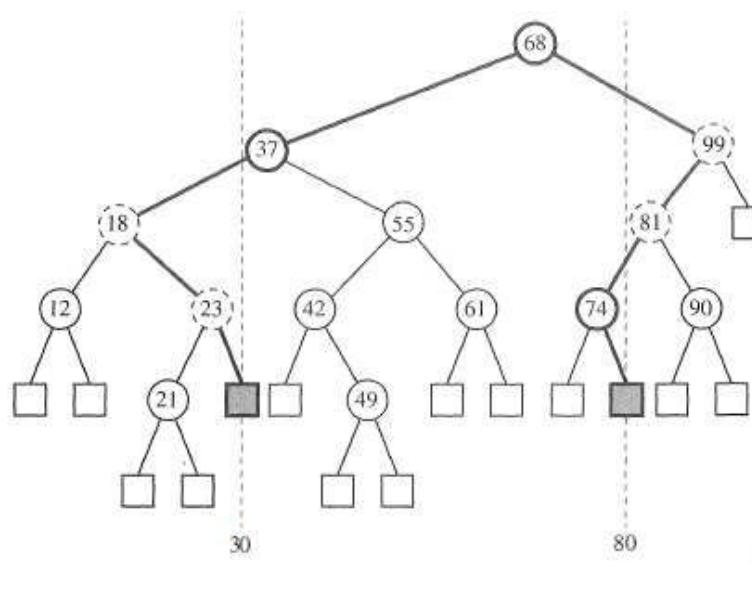
Page 24

## IDTreeRangeSearch -Performance

- Let  $P_1$  be the search path traversed when performing a search in tree  $T$  for key  $k_1$  .
- Path  $P_1$  starts at the root of  $T$  and ends at an external node of  $T$  .
- Define a path  $P_2$  similarly with respect to  $k_2$  . We identify each node  $v$  of  $T$  as belonging to one of following three groups

Page 26

## Algorithm IDTreeRangeSearch (k1 , k2 , v) :



Page 25

## IDTreeRangeSearch -Performance

- Case 1:Node  $v$  is a **boundary node** if  $v$  belongs to  $P_1$  or  $P_2$  ; a boundary node stores an item whose key may be inside or outside the interval  $[k1 , k2]$  .
- Case 2:Node  $v$  is an **inside node** if  $v$  is not a boundary node and  $v$  belongs to a subtree rooted at a right child of a node of  $P_1$  or at a left child of a node of  $P_2$  ;an internal inside node stores an item whose key is inside the interval  $[k1 , k2]$  .

Page 27

- Case 3: Node v is an **outside node** if v is not a boundary node and v belongs to a subtree rooted at a left child of a node of P1 or at a right child of a node of P2 ; an internal outside node stores an item whose key is outside the interval  $(k_1, k_2]$  .

## BST-Applications

- Used in many search applications where data is constantly entering/leaving, such as the map and set objects in many languages' libraries.
- Binary Space Partition - Used in almost every 3D video game to determine what objects need to be rendered. Binary space partitioning (BSP) is a method for recursively subdividing a space into convex sets by hyper planes. This subdivision gives rise to a representation of objects within the space by means of a tree data structure known as a BSP tree

- A balanced binary search tree supports one-dimensional range searching in an ordered dictionary with n items:
  - The space used is  $O(n)$ .
  - Operation `findAllInRange` takes  $O(\log n + s)$  time, where s is the number of elements reported.
  - Operations `insertItem` and `removeElement` each take  $O(\log n)$  time.

## BST-Applications

- Huffman Coding Tree: The branches of the tree represent the binary values 0 and 1 according to the rules for common prefix-free code trees. The path from the root tree to the corresponding leaf node defines the particular code word.
- It is used to implement multilevel indexing in DATABASE.

## Sample Question 1

- Prof X is standing at the door of his classroom. There are currently  $N$  students in the class,  $i$  th student got  $A_i$  candies. There are still  $M$  more students to come. At every instant, a student enters the class and wishes to be seated with a student who has **exactly** the same number of candies. For each student, Professor shouts YES if such a student is found, NO otherwise. Even if the student entering the class can't find a partner with equal no. of candies, he will still enter the class and be seated.*
- Identify a data structure to implement the above problem statement.*

Page 32



THANK YOU!!!

BITS Pilani  
Hyderabad Campus

## Sample Question 2

You have decided to run off to Los Angeles for the summer and start a new life as a rockstar. However, things aren't going great, so you're consulting for a hotel on the side. This hotel has  $N$  one-bed rooms, and guests check in and out throughout the day. When a guest checks in, they ask for a room whose number is in the range  $[l, h]$ .<sup>1</sup>

You want to implement a data structure that supports the following data operations as efficiently as possible.

1. INIT( $N$ ): Initialize the data structure for  $N$  empty rooms numbered  $1, 2, \dots, N$ , in polynomial time.
2. COUNT( $l, h$ ): Return the number of available rooms in  $[l, h]$ , in  $O(\log N)$  time.
3. CHECKIN( $l, h$ ): In  $O(\log N)$  time, return the first empty room in  $[l, h]$  and mark it occupied, or return NIL if all the rooms in  $[l, h]$  are occupied.
4. CHECKOUT( $x$ ): Mark room  $x$  as not occupied, in  $O(\log N)$  time.

Page 33



Data Structures and  
Algorithms Design

BITS Pilani  
Hyderabad Campus

Febin.A.Vahab

| Sessions(#) | List of Topic Title                                                                                                                       | Text/Ref Book/external resource |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 13          | Dynamic Programming - Design Principles and Strategy, Matrix Chain Product Problem, 0/1 Knapsack Problem, All-pairs Shortest Path Problem | T1: 5.3, 7.2                    |

## Dynamic Programming

- Dynamic programming is a technique for solving problems with overlapping subproblems.
- Typically, given problem's solution can be related to solutions of its smaller subproblems.
- Rather than solving overlapping subproblems again and again, dynamic programming suggests solving each of the smaller subproblems only once and recording the results in a table from which a solution to the original problem can then be obtained.

## Dynamic Programming

- Invented by a prominent U.S. mathematician, Richard Bellman
- The word “programming” in the name of this technique stands for “planning” and does not refer to computer programming.

## Dynamic Programming

- A straightforward application of dynamic programming can be interpreted as a special variety of space-for-time trade-off.
- Optimisation of plain recursion.

## Dynamic Programming-Example

- The Fibonacci numbers are the numbers in the following integer sequence.
- 0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55, 89, 144...
- $F(n) = F(n-1) + F(n-2)$ ,  $F_0 = 0$  and  $F_1 = 1$

```
int fib(int n)
{
    if( n <= 1 )
        return n;
    return fib(n-1) + fib(n-2);
}
```

## Dynamic Programming-Properties

### Overlapping Sub-problems:

- Sub-problems needs to be solved again and again.
- In recursion we solve those problems every time and in dynamic programming we solve these sub problems only once and store it for future use

### Optimal Substructure:

- A problem can be solved by using the solutions of the sub problems

## Dynamic Programming-Example

- Time complexity:
- $T(n) = T(n-1) + T(n-2)$
- which is exponential.

## Dynamic Programming-Example

```
Algorithm DynamicFibonacci(n)
{
    f[0]=0,f[1]=1
    for(i =2;i<=n;i++)
        f[i]=f[i-1]+f[i-2]
    return f[n];
}
```

Time complexity??

## Dynamic Programming-Example

- A man put a pair of rabbits in a place surrounded by a wall. How many pairs of rabbits will be there in a year if the initial pair of rabbits (male and female) are newborn and all rabbit pairs are not fertile during their first month of life but thereafter give birth to one new male-female pair at the end of every month?

## Dynamic Programming

- Similar to Fibonacci problem.
- To solve Fibonacci's problem, we'll let  $f(n)$  be the number of pairs during month  $n$ .
- By convention,  $f(0) = 0$ .  $f(1) = 1$  for our new first pair.
- $f(2) = 1$  as well, as conception just occurred.
- The new pair is born at the end of month 2, so during month 3,  $f(3) = 2$ .
- Only the initial pair produces offspring in month 3, so  $f(4) = 3$ .

## Dynamic Programming

- The circumstances and restrictions are not realistic.
- Still, this isn't THAT unrealistic a situation in the short term.

## Dynamic Programming

- In month 4, the initial pair and the month 2 pair breed, so  $f(5) = 5$ . We can proceed this way, presenting the results in a table. At the end of a year, Fibonacci has 144 pairs of rabbits.

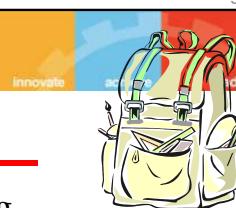
| Month | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7  | 8  | 9  | 10 | 11 | 12  |
|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|-----|
| Pairs | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 13 | 21 | 34 | 55 | 89 | 144 |

# The General Dynamic Programming Technique

- Applies to a problem that at first seems to require a lot of time (possibly exponential), provided we have:
  - Simple subproblems:** the subproblems can be defined in terms of a few variables
  - Subproblem optimality:** the global optimum value can be defined in terms of optimal subproblems
  - Subproblem overlap:** the subproblems are not independent, but instead they overlap (hence, should be constructed bottom-up).

Page 14

## Example



- Given: A set S of n items, with each item i having
  - $b_i$  - a positive “benefit”
  - $w_i$  - a positive “weight”
- Goal: Choose items with maximum total benefit but with weight at most W.



| Weight:  | 4 kg | 2 kg | 2 kg | 6 kg | 2 kg |
|----------|------|------|------|------|------|
| Benefit: | \$20 | \$3  | \$6  | \$25 | \$80 |

“knapsack”  
  
box of width 9 in  
Solution:

- item 5 (\$80, 2 kg)
- item 3 (\$6, 2 kg)
- item 1 (\$20, 4 kg)

# The 0/1 Knapsack Problem

- Given: A set S of n items, with each item i having
  - $w_i$  - a positive weight
  - $p_i$  - a positive benefit
- Goal: Choose items with maximum total benefit but with weight at most W.
- This problem is called a **"0-1" problem**, because each item must be entirely accepted or rejected.
  - In this case, we let T denote the set of items we take
  - Objective: maximize  $\sum p_i x_i$
  - Constraint:  $\sum_{i \in T} w_i x_i \leq W$

Page 15

## Example



Page 16

Page 17

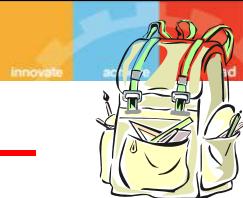
## Example

| $k \downarrow$ | $w \downarrow$ | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 |
|----------------|----------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0              | 0              | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 1              | 1              | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 2              | 2              | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 |
| 3              | 3              | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 7 |
| 4              | 4              | 0 | 1 | 2 | 5 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 7 | 7 |
| 5              | 5              | 0 | 1 | 2 | 5 | 6 | 6 | 7 | 7 | 8 |
| 6              | 6              | 0 | 1 | 2 | 5 | 6 | 6 | 7 | 7 | 8 |

$B[k, w] = \max \{ B[k-1, w], B[k-1, w - w_k] + p_k \}$

Page 18

## A 0/1 Knapsack Algorithm, First Attempt



- $S_k$ : Set of items numbered 1 to k.
- Define  $B[k]$  = best selection from  $S_k$ .
- Problem: does not have subproblem optimality:
  - Consider set  $S=\{(3,2),(5,4),(8,5),(4,3),(10,9)\}$  of (benefit, weight) pairs and total weight  $W = 20$

|                  |       |       |       |       |  |
|------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|
| Best for $S_4$ : | (3,2) | (5,4) | (8,5) | (4,3) |  |
|------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|

|                  |        |       |       |        |  |
|------------------|--------|-------|-------|--------|--|
| Best for $S_5$ : | (3,2)  | (5,4) | (8,5) | (10,9) |  |
|                  | ← 20 → |       |       |        |  |

Page 20

| $k \downarrow$ | $w \downarrow$ | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 |
|----------------|----------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0              | 0              | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 1              | 1              | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 2              | 2              | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 |
| 3              | 3              | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 7 |
| 4              | 4              | 0 | 1 | 2 | 5 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 7 | 7 |
| 5              | 5              | 0 | 1 | 2 | 5 | 6 | 6 | 7 | 7 | 8 |

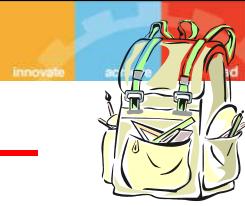
## A 0/1 Knapsack Algorithm, First Attempt



- Let  $S_k$  be the optimal subset of elements from  $\{I_0, I_1, \dots, I_k\}$ .
- The solution to the optimization problem for  $S_{k+1}$  might NOT contain the optimal solution from problem  $S_k$ .

Page 21

## A 0/1 Knapsack Algorithm, Second Attempt



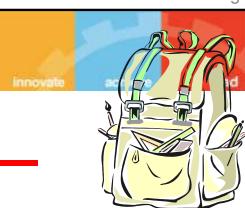
- $S_k$ : Set of items numbered 1 to k.
- Define  $B[k,w]$  to be the best selection from  $S_k$  with weight at most w
- Good news: this does have subproblem optimality.

$$B[k, w] = \begin{cases} B[k - 1, w] & \text{if } w_k > w \\ \max\{ B[k - 1, w], B[k - 1, w - w_k] + b_k \} & \text{else} \end{cases}$$

- I.e., the best subset of  $S_k$  with weight at most w is either
  - the best subset of  $S_{k-1}$  with weight at most w or
  - the best subset of  $S_{k-1}$  with weight at most  $w - w_k$  plus item k
- 

Page 22

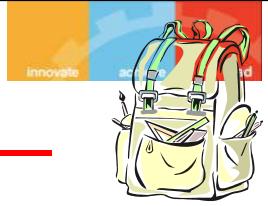
## A 0/1 Knapsack Algorithm, Second Attempt



- **Case 2**
- The maximum value of a knapsack with a subset of items from  $\{I_0, I_1, \dots, I_k\}$  with weight w could be the same as the maximum value of a knapsack with a subset of items from  $\{I_0, I_1, \dots, I_{k-1}\}$  with weight  $w - w_k$ , plus item k.
- You need to compare the values of knapsacks in both case 1 and 2 and take the maximal one.

Page 24

## A 0/1 Knapsack Algorithm, Second Attempt



- **Case 1**
- The maximum value of a knapsack with a subset of items from  $\{I_0, I_1, \dots, I_k\}$  with weight w is the same as the maximum value of a knapsack with a subset of items from  $\{I_0, I_1, \dots, I_{k-1}\}$  with weight w, if item k weighs greater than w.
- Basically, you can NOT increase the value of your knapsack with weight w if the new item you are considering weighs more than w – because it WON'T fit!!!

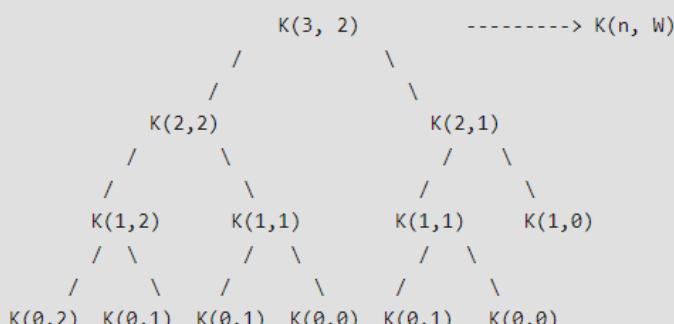
Page 23

## A 0/1 Knapsack Algorithm, Second Attempt



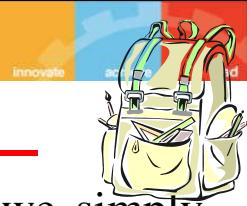
- Recursively, we will STILL have an  $O(2^n)$  algorithm.

In the following recursion tree, K() refers to knapSack(). The two parameters indicated in the following recursion tree are n and W. The recursion tree is for following sample inputs.  
 $wt[] = \{1, 1, 1\}$ ,  $W = 2$ ,  $val[] = \{10, 20, 30\}$



Page 25

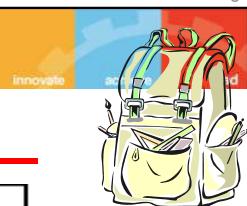
## A 0/1 Knapsack Algorithm, Second Attempt



- But, using dynamic programming, we simply have to do a double loop - one loop running n times and the other loop running W times.

Page 26

## 0/1 Knapsack Algorithm



### Running time

```
for w = 0 to W          O(W)
    B[0,w] = 0
    for i = 1 to n
        B[i,0] = 0
        for i = 1 to n      Repeat n times
            for w = 0 to W      O(W)
                < the rest of the code >
```

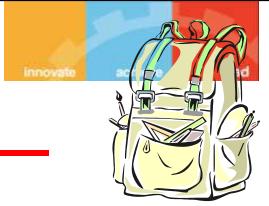
What is the running time of this algorithm?

$O(n \cdot W)$

Remember that the brute-force algorithm takes  $O(2^n)$

Page 28

## 0/1 Knapsack Algorithm

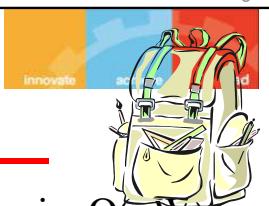


### 0-1 Knapsack Algorithm

```
for w = 0 to W
    B[0,w] = 0
    for i = 1 to n
        B[i,0] = 0
        for i = 1 to n
            for w = 0 to W
                if  $w_i \leq w$  // item i can be part of the solution
                    if  $b_i + B[i-1, w-w_i] > B[i-1, w]$ 
                        B[i,w] =  $b_i + B[i-1, w-w_i]$ 
                    else
                        B[i,w] =  $B[i-1, w]$ 
                else B[i,w] =  $B[i-1, w]$  //  $w_i > w$ 
```

Page 27

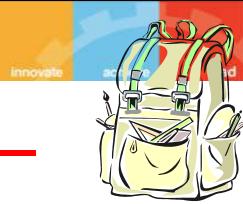
## 0/1 Knapsack Algorithm



- Clearly the run time of this algorithm is  $O(nW)$ , based on the nested loop structure and the simple operation inside of both loops.
- Depending on W, either the dynamic programming algorithm is more efficient or the brute force  $O(2^n)$ , algorithm could be more efficient.
- (For example, for  $n=5$ ,  $W=100000$ , brute force is preferable, but for  $n=30$  and  $W=1000$ , the dynamic programming solution is preferable.)

Page 29

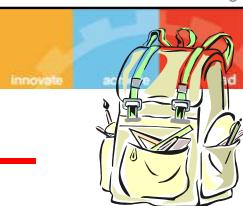
## 0/1 Knapsack Algorithm



- **Pseudo-polynomial time algorithm**
- Running time of the algorithm depends on a parameter  $W$  that, strictly speaking, is not proportional to the size of the input (the  $n$  items, together with their weights and benefits, plus the number  $W$ ).
- If  $W$  is very large (say  $W = 2^n$ ), then this dynamic programming algorithm would actually be asymptotically slower than the brute force method.
- Thus, technically speaking, this algorithm is not a polynomial-time algorithm, for its running time is not actually a function of the size of the input

Page 30

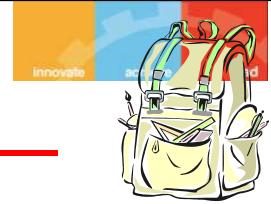
## 0/1 Knapsack Algorithm



**Knapsack  
Example Traced**

Page 32

## 0/1 Knapsack Algorithm



- **Pseudo-polynomial time algorithm**
- Running time depends on the magnitude of a number given in the input, not its encoding size

Page 31

## 0/1 Knapsack Algorithm-Example2

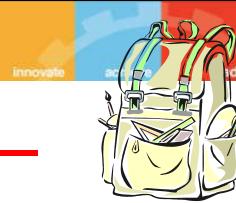


- $W = 10$

| i | Item  | $w_i$ | $v_i$ |
|---|-------|-------|-------|
| 0 | $I_0$ | 4     | 6     |
| 1 | $I_1$ | 2     | 4     |
| 2 | $I_2$ | 3     | 5     |
| 3 | $I_3$ | 1     | 3     |
| 4 | $I_4$ | 6     | 9     |
| 5 | $I_5$ | 4     | 7     |

Page 33

# 0/1 Knapsack Algorithm- Example:Ans



| Item | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  | 9  | 10 |
|------|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 0    | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 6 | 6  | 6  | 6  | 6  | 6  | 6  |
| 1    | 0 | 0 | 4 | 4 | 6 | 6  | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 |
| 2    | 0 | 0 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 9  | 10 | 11 | 11 | 15 | 15 |
| 3    | 0 | 3 | 4 | 7 | 8 | 9  | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 18 |
| 4    | 0 | 3 | 4 | 7 | 8 | 9  | 12 | 13 | 14 | 16 | 18 |
| 5    | 0 | 3 | 4 | 7 | 8 | 10 | 12 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 19 |

Page 34



**BITS Pilani**  
Hyderabad Campus

## Data Structures and Algorithms Design

Febin.A.Vahab



The background features the BITS Pilani Hyderabad Campus clock tower, a prominent yellow stone structure with two large circular clock faces. The sky is clear and blue. The slide includes the BITS Pilani logo and the text "THANK YOU!"

## ONLINE SESSION 9-PLAN

| Sessions(#) | List of Topic Title                                                                                                                       | Text/Ref Book/external resource |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 9           | Dynamic Programming - Design Principles and Strategy, Matrix Chain Product Problem, 0/1 Knapsack Problem, All-pairs Shortest Path Problem | T1: 5.3, 7.2                    |

# Dynamic Programming

- Invented by a prominent U.S. mathematician, Richard Bellman
- The word “programming” in the name of this technique stands for “planning” and does not refer to computer programming.

Page 3

# Dynamic Programming

- A straightforward application of dynamic programming can be interpreted as a special variety of space-for-time trade-off.
- Optimisation of plain recursion.

Page 5

# Dynamic Programming

- Dynamic programming is a technique for solving problems with overlapping subproblems.
- Typically, given problem’s solution can be related to solutions of its smaller subproblems.
- Rather than solving overlapping subproblems again and again, dynamic programming suggests solving each of the smaller subproblems only once and recording the results in a table from which a solution to the original problem can then be obtained.

Page 4

# Dynamic Programming-Example

- The Fibonacci numbers are the numbers in the following integer sequence.
- 0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55, 89, 144...
- $F(n) = F(n-1) + F(n-2)$ ,  $F_0 = 0$  and  $F_1 = 1$

```
int fib(int n)
{
    if( n <= 1 )
        return n;
    return fib(n-1) + fib(n-2);
}
```

Page 6

## Dynamic Programming-Example

- Time complexity:
- $T(n) = T(n-1) + T(n-2)$
- which is exponential.

## Dynamic Programming-Example

```
Algorithm DynamicFibonacci(n)
{
    f[0]=0,f[1]=1
    for(i =2;i<=n;i++)
        f[i]=f[i-1]+f[i-2]
    return f[n];
}
```

Time complexity??

## Dynamic Programming-Properties

### Overlapping Sub-problems:

- Sub-problems needs to be solved again and again.
- In recursion we solve those problems every time and in dynamic programming we solve these sub problems only once and store it for future use

### Optimal Substructure:

- A problem can be solved by using the solutions of the sub problems

## Dynamic Programming-Example

- A man put a pair of rabbits in a place surrounded by a wall. How many pairs of rabbits will be there in a year if the initial pair of rabbits (male and female) are newborn and all rabbit pairs are not fertile during their first month of life but thereafter give birth to one new male/female pair at the end of every month?

# Dynamic Programming

- The circumstances and restrictions are not realistic.
- Still, this isn't THAT unrealistic a situation in the short term.

Page 11

# Dynamic Programming

- In month 4, the initial pair and the month 2 pair breed, so  $f(5) = 5$ . We can proceed this way, presenting the results in a table. At the end of a year, Fibonacci has 144 pairs of rabbits.

| Month | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7  | 8  | 9  | 10 | 11 | 12  |
|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|-----|
| Pairs | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 13 | 21 | 34 | 55 | 89 | 144 |

Page 13

# Dynamic Programming

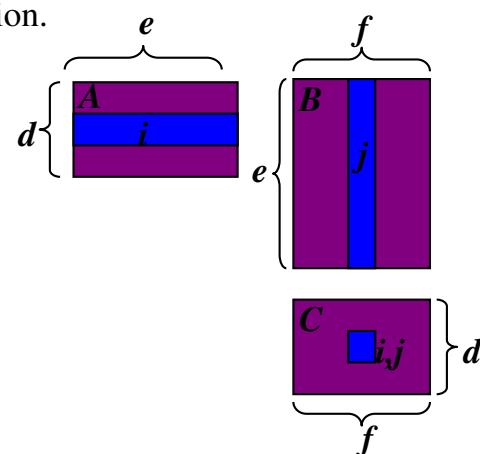
- Similar to Fibonacci problem.
- To solve Fibonacci's problem, we'll let  $f(n)$  be the number of pairs during month  $n$ .
- By convention,  $f(0) = 0$ ,  $f(1) = 1$  for our new first pair.
- $f(2) = 1$  as well, as conception just occurred.
- The new pair is born at the end of month 2, so during month 3,  $f(3) = 2$ .
- Only the initial pair produces offspring in month 3, so  $f(4) = 3$ .

Page 12

# Matrix Chain-Products

- Review: Matrix Multiplication.
  - $C = A * B$
  - $A$  is  $d \times e$  and  $B$  is  $e \times f$
  - $O(d \cdot e \cdot f)$  time

$$C[i, j] = \sum_{k=0}^{e-1} A[i, k] * B[k, j]$$



Page 14

## Matrix Multiplication



## Matrix Chain-Products



- Matrix multiplication is associative
- $B \cdot (C \cdot D) = (B \cdot C) \cdot D$ .
- Thus, we can parenthesize the expression for multiplication any way we wish and we will end up with the same answer.
- **Number of primitive (that is, scalar) multiplications in each parenthesization, however, might not be the same.**

Page 15

## Matrix Chain-Products



- Example
  - B is  $3 \times 100$
  - C is  $100 \times 5$
  - D is  $5 \times 5$
  - $(B \cdot C) \cdot D$  takes  $1500 + 75 = 1575$  ops
  - $B \cdot (C \cdot D)$  takes  $1500 + 2500 = 4000$  ops

Page 17

## Matrix Chain-Products



- **Matrix Chain-Product:**
- Suppose we are given a collection of n two-dimensional matrices for which we wish to compute the product
  - Compute  $A = A_1 * \dots * A_n$
  - $A_i$  is  $d_{i-1} \times d_i$  matrix, for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ .
  - ie. Input  $A[] = \{10, 20, 30, 40, 50\}$
  - $A_1$  is  $10 \times 20$  matrix,  $A_2 = 20 \times 30$  matrix,  $A_3$  is  $30 \times 40$  matrix and  $A_4$  is  $40 \times 50$  matrix.
  - Problem: How to parenthesize?

Page 18

## Matrix Chain Product

- Input  $A[] = \{10, 20, 30, 40, 50\}$
- $A_1 = 10 \times 20$
- $A_2 = 20 \times 30$
- $A_3 = 30 \times 40$
- $A_4 = 40 \times 50$
- $A_i$  is  $d_{i-1} \times d_i$  Matrix
- $A_{i,j} = A_{i..k} \times A_{k+1..j}$
- $A_{1..4} = (A_{1..2}) \times (A_{3..4})$

## Matrix Chain-Products

- The Matrix Chain-Products problem is to determine the parenthesization of the expression defining the product  $A$  that minimizes the total number of scalar multiplications performed.
- The problem is not actually to perform the multiplications, but merely to decide in which order to perform the multiplications.

## Matrix Chain-Products-Enumeration Approach

### • Matrix Chain-Product Algorithm:

- Try all possible ways to parenthesize  $A = A_1 * \dots * A_n$
- Calculate number of ops for each one
- Pick the one that is best

$$\begin{aligned}
 A_1 A_2 A_3 A_4 &= (A_1 A_2)(A_3 A_4) \\
 &= A_1 (A_2 (A_3 A_4)) = A_1 ((A_2 A_3) A_4) \\
 &= ((A_1 A_2) A_3) (A_4) = (A_1 (A_2 A_3)) (A_4)
 \end{aligned}$$

## Matrix Chain-Products-Enumeration Approach



- Running time:
  - The number of parenthesizations is equal to the number of binary trees with n nodes.
  - This is **exponential!**
  - It is called the Catalan number, and it is almost  $4^n$ .
  - This is a terrible algorithm!

Page 23

## Matrix Chain-Products-Greedy Approach



- Idea #1: repeatedly select the product that uses (up) the most operations.
- Counter-example:
  - A is  $10 \times 5$
  - B is  $5 \times 10$
  - C is  $10 \times 5$
  - D is  $5 \times 10$
  - Greedy idea #1 gives  $(A*B)*(C*D)$ , which takes  $500+1000+500 = 2000$  ops
  - $A*((B*C)*D)$  takes  $500+250+250 = 1000$  ops

Page 25

## Number of Binary trees with n nodes



- Total number of possible Binary Search Trees with n different keys ( $\text{countBST}(n)$ ) = Catalan number  $C_n = (2n)!/(n+1)!*n!$
- For  $n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$  values of Catalan numbers are 1, 1, 2, 5, 14, 42, 132, 429, 1430, 4862, .... So are numbers of Binary Search Trees.
- Total number of possible Binary Trees with n different keys ( $\text{countBT}(n)$ ) =  $\text{countBST}(n) * n!$

Page 24

## Matrix Chain-Products-Greedy Approach



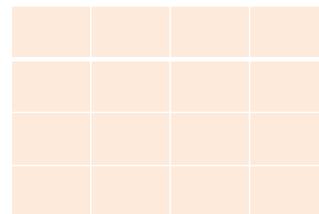
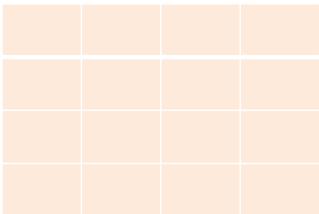
- Idea #2: repeatedly select the product that uses the fewest operations.
- Counter-example:
  - A is  $101 \times 11$
  - B is  $11 \times 9$
  - C is  $9 \times 100$
  - D is  $100 \times 99$
  - Greedy idea #2 gives  $A*((B*C)*D)$ , which takes  $109989+9900+108900=228789$  ops
  - $(A*B)*(C*D)$  takes  $9999+89991+89100=189090$  ops
- The greedy approach is not giving us the optimal value.

Page 26

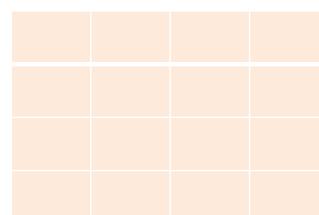
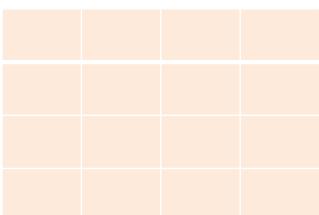
## Example-Dynamic Programming



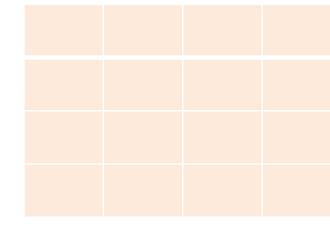
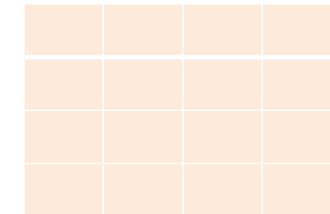
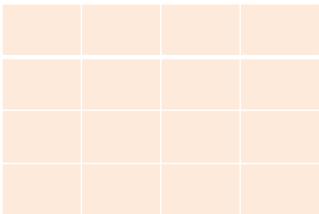
## Example-Dynamic Programming



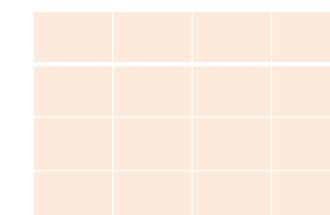
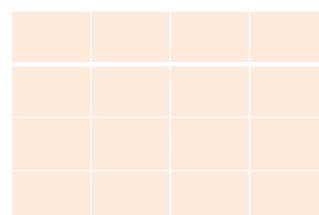
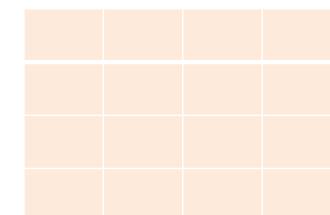
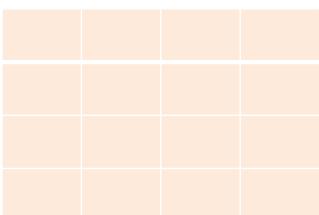
Page 27



Page 29

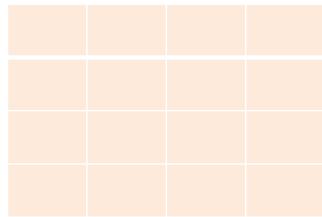
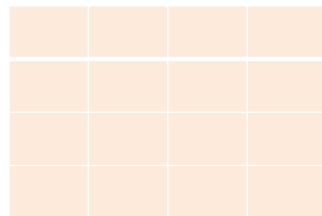


Page 28



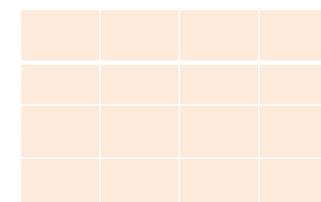
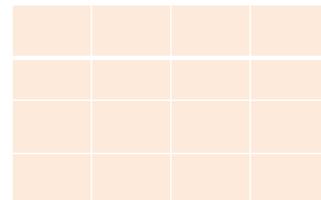
Page 30

## Example-Dynamic Programming



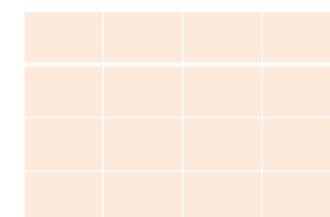
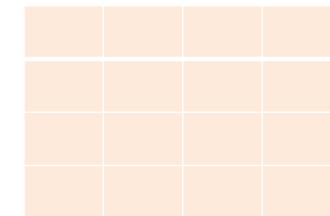
Page 31

## Example-Dynamic Programming



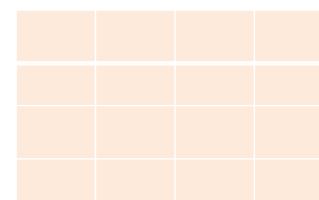
Page 33

## Example-Dynamic Programming



Page 32

## Example-Dynamic Programming



Page 34

# Matrix Chain-Products-Dynamic Programming



- Define **subproblems**:

- Find the best parenthesization of  $A_i * A_{i+1} * \dots * A_j$ .
- Let  $N_{i,j}$  denote the number of operations done by this subproblem.
- The optimal solution for the whole problem is  $N_{1,n}$ .

Page 35

## Matrix Chain-Products-Characterizing Equation



- The global optimal has to be defined in terms of optimal subproblems, depending on where the final multiply is at.
- Let us consider all possible places for that final multiply:
  - Recall that  $A_i$  is a  $d_{i-1} \times d_i$  dimensional matrix.
  - So, a characterizing equation for  $N_{i,j}$  is the following:

$$N_{i,j} = \min_{i \leq k < j} \{N_{i,k} + N_{k+1,j} + d_{i-1} d_k d_j\}$$

$$N_{i,i} = 0$$

Page 37

# Matrix Chain-Products-Dynamic Programming



- **Subproblem optimality:** The optimal solution can be defined in terms of optimal subproblems

- There has to be a final multiplication (root of the expression tree) for the optimal solution.
- Say, the final multiply is at index  $i$ :  $(A_1 * \dots * A_i) * (A_{i+1} * \dots * A_n)$ .
- Then the optimal solution  $N_{1,n}$  is the sum of two optimal subproblems,  $N_{1,i}$  and  $N_{i+1,n}$  plus the time for the last multiply.
- If the global optimum did not have these optimal subproblems, we could define an even better “optimal” solution.

Page 36

## Matrix Chain Products-Dynamic Programming Algorithm



```
Matrix-Chain(p, n)
{   for (i = 1 to n) m[i, i] = 0;
    for (l = 2 to n)
    {
        for (i = 1 to n - l + 1)
        {
            j = i + l - 1;
            m[i, j] = infinity;
            for (k = i to j - 1)
            {
                q = m[i, k] + m[k + 1, j] + p[i - 1] * p[k] * p[j];
                if (q < m[i, j])
                {
                    m[i, j] = q;
                    s[i, j] = k;
                }
            }
        }
    }
    return m and s; (Optimum in m[1, n])
}
```

Page 39

# Matrix Chain-Products-Dynamic Programming Algorithm



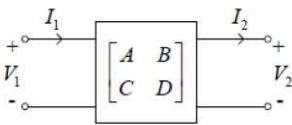
- The bottom-up construction fills in the N array by diagonals
- $N_{i,j}$  gets values from previous entries in i-th row and j-th column
- Filling in each entry in the N table takes  $O(n)$  time.
- Total run time:  $O(n^3)$
- Getting actual parenthesization can be done by remembering “k” for each N entry.

Page 40

# Matrix Chain Products-Applications



- **Perspective projections**, which is the foundation for 3D animation-Orthographic projection (sometimes orthogonal projection) is a means of representing three-dimensional objects in two dimensions.
- Minimum and Maximum values of an expression with \* and +
- **Network analysis (electrical circuits)- Network analysis** is the process of finding the voltages across, and the currents through, every component in the network. For example, when two or more N-port networks are connected in cascade, the combined network is the product on the individual ABCD matrices
- Used extensively in NLP and Machine learning: Principal Component Analysis and Singular Value Decomposition



Read about “Word to Vectors—Natural Language Processing”

Page 42

# Matrix Chain Products-Dynamic Programming Algorithm



- Since subproblems overlap, we don't use recursion.
- Instead, we construct optimal subproblems “bottom-up.”
- $N_{i,i}$ 's are easy, so start with them
- Then do problems of “length” 2,3,... subproblems, and so on.
- Running time:  $O(n^3)$

Page 41

# Matrix Chain Products-Applications



The ABCD Matrix is defined as:

$$\begin{bmatrix} V_1 \\ I_1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} V_2 \\ I_2 \end{bmatrix}$$

For which:

$$A = \left. \frac{V_1}{V_2} \right|_{I_2=0}, \quad B = \left. \frac{V_1}{I_2} \right|_{V_2=0}$$
$$C = \left. \frac{I_1}{V_2} \right|_{I_2=0}, \quad D = \left. \frac{I_1}{I_2} \right|_{V_2=0}$$

“The usefulness of the ABCD matrix is that cascaded two port networks can be characterized by simply multiplying their ABCD matrices”

Page 43

# Matrix Chain Products-Applications

- Used extensively in NLP and Machine learning

Read about “Word to Vectors—Natural Language Processing”

- sentence**=” Word Embeddings are Word converted into numbers ”
- A **word** in this **sentence** may be “Embeddings” or “numbers ” etc.
- A **dictionary** may be the list of all unique words in the **sentence**.
- So,a dictionary may look like [‘Word’, ‘Embeddings’, ‘are’, ‘Converted’, ‘into’, ‘numbers’]
- A **vector** representation of a word may be a one-hot encoded vector where 1 stands for the position where the word exists and 0 everywhere else.
- The vector representation of “numbers” in this format according to the above dictionary is [0,0,0,0,0,1] and of converted is[0,0,0,1,0,0].

# Matrix Chain Products-Applications

D1: He is a lazy boy. She is also lazy.

D2: Neeraj is a lazy person.

The dictionary created may be a list of unique tokens(words) in the corpus =[‘He’,‘She’,‘lazy’,‘boy’,‘Neeraj’,‘person’]

Here, D=2, N=6

The count matrix M of size 2 X 6 will be represented as –

|    | He | She | lazy | boy | Neeraj | person |
|----|----|-----|------|-----|--------|--------|
| D1 | 1  | 1   | 2    | 1   | 0      | 0      |
| D2 | 0  | 0   | 1    | 0   | 1      | 1      |

# Matrix Chain Products-Applications

Co-occurrence matrix.

Corpus = He is not lazy. He is intelligent. He is smart.

|             | He | is | not | lazy | intelligent | smart |
|-------------|----|----|-----|------|-------------|-------|
| He          | 0  | 4  | 2   | 1    | 2           | 1     |
| is          | 4  | 0  | 1   | 2    | 2           | 1     |
| not         | 2  | 1  | 0   | 1    | 0           | 0     |
| lazy        | 1  | 2  | 1   | 0    | 0           | 0     |
| intelligent | 2  | 2  | 0   | 0    | 0           | 0     |
| smart       | 1  | 1  | 0   | 0    | 0           | 0     |

Principal Component Analysis and Singular Value Decomposition



**BITS Pilani**  
Hyderabad Campus

**THANK YOU!**



## ONLINE SESSION -PLAN

| Sessions(#) | List of Topic Title                                                                                                                       | Text/Ref Book/external resource |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 10          | Dynamic Programming - Design Principles and Strategy, Matrix Chain Product Problem, 0/1 Knapsack Problem, All-pairs Shortest Path Problem | T1: 5.3, 7.2                    |



**BITS** Pilani  
Hyderabad Campus

# Data Structures and Algorithms Design



## The General Dynamic Programming Technique

- Applies to a problem that at first seems to require a lot of time (possibly exponential), provided we have:
  - **Simple subproblems:** the subproblems can be defined in terms of a few variables, such as  $j$ ,  $k$ ,  $l$ ,  $m$ , and so on.
  - **Subproblem optimality:** the global optimum value can be defined in terms of optimal subproblems
  - **Subproblem overlap:** the subproblems are not independent, but instead they overlap (hence, should be constructed bottom-up).

## All-Pairs Shortest Paths

- Problem: Given a weighted connected graph (undirected or directed), the ***all-pairs shortest paths problem*** asks to find the distances—i.e., the lengths of the shortest paths—from each vertex to all other vertices.
- Floyd's algorithm computes the distance matrix of a weighted graph with  $n$  vertices through a series of  $n \times n$  matrices:  $D(0)$ ,  $\dots, D(k-1)$ ,  $D(k)$ ,  $\dots, D(n)$ .

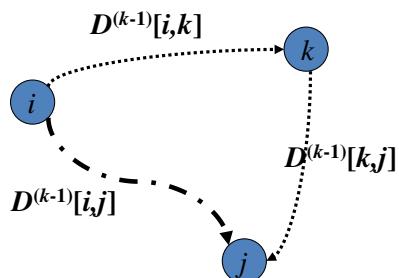
## All-Pairs Shortest Paths

- Each of these matrices contains the lengths of shortest paths with certain constraints on the paths considered for the matrix in question.
- The element  $d(k)ij$  in the  $i$ th row and the  $j$ th column of matrix  $D(k)$  ( $i, j = 1, 2, \dots, n, k = 0, 1, \dots, n$ ) is equal to the length of the shortest path among all paths from the  $i$ th vertex to the  $j$ th vertex with each intermediate vertex, if any, numbered not higher than  $k$ .
- In particular, the series starts with  $D(0)$ , which does not allow any intermediate vertices in its paths, hence,  $D(0)$  is simply the weight matrix of the graph.

Page 5

## All-Pairs Shortest Paths-Floyd's Algorithm

- On the  $k$ -th iteration, the algorithm determines shortest paths between every pair of vertices  $i, j$  that use only vertices among  $1, \dots, k$  as intermediate
- $$D^{(k)}[i,j] = \min \{D^{(k-1)}[i,j], D^{(k-1)}[i,k] + D^{(k-1)}[k,j]\}$$



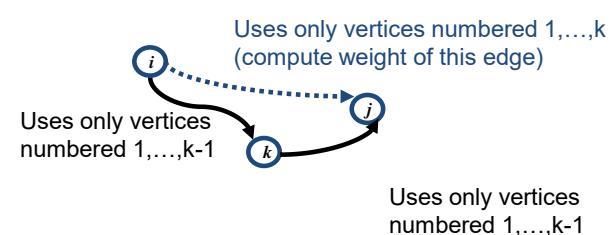
Page 7

## All-Pairs Shortest Paths

- The last matrix in the series,  $D(n)$ , contains the lengths of the shortest paths among all paths that can use all  $n$  vertices as intermediate and hence is nothing other than the distance matrix being sought.

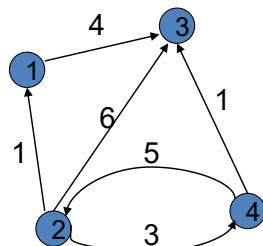
Page 6

## All-Pairs Shortest Paths-Floyd's Algorithm



Page 8

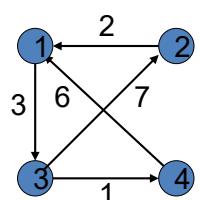
## All-Pairs Shortest Paths



$$\begin{matrix} 0 & \infty & 4 & \infty \\ 1 & 0 & 4 & 3 \\ \infty & \infty & 0 & \infty \\ 6 & 5 & 1 & 0 \end{matrix}$$

Page 9

## All-Pairs Shortest Paths

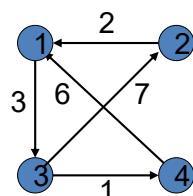


$$D^{(1)} = \begin{matrix} 0 & \infty & 3 & \infty \\ 2 & 0 & 5 & \infty \\ \infty & 7 & 0 & 1 \\ 6 & \infty & 9 & 0 \end{matrix}$$

$$D^{(2)} = \begin{matrix} 0 & \infty & 3 & \infty \\ 2 & 0 & 5 & \infty \\ 9 & 7 & 0 & 1 \\ 6 & \infty & 9 & 0 \end{matrix}$$

Page 11

## All-Pairs Shortest Paths



$$D^{(0)} =$$

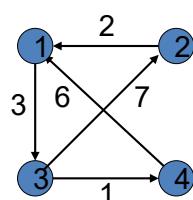
$$\begin{matrix} 0 & \infty & 3 & \infty \\ 2 & 0 & \infty & \infty \\ \infty & 7 & 0 & 1 \\ 6 & \infty & \infty & 0 \end{matrix}$$

$$D^{(1)} =$$

$$\begin{matrix} 0 & \infty & 3 & \infty \\ 2 & 0 & 5 & \infty \\ \infty & 7 & 0 & 1 \\ 6 & \infty & 9 & 0 \end{matrix}$$

Page 10

## All-Pairs Shortest Paths



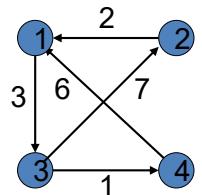
$$D^{(2)} =$$

$$\begin{matrix} 0 & \infty & 3 & \infty \\ 2 & 0 & 5 & \infty \\ 9 & 7 & 0 & 1 \\ 6 & \infty & 9 & 0 \end{matrix}$$

$$D^{(3)} = \begin{matrix} 0 & 10 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 0 & 5 & 6 \\ 9 & 7 & 0 & 1 \\ 6 & 16 & 9 & 0 \end{matrix}$$

Page 12

## All-Pairs Shortest Paths



$$D^{(3)} = \begin{matrix} 0 & 10 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 0 & 5 & 6 \\ 9 & 7 & 0 & 1 \\ 6 & 16 & 9 & 0 \end{matrix}$$

$$D^{(4)} = \begin{matrix} 0 & 10 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 0 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 7 & 0 & 1 \\ 6 & 16 & 9 & 0 \end{matrix}$$

Page 13

## All-Pairs Shortest Paths-Floyd's Algorithm

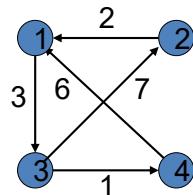
```

ALGORITHM Floyd(W[1..n, 1..n])
//Implements Floyd's algorithm for the all-pairs shortest-paths problem
//Input: The weight matrix W of a graph with no negative-length cycle
//Output: The distance matrix of the shortest paths' lengths
D ← W //is not necessary if W can be overwritten
for k ← 1 to n do
    for i ← 1 to n do
        for j ← 1 to n do
            D[i, j] ← min{D[i, j], D[i, k] + D[k, j]}
return D

```

Page 15

## All-Pairs Shortest Paths



$$D^{(0)} = \begin{matrix} 0 & \infty & 3 & \infty \\ 2 & 0 & \infty & \infty \\ \infty & 7 & 0 & 1 \\ 6 & \infty & \infty & 0 \end{matrix}$$

$$D^{(1)} = \begin{matrix} 0 & \infty & 3 & \infty \\ 2 & 0 & 5 & \infty \\ \infty & 7 & 0 & 1 \\ 6 & \infty & 9 & 0 \end{matrix}$$

$$D^{(2)} = \begin{matrix} 0 & \infty & 3 & \infty \\ 2 & 0 & 5 & \infty \\ 9 & 7 & 0 & 1 \\ 6 & \infty & 9 & 0 \end{matrix}$$

$$D^{(3)} = \begin{matrix} 0 & 10 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 0 & 5 & 6 \\ 9 & 7 & 0 & 1 \\ 6 & 16 & 9 & 0 \end{matrix}$$

$$D^{(4)} = \begin{matrix} 0 & 10 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 0 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 7 & 0 & 1 \\ 6 & 16 & 9 & 0 \end{matrix}$$

Page 14

## All-Pairs Shortest Paths

- Find the distance between every pair of vertices in a weighted directed graph G.
- We can make n calls to Dijkstra's algorithm (if no negative edges), which takes O(n m log n) time.
- Likewise, n calls to Bellman-Ford would take O(n<sup>2</sup>m) time.
- We can achieve O(n<sup>3</sup>) time using dynamic programming (similar to the Floyd-Warshall algorithm).

Page 16

## All-Pairs Shortest Paths-Negative Cycles



- Negative-weight edges may be present,
- But no negative-weight cycles. Why?

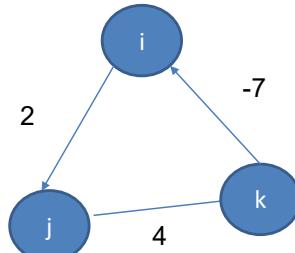
Page 17

## All-Pairs Shortest Paths-Negative Cycles



- Given a graph, suppose to have a cycle given by Nodes i , j, k of negative cost.

- Example:



- Suppose you want to find the shortest path between i and j

Page 19

## All-Pairs Shortest Paths-Negative Cycles



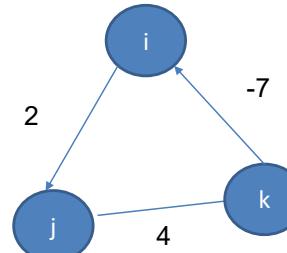
- A negative cycle is a cycle whose edges sum to a negative value.
- There is no shortest path between any pair of vertices i, j which form part of a negative cycle, because path-lengths from i to j can be arbitrarily small (negative)

Page 18

## All-Pairs Shortest Paths-Negative Cycles



- You have  $P=\{(i,j)\}$  with  $\text{cost}(P)=2$ .
- But you can loop through the negative cycle and have:



- $P'=\{(i,j),(j,k),(k,i),(i,j)\}$  with  $\text{cost}(P')=1$
- $P''=\{(i,j),(j,k),(k,i),(i,j),(j,k),(k,i),(i,j)\}$  with  $\text{cost}(P'')=0$  and so on.

Page 20

## All-Pairs Shortest Paths-Negative Cycles



- Nevertheless, if there are negative cycles, the algorithm can be used to detect them.
- The intuition is as follows:
  - The Floyd's algorithm iteratively revises path lengths between all pairs of vertices (i,j), including where i=j
  - Initially, the length of the path (i,i) is zero;
  - A path {i,k,...i} can only improve upon this if it has length less than zero, i.e. denotes a negative cycle;
  - Thus, after the algorithm, (i,i) will be negative if there exists a negative-length path from i back to i.

## Transitive Closure



### ALGORITHM Warshall( $A[1..n, 1..n]$ )

//Implements Warshall's algorithm for computing the transitive closure

//Input: The adjacency matrix  $A$  of a digraph with  $n$  vertices

//Output: The transitive closure of the digraph

$R^{(0)} \leftarrow A$

**for**  $k \leftarrow 1$  **to**  $n$  **do**

**for**  $i \leftarrow 1$  **to**  $n$  **do**

**for**  $j \leftarrow 1$  **to**  $n$  **do**

$R^{(k)}[i, j] \leftarrow R^{(k-1)}[i, j] \text{ or } (R^{(k-1)}[i, k] \text{ and } R^{(k-1)}[k, j])$

**return**  $R^{(n)}$

|   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |

|   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |

## All-Pairs Shortest Paths-Negative Cycles

### ALGORITHM Floyd( $W[1..n, 1..n]$ )

//Implements Floyd's algorithm for the all-pairs shortest-paths problem

//Input: The weight matrix  $W$  of a graph with no negative-length cycle

//Output: The distance matrix of the shortest paths' lengths

$D \leftarrow W$  //is not necessary if  $W$  can be overwritten

**for**  $k \leftarrow 1$  **to**  $n$  **do**

**for**  $i \leftarrow 1$  **to**  $n$  **do**

**for**  $j \leftarrow 1$  **to**  $n$  **do**

$D[i, j] \leftarrow \min\{D[i, j], D[i, k] + D[k, j]\}$

**if**  $D[i, i] < 0$  **then return** ('graph contains a negative cycle')

**return**  $D$

## Example



|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |

|   | a | b | c | d |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| a | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| b | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| c | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| d | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |

|  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |

## Example

|   | a | b | c | d |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| a | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| b | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| c | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| d | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 |

|   | a | b | c | d |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| a | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| b | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| c | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| d | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 |

|  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |

Page 25

## Example

|   | a | b | c | d |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| a | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| b | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| c | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| d | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |

|   | a | b | c | d |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| a | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| b | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| c | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| d | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |

|  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |

Page 27

## Example

|   | a | b | c | d |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| a | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| b | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| c | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| d | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |

|   | a | b | c | d |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| a | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| b | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| c | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| d | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |

|  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|
|  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |

Page 26



BITS Pilani  
Hyderabad Campus

THANK YOU!



**BITS** Pilani  
Hyderabad Campus

# Data Structures and Algorithms Design



Febin.A.Vahab

## P and NP classes

| Polynomial Time                | Exponential Time        |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Linear Search $O(n)$           | 0/1 Knapsack $O(2^n)$   |
| Binary Search $O(\log n)$      | Tower of Hanoi $O(2^n)$ |
| Merge Sort $O(n\log n)$        | TSP $O(2^n)$            |
| Quicksort $O(n\log n), O(n^2)$ | Sum of Subsets $O(2^n)$ |
| Fractional KS $O(n\log n)$     |                         |
| Task Scheduling $O(n^2)$       |                         |
| Kruskal's MST $O(m\log n)$     |                         |

## CONTACT SESSION 14 -PLAN

| Contact Sessions(#) | List of Topic Title                                                                                                                                                     | Text/Ref Book/external resource |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 14                  | Definition of P and NP classes and examples, Understanding NP-Completeness: CNF-SAT Cook-Levin theorem<br>Polynomial time reducibility: CNF-SAT and 3-SAT, Vertex Cover | T1: 13.1, 13.2, 13.3            |

## Decision and Optimization Problems

- **Decision Problem:** computational problem with intended output of “yes” or “no”, 1 or 0
- **Optimization Problem:** computational problem where we try to maximize or minimize some value.
- Introduce parameter k and ask if the optimal value for the problem is at most or at least k. Turn optimization into decision

## Decision and Optimization Problems



- Example: Hamiltonian circles:
- A Hamiltonian circle in an undirected graph is a simple circle that passes through every vertex exactly once.
- The **decision** problem is: Does a given undirected graph has a Hamiltonian circle?

Page 5

## Decision and Optimization Problems



- **Knapsack** : Suppose we have a knapsack of capacity  $W$  and  $n$  objects with weights  $w_1, \dots, w_n$ , and values  $v_1, \dots, v_n$
- **Optimization problem**: Find the largest total value of any subset of the objects that fits in the knapsack (and find a subset that achieves the maximum value)
- **Decision problem**: Given  $k$ , is there a subset of the objects that fits in the knapsack and has total value at least  $k$ ?

Page 7

## Decision and Optimization Problems



- Many problems will have decision and optimization versions
- **Traveling salesman problem**
- Optimization problem: Given a weighted graph, find Hamiltonian cycle of minimum weight.
- Decision problem: Given a weighted graph and an integer  $k$ , is there a Hamiltonian cycle with total weight at most  $k$ ?

Page 6

## Decision and Optimization Problems



- **Graph coloring**: assign a color to each vertex so that adjacent vertices are not assigned the same color. Chromatic number: the smallest number of colors needed to color  $G$ .
- We are given an undirected graph  $G = (V, E)$  to be colored.
- **Optimization problem**: Given  $G$ , determine the chromatic number .
- **Decision problem**: Given  $G$  and a positive integer  $k$ , is there a coloring of  $G$  using at most  $k$  colors? If so,  $G$  is said to be  $k$ -colorable

Page 8

# Decision and Optimization Problems



- **Decision Problem:** computational problem with intended output of “yes” or “no”, 1 or 0

Examples:

- Does a text T contain a pattern P?
- Does an instance of 0/1 Knapsack have a solution with benefit at least K?
- Does a graph G have an MST with weight at most K?

Page 9

# Problems and Languages



- A **language** L is a set of strings defined over some alphabet  $\Sigma$
- Every decision algorithm A defines a language L
  - L is the set consisting of every string x such that A outputs “yes” on input x.
  - We say “A **accepts** x” in this case
    - Example:
    - If A determines whether or not a given graph G has an Euler tour, then the language L for A is all graphs with Euler tours.

Page 11

# Polynomial-Time



- The class P consists of those problems that are solvable in polynomial time.
- More specifically, they are problems that can be solved in time  $O(n^k)$  for some constant k, where n is the size of the input to the problem
- The key is that n is the **size of input**

Page 10

# The Complexity Class P



- A **complexity class** is a collection of languages
- P is the complexity class consisting of all languages that are accepted by **polynomial-time** algorithms
- For each language L in P there is a polynomial-time decision algorithm A for L.
  - If  $n=|x|$ , for  $x$  in L, then A runs in  $p(n)$  time on input x.
  - The function  $p(n)$  is some polynomial

Page 12

# The Complexity Class NP

- NP is not the same as non-polynomial complexity/running time.
- NP does not stand for not polynomial.
- NP = Non-Deterministic polynomial time

Page 13

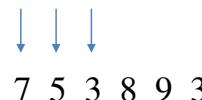
## Deterministic

//input: an array A[1..N] and an element el that is in the array  
 //output: the position of el in A

```
search(el, A, i)
{
  if(A[i] = el) then return i
  else
    return search(el, A, i+1)
}
```

Complexity: O(N)

el = 9



7 5 3 8 9 3

Page 15

## Deterministic

- In a deterministic computer we can determine in advance for every computational cycle, the output state by looking at the input state
- In **deterministic algorithm**, for a given particular input, the computer will always produce the same output going through the same states

Page 14

## Non Deterministic

- In a nondeterministic computer we may have more than one output state.
- The computer “chooses” the correct one (“nondeterministic choice”)
- For the same input, the compiler may produce different output in different runs.
- Non-deterministic algorithms can't solve the problem in polynomial time and can't determine what is the next step

Page 16

## Non Deterministic

- Non-deterministic algorithms can show different behaviors for the same input on different execution and there is a degree of randomness to it.
- A **nondeterministic algorithm** for a problem A is a two-stage procedure. **In the first phase**, a procedure makes a guess about the possible solution for A. **In the second phase**, a procedure checks if the guessed solution is indeed a solution for A

## Non Deterministic

- choice(X)** : chooses any value randomly from the set X.
- failure()** : denotes the unsuccessful solution.
- success()** : Solution is successful and current thread terminates.

## Non Deterministic

- Search an element x on A[1:n] where n>=1, on successful search return j if a[j] is equals to x otherwise return 0.**

```
j = choice(a, n)
if(A[j]==x) then
{
    write(j);
    success();
}
write(0); failure();
```

Complexity: O(1)

## ND Sorting

### Non Deterministic Sorting

1. Algorithm Nsort(A,N)
2. // sort n positive numbers
3. {
4. For I = 1 to n do B[i] = 0 ;// initialize B
5. For I = 1 to n do
6. {
7. J = choice(1,n);
8. If B[j] != 0 then failure();
9. B[j] = A[i];
10. }
11. For I = 1 to n-1 do // verify the order
12. If B[i] > B[i+1] then failure();
13. Write (B);
14. Success();
15. }

- In the for loop of 5 to 10 each A[i] is assigned to position in B
- Line 7 non deterministically identifies this position
- Line 8 checks whether this position is already used or not !
- The order of numbers in B is some permutation of the initial order in A
- For loop of line no 11 and 12 verifies the B is in ascending order,
- Since there is always a set of choices at line no 7 for ascending order, this is a sorting algorithm of Complexity O(N)
- All deterministic sorting algorithms must have A complexity O(nlogn)

## The Complexity Class NP

- The class **NP** consists of all problems that can be solved in polynomial time by **nondeterministic algorithms**
- That is, both phase 1 and phase 2 run in polynomial time
- If A is a problem in P then A is a problem in NP because
  - Phase 1: use the polynomial algorithm that solves A
  - Phase 2: write a constant time procedure that always returns true

Page 21

## The Complexity Class NP

- The key question is are there problems in NP that are not in P or is P = NP?
- We don't know the answer to the previous question
- We say that a non-deterministic algorithm A **accepts** a string x if there exists some sequence of choose operations that causes A to output "yes" on input x.
- NP is the complexity class consisting of all languages accepted by **polynomial-time non-deterministic algorithms**.

Page 23

## The Complexity Class NP

- Every decision problem solvable by a polynomial time deterministic algorithm is also solvable by a polynomial time nondeterministic algorithm.
- To see this, observe that any deterministic algorithm can be used as the checking stage of a nondeterministic algorithm.
- If  $I \in P$ , and A is any polynomial deterministic algorithm for I, we can obtain a polynomial nondeterministic algorithm for I merely by using A as the checking stage and ignoring the guess.
- Thus  $I \in P$  implies  $I \in NP$

Page 22

## The Complexity Class NP

- How to prove that a problem A is in NP:  
Show that A is in P  
OR  
Write a nondeterministic algorithm solving A that runs in polynomial time

Page 24

## NP example

Problem: Decide if a graph has an MST of weight K

Algorithm:

1. Non-deterministically choose a set T of n-1 edges
2. Test that T forms a spanning tree
3. Test that T has weight at most K

Analysis: Testing takes  $O(n+m)$  time, so this algorithm runs in polynomial time.

## Satisfiability Problem

- A Boolean formula is *satisfiable* if there exists some assignment of the values 0 and 1 to its variables that causes it to evaluate to 1.
- CNF – Conjunctive Normal Form. ANDing of clauses of ORs
$$(x_0 \vee x_2) \wedge (\neg x_0 \vee x_1) \wedge (x_0 \vee x_1 \vee \neg x_2)$$

## The Complexity Class NP Alternate Definition

- We say that an algorithm B **verifies** the acceptance of a language L if and only if, for any x in L, there exists a certificate y such that B outputs “yes” on input (x,y).
- NP is the complexity class consisting of all languages verified by **polynomial-time** algorithms.
- We know: P is a subset of NP.
- Major open question: P=NP?
- Most researchers believe that P and NP are different

## CNF satisfiability

- This problem is in *NP*. Nondeterministic algorithm:
  - Guess truth assignment
  - Check assignment to see if it satisfies CNF formula
- It is easy to show that CNF-SAT is in NP
- For, given a Boolean formula S, we can construct a simple nondeterministic algorithm that first “guesses” an assignment of Boolean values for the variables in S and then evaluates each clause of S in turn.
- If all the clauses of S evaluate to 1, then S is satisfied; otherwise, it is not.

## CNF satisfiability

- Example:  
 $(A \vee \neg B \vee \neg C) \wedge (\neg A \vee B) \wedge (\neg B \vee D \vee F) \wedge (F \vee \neg D)$
- Truth assignments:

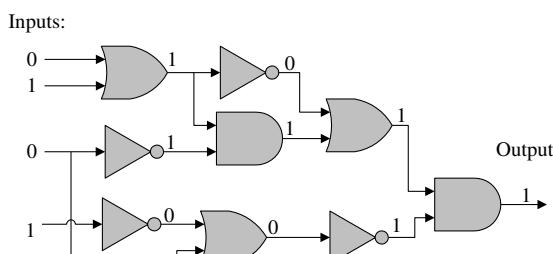
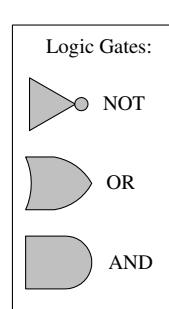
| A  | B   | C                | D | E | F |
|----|-----|------------------|---|---|---|
| 1. | 0   | 1                | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| 2. | 1   | 0                | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 3. | 1   | 1                | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 4. | ... | (how many more?) |   |   |   |

Checking phase:  $\Theta(n)$

Page 29

## An Interesting Problem

- A Boolean circuit is a circuit of AND, OR, and NOT gates; the CIRCUIT-SAT problem is to determine if there is an assignment of 0's and 1's to a circuit's inputs so that the circuit outputs 1.



Page 31

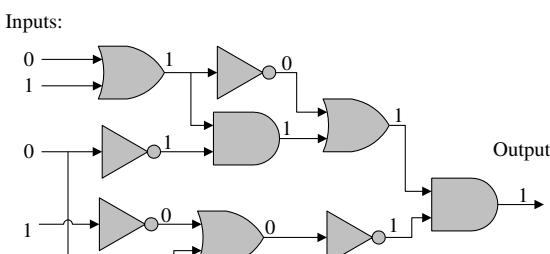
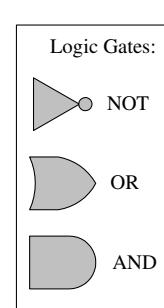
## 3 SAT

- Problem: Given a CNF where each clause has 3 variables, decide whether it is satisfiable or not.
- $(x_1 \vee x_1 \vee x_2) \wedge (\neg x_1 \vee \neg x_2 \vee \neg x_2) \wedge (\neg x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_2)$
- 3SAT is NP Complete

Page 30

## CIRCUIT-SAT is in NP

- Non-deterministically choose a set of inputs and the outcome of every gate, then test each gate's I/O.



Page 32

## P And NP Summary

- **P** = set of problems that can be solved in polynomial time
  - Examples: Fractional Knapsack, ...
- **NP** = set of problems for which a solution can be verified in polynomial time
  - Examples: 0/1 Knapsack, ..., Hamiltonian Cycle, CNF SAT, 3-CNF SAT
- Clearly **P ⊆ NP**
- Open question: Does **P = NP?**
  - Most suspect not
  - An August 2010 claim of proof that  $P \neq NP$ , by Vinay Deolalikar, researcher at HP Labs, Palo Alto, has flaws

## Polynomial-Time Reducibility

- A problem R can be *reduced* to another problem Q if any instance of R can be rephrased to an instance of Q, the solution to which provides a solution to the instance of R
  - This rephrasing is called a *transformation*
- Intuitively: If R reduces in polynomial time to Q, R is “no harder to solve” than Q
- Example:  $\text{lcm}(m, n) = m * n / \text{gcd}(m, n)$ ,  
 $\text{lcm}(m,n)$  problem is reduced to  $\text{gcd}(m, n)$  problem

## Polynomial-Time Reducibility

- Language L is polynomial-time reducible to language M if there is a function computable in polynomial time that takes an input x of L and transforms it to an input  $f(x)$  of M, such that x is a member of L if and only if  $f(x)$  is a member of M.
- Shorthand,  $L^{\text{poly}}M$  means L is polynomial-time reducible to M

## Polynomial-Time Reducibility

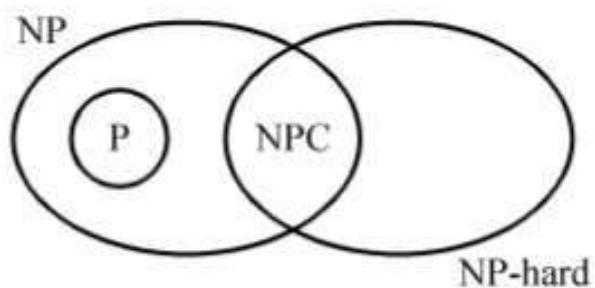
- For example a Hamiltonian circuit problem is polynomially reducible to the decision version of the traveling salesman problem.
- Hamiltonian circuit problem(HCP): Does a given undirected graph have a Hamiltonian cycle?
- Traveling salesman problem(TSP): Given a weighted graph and an integer k, is there a Hamiltonian cycle with total weight at most k?

## NP Hard and NP complete

- A decision problem  $D$  is NP-complete iff
  1.  $D \in NP$
  2. every problem in  $NP$  is polynomial-time reducible to  $D$

Page 37

## NP Hard and NP complete



Page 39

## NP Hard and NP complete

- If  $R$  is *polynomial-time reducible* to  $Q$ , we denote this  $R \leq_p Q$
- Definition of NP-Hard and NP-Complete:
  - If all problems  $R \in NP$  are *polynomial-time* reducible to  $Q$ , then  $Q$  is *NP-Hard*
  - We say  $Q$  is *NP-Complete* if  $Q$  is NP-Hard and  $Q \in NP$
- If  $R \leq_p Q$  and  $R$  is NP-Hard,  $Q$  is also NP-Hard

Page 38

Page 40

## NP Hard and NP complete

- Belief: P is a proper subset of NP.
- Implication: the NP-complete problems are the hardest in NP.
- Why: Because if we could solve an NP-complete problem in polynomial time, we could solve every problem in NP in polynomial time.
- That is, if an NP-complete problem is solvable in polynomial time, then P=NP.
- Since so many people have attempted without success to find polynomial-time solutions to NP-complete problems, showing your problem is NP-complete is equivalent to showing that a lot of smart people have worked on your problem and found no polynomial-time algorithm

## Amusing analogy

(thanks to lecture notes at University of Utah)

- Students believe that every problem assigned to them is NP-complete in difficulty level, as they have to find the solutions. ☺
- Teaching Assistants, on the other hand, find that their job is only as hard as NP, as they only have to verify the student's answers.
- When some students confound the TAs, even verification becomes hard

## Cook's Theorem

### Cook's theorem

NP = P iff the satisfiability problem is a P problem.

- SAT is NP-complete.
- It is the first NP-complete problem.
- Every NP problem reduces to SAT.



Stephen Arthur  
Cook



BITS Pilani  
Hyderabad Campus

Data Structures and  
Algorithms Design

## AVL trees

- From previous lectures:
  - Binary search trees store linearly ordered data
  - Best case height:  $O(\log(n))$
  - Worst case height:  $O(n)$
- Requirement:
  - Define and maintain a balance to ensure  $O(\log(n))$  operations

Page 2

## AVL trees

- AVL trees are balanced
- An AVL Tree is a binary search tree such that for every internal node  $v$  of  $T$ , the heights of the children of  $v$  can differ by at most 1
- This difference is called the **Balance Factor**.
- For an AVL tree  $|balance\ factor| \leq 1$  for all the nodes.

Page 4

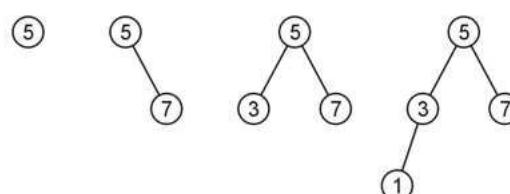
## AVL trees

- The AVL tree is the first balanced binary search tree ever invented.
- It is named after its two inventors, [G.M. Adelson-Velskii](#) and [E.M. Landis](#), who published it in their 1962 paper "An algorithm for the organization of information."

Page 3

## AVL trees

- BalanceFactor=height(left-subtree) – height(right-subtree)**



AVL trees with 1 ,2,3, and 4 nodes

Page 5

- BalanceFactor=height(left-subtree) – height(right-subtree)

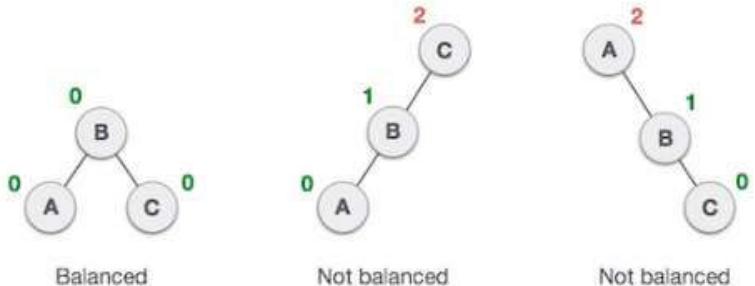


Image credit: Tutorials point

Page 6

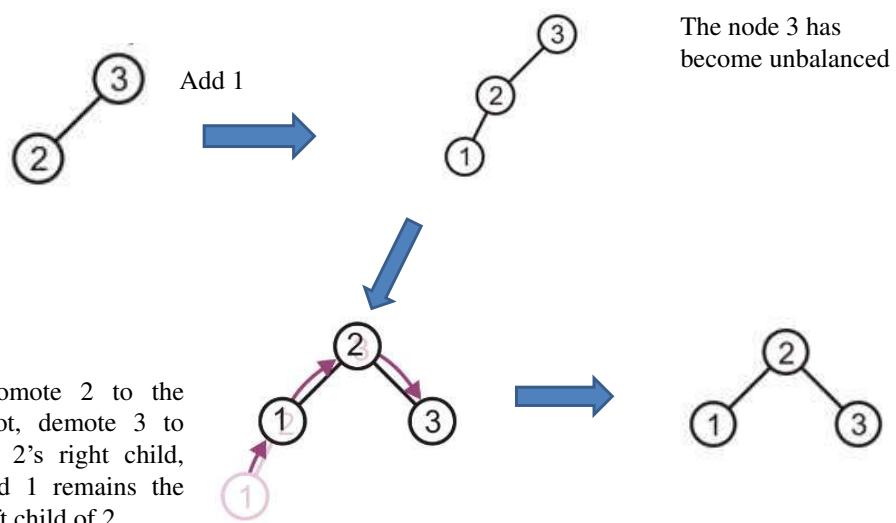
## AVL trees-Rotations

- To balance itself, an AVL tree may perform the following four kinds of rotations –
  - Left rotation
  - Right rotation
  - Left-Right rotation
  - Right-Left rotation
- To have an unbalanced tree, we at least need a tree of height 2.

Page 8

## AVL trees-Rotations

- Right Rotation** Node is inserted in the left of left-subtree



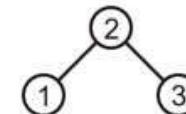
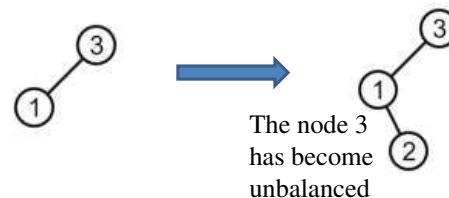
Page 9

## AVL trees-Rotations

- Left Rotation:** Node is inserted into right of right subtree.  
After inserting new node, tree becomes unbalanced

## AVL trees-Rotations

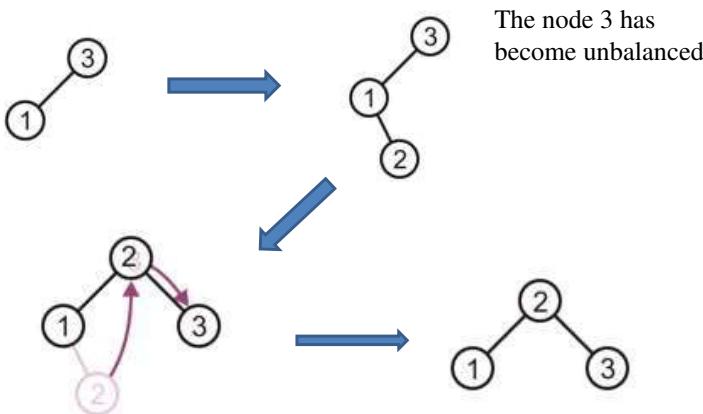
- Left Right Rotation (Double Rotation):** Node is inserted in the right of left-subtree and makes the tree unbalanced.



Page 10

## AVL trees-Rotations

- Left Right Rotation**

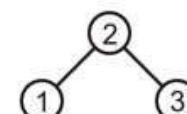


Promote 2 to the root, and assign  
1 and 3 to be its children

Page 12

## AVL trees-Rotations

- Right Left Rotation:** Node is inserted in the left of right subtree and make the tree unbalanced



Page 11

Page 13

## AVL Trees-General Case LL Imbalance



## AVL Trees-General Case LL Imbalance



## AVL Tree-General Case LR imbalance



Page 14

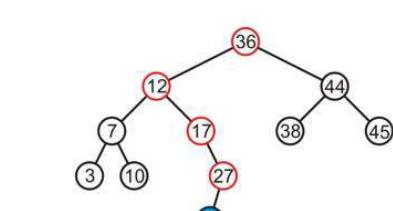
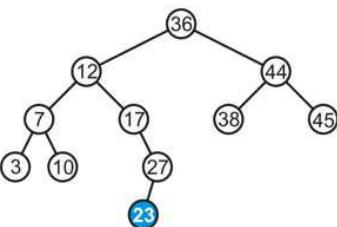
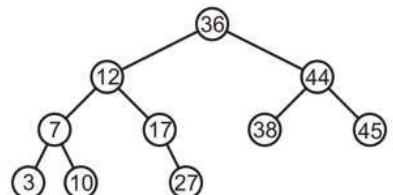
## AVL Tree-General Case LR imbalance



Page 16

Page 17

## AVL Insertion-Case 1

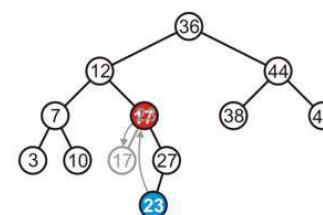
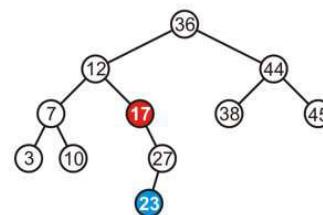


The heights of each of the sub-trees from here to the root are increased by one

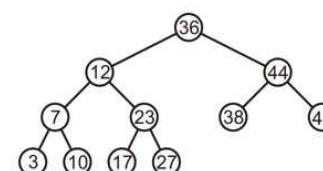
only two of the nodes are unbalanced: 17 and 36

Page 18

## AVL Insertion



We only have to fix the imbalance at the lowest node



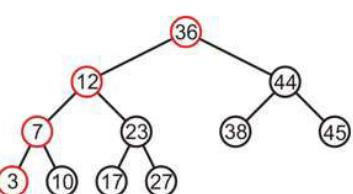
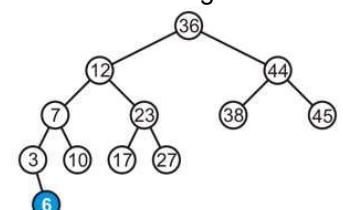
That node is no longer unbalanced. Incidentally, neither is the root .Now balanced again.

Page 19

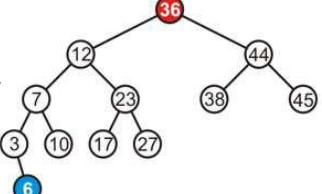
## AVL Insertion-Case 2

Consider adding 6

The height of each of the trees in the path back to the root are increased by one

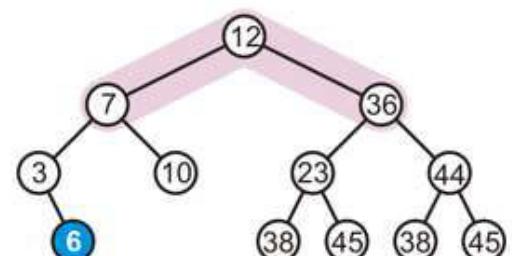
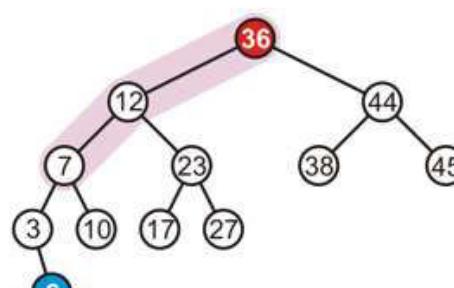


However, only the root node is now unbalanced



Page 20

## AVL Insertion-Case 2



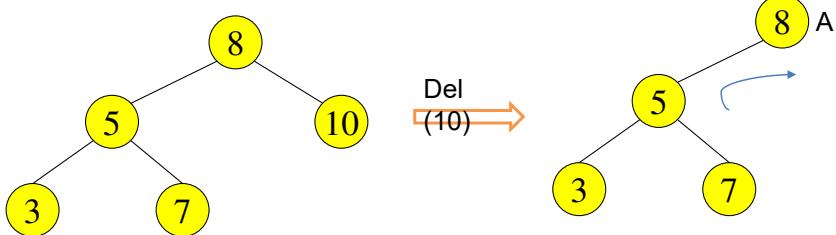
Page 21

## Delete an element from AVL Trees

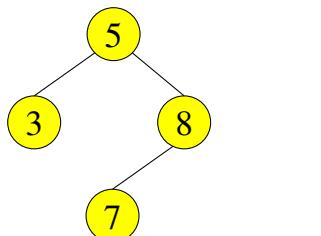
- We first do the normal BST deletion:
  - 0 children: just delete it
  - 1 child: delete it, connect child to parent
  - 2 children: put the inorder successor in node's place
- Calculate Balance Factor again
- A is the critical node whose balance factor is disturbed upon deleting node x.
- If deleted node are from left subtree of A then It is called **Type L** delete otherwise it is called **Type R** delete

## Delete an element from AVL Trees R0 Rotation

## R0 Rotation

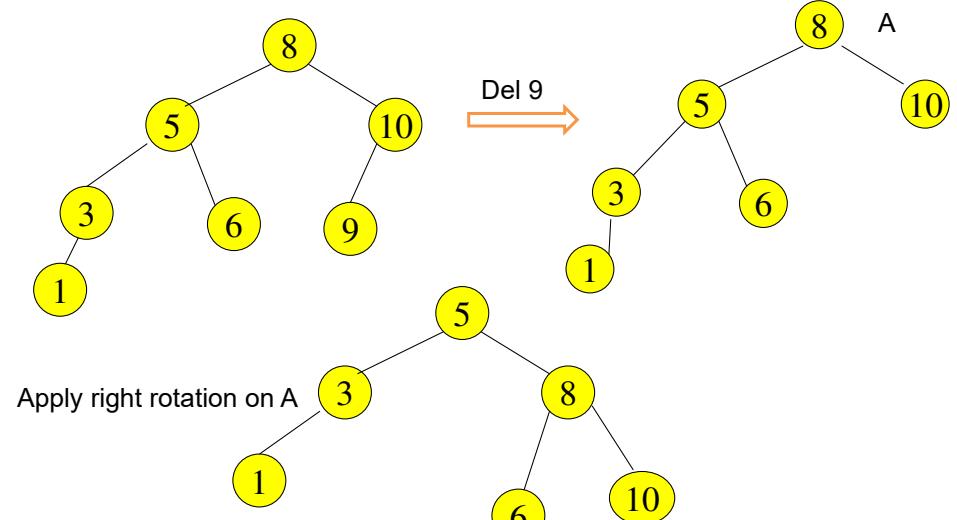


Apply right rotation on A



26

## R1 Rotation



Apply right rotation on A



28

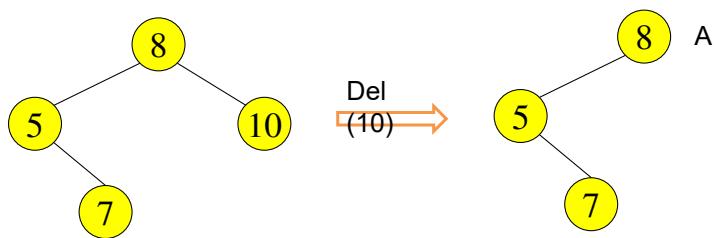
## Delete an element from AVL Trees R1 Rotation

27

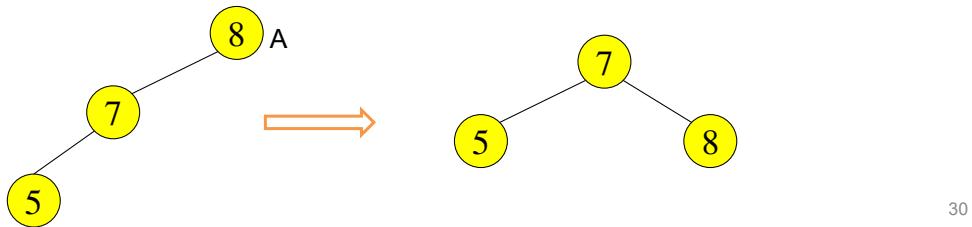
## Delete an element from AVL Trees R -1 Rotation

29

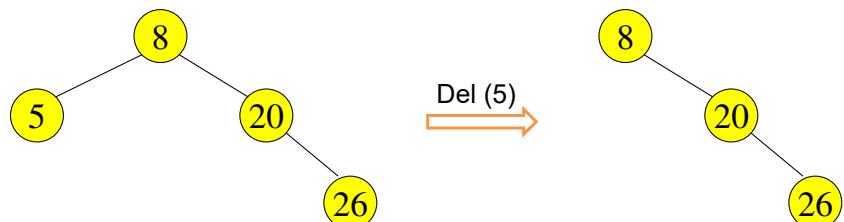
## Type R-1 Rotation



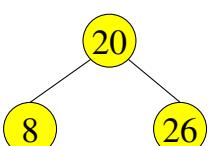
Apply left Rotation on left child of node A and Then right rotation on node A



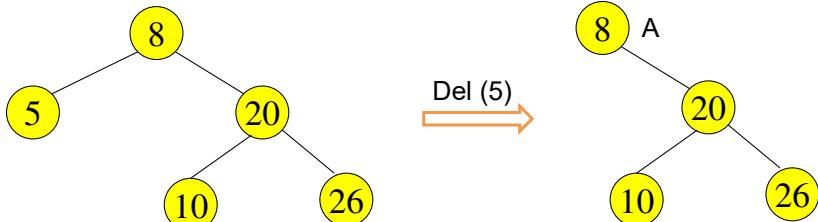
## Type L



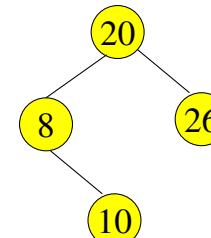
Since it  $L(-1)$  = case apply Left rotation on A



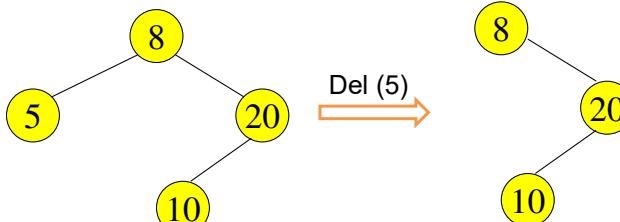
## Type L



Since it  $L(0)$  type apply Left rotation on A

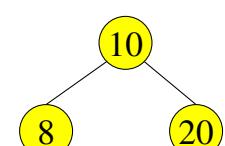
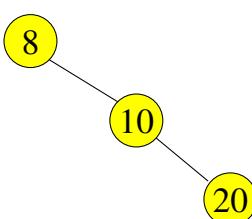


## Type L



Since it  $L(1)$ , In  $L_1$  case we have to solve in two steps,  
Step1: Right Rotation at right child of 'A'

Step2: Left rotation at node A



## AVL trees-Deletions

- Removing a node from an AVL tree may cause more than one AVL imbalance
- Like insert, remove must check after it has been successfully called on a child to see if it caused an imbalance
- Unfortunately, it may cause  $O(h)$  imbalances that must be corrected
- Insertions will only cause one imbalance that must be fixed
- But in removal , a single trinode restructuring may not restore the height-balance property globally
- So, after rebalancing , we continue walking up T looking for unbalanced nodes.
- If we find another, we perform a restructure operation to restore its balance, and continue marching up T looking for more, all the way to the root

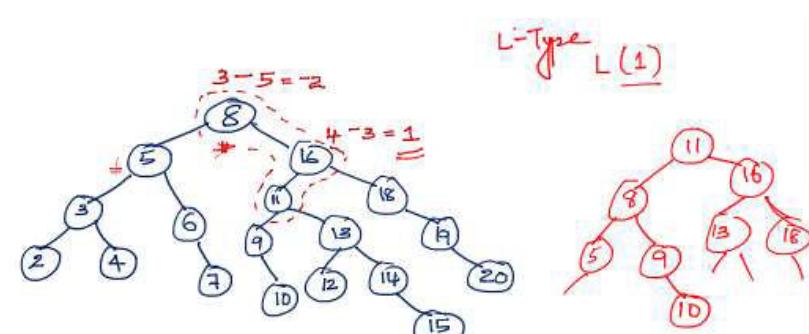
34

## AVL trees-Deletions

36

## AVL trees-Deletions

## AVL trees-Deletions



Now Node 5 is balanced. But node 8 is now unbalanced.  
So performs a left rotation. (L1 Rotation)

37

## AVL Trees-Summary

- AVL balance is defined by ensuring the difference in heights is 0 or 1
- Insertions and Removals are like binary search trees
- Each insertion requires at least one correction to maintain AVL balance
- Removals may require  $O(h)$  corrections
- These corrections require  $O(1)$  time
- Height of the AVL tree is  $O(\log(n))$
- $\therefore$  all  $O(h)$  operations are  $O(\log(n))$

- AVL trees are applied in the following situations:
  - There are few insertion and deletion operations
  - Short search time is needed

## Find k-th smallest element in BST

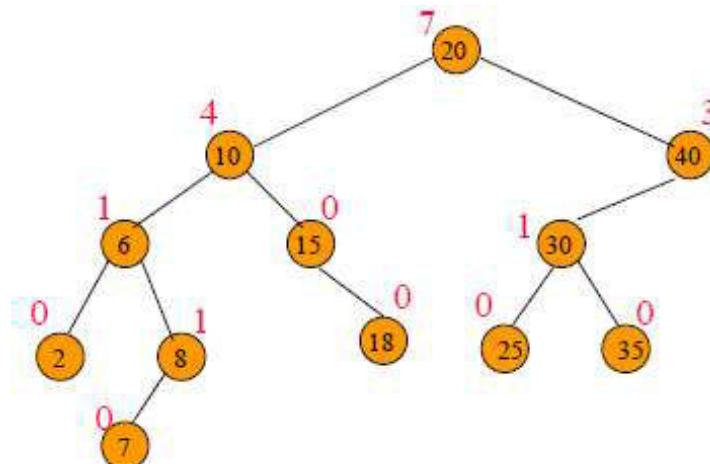
- The idea is to maintain rank of each node.
- We can keep track of elements in a subtree of any node while building the tree.
- Since we need K-th smallest element, we can maintain number of elements of left subtree in every node.

## Rank

- Rank of an element is its position in inorder traversal (inorder = ascending key order).
- [2,6,7,8,10,15,18,20,25,30,35,40]
- rank(2) = 0
- rank(15) = 5
- rank(20) = 7
- leftSize(x) = rank(x) with respect to elements in subtree rooted at x**

Page 42

## Rank



sorted list = [2,6,7,8,10,15,18,20,25,30,35,40]

Page 43

## Find k-th smallest element in BST

- Assume that the root is having N nodes in its left subtree.
  - If K = N + 1, root is K-th node.
  - If K > N, we continue our search in the right subtree for the (K - (N + 1))-th smallest element.
  - Else we will continue our search (recursion) for the Kth smallest element in the left subtree of root.
  - Note that we need the count of elements in left subtree only.
- Time complexity: O(h) where h is height of tree.

Page 44

## Find k-th smallest element in BST

- start
- if K = root.leftElements + 1**
  - root node is the K th node.
  - goto stop
- else if K > root.leftElements**
  - K = K - (root.leftElements + 1)
  - root = root.right
  - goto start
- else**
  - root = root.left
  - goto start
- stop

Page 45

